

**NIST Special Publication 1800-7**

---

# **SITUATIONAL AWARENESS**

## **For Electric Utilities**

---

Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B); and How-To Guides (C)

**Jim McCarthy**  
**Otis Alexander**  
**Sallie Edwards**  
**Don Faatz**  
**Chris Peloquin**  
**Susan Symington**  
**Andre Thibault**  
**John Wiltberger**  
**Karen Viani**

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:  
[https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use\\_cases/situational\\_awareness](https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use_cases/situational_awareness)



NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-7 DRAFT

# Situational Awareness for Electric Utilities

*Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B);  
and How-To Guides (C)*

Jim McCarthy  
*National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
Information Technology Laboratory*

Otis Alexander  
Sallie Edwards  
Don Faatz  
Chris Peloquin  
Susan Symington  
Andre Thibault  
John Wiltberger  
Karen Viani  
*The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, VA*

This publication is available free of charge from:  
[https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use\\_cases/situational\\_awareness](https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use_cases/situational_awareness)

February 2017



National Institute of Standards and Technology  
*Kent Rochford, Acting Undersecretary of Commerce for Standards and Technology*

NIST Special Publication 1800-7A

---

# SITUATIONAL AWARENESS

## For Electric Utilities

---

**Volume A:**  
**Executive Summary**

**Jim McCarthy**

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
Information Technology Laboratory

**Otis Alexander**

**Sallie Edwards**

**Don Faatz**

**Chris Peloquin**

**Susan Symington**

**Andre Thibault**

**John Wiltberger**

**Karen Viani**

The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, VA

February 2017

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:  
[https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use\\_cases/situational\\_awareness](https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use_cases/situational_awareness)



# Situational Awareness for Electric Utilities

## Executive Summary

- 4 ■ Situational Awareness, in the context of this guide, is the understanding of one's environment, and  
5 the ability to predict how it might change due to various factors.
- 6 ■ As part of their current cybersecurity efforts, some electric utilities monitor physical, operational, and  
7 information technology (IT) separately. According to energy sector stakeholders, many utilities are  
8 currently assessing a more comprehensive approach to situational awareness, which, through  
9 increased real-time or near real-time cybersecurity monitoring can enhance the resilience of their  
10 operations.
- 11 ■ The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) developed an example solution that can be  
12 used by electric sector companies to alert their staff to potential or actual cyber attacks directed at  
13 the grid.
- 14 ■ The security characteristics in our situational awareness platform are informed by guidance and best  
15 practices from standards organizations, including the NIST Cybersecurity Framework and North  
16 American Electric Reliability Corporation's (NERC) Critical Infrastructure Protection (CIP) version 5  
17 standards.
- 18 ■ The NCCoE's approach uses commercially available products that can be integrated with an  
19 organization's existing infrastructure. The combination of these commercially available products  
20 provides a converged view of all sensor data within the utility's network systems, including IT,  
21 operational, and physical access control systems, which often exists in separate "silos".
- 22 ■ The example solution is packaged as a "How To" guide that demonstrates implementation of  
23 standards-based cybersecurity technologies in the real world and based on risk analysis. The guide  
24 may help inform electric utilities in their efforts to gain situational awareness efficiencies. Doing so  
25 may enable faster monitoring, identification, and response to incidents, while also saving research  
26 and proof of concept costs for the sector and its rate payers and customers.

## CHALLENGE

28 As part of the U.S. critical infrastructure, the energy industry, along with healthcare, finance,  
29 transportation, water, and communications sectors, has reported significant cyber incidents. As an  
30 important component to the energy sector, industrial control systems (ICS) may be increasingly  
31 vulnerable to cybersecurity threats, whether intentional or unintentional. In December 2015, electric  
32 companies saw the potential effect of a combined attack on an electric utility's IT and ICS systems. In this  
33 instance, a Ukraine power grid was attacked, and electricity knocked out for 225,000 people. The  
34 malicious actors then inundated the company's customer service center with calls, which slowed the  
35 response time to the electricity outage by causing internal challenges.

36 The model used by some electric utility companies of monitoring separate physical, operational, and  
37 information technology "silos" is a practice that lacks efficiency and can negatively impact response time  
38 to incidents, according to the NCCoE's energy sector stakeholders. A number of useful products are  
39 commercially available for monitoring enterprise networks for possible security events; however, these  
40 products can have limited effectiveness when considering the specific requirements of ICS networks. A  
41 converged network monitoring solution that is tailored to the cybersecurity nuances of ICS would reduce  
42 blind spots for electric utilities, resulting in more comprehensive situational awareness across both  
43 enterprise business system and operational ICS environments.

## 44 SOLUTION

45 The NCCoE has developed Situational Awareness for Electric Utilities to augment existing and disparate  
46 physical, operational, and information technology situational awareness efforts by using commercial and  
47 open-source products to collect and converge monitoring information across these silos. The converged  
48 information is analyzed and relevant alerts are provided back to each domain's monitoring capabilities,  
49 improving the situational awareness of security analysts in each silo. The converged data can facilitate a  
50 more efficient and appropriate response to an incident compared to an incident response that relies on  
51 isolated data from within a single silo.

52 The NCCoE sought existing technologies that provided the following capabilities:

- 53 ■ security incident and event management (SIEM) or log analysis software
- 54 ■ ICS equipment (e.g., remote terminal units, programmable logic controllers and relays), along with  
55 associated software and communications equipment (e.g., radios and encryptors)
- 56 ■ "bump-in-the-wire" devices for augmenting operational technology with encrypted communication  
57 and logging capabilities
- 58 ■ software for collecting, analyzing, visualizing, and storing operational control data (e.g., historians,  
59 outage management systems, distribution management systems, and human-machine interfaces)
- 60 ■ products that ensure the integrity and accuracy of data collected from remote facilities.

## 61 BENEFITS

62 The potential business benefits of this situational awareness reference design developed in our project  
63 include:

- 64 ■ improved ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in  
65 earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall  
66 business risk, while supporting enhanced resilience and reliability performance outcomes
- 67 ■ increased probability that investigations of attacks or anomalous system behavior will reach successful  
68 conclusions which can inform risk management and mitigation following incidents
- 69 ■ improved accountability and traceability, leading to valuable operational lessons learned
- 70 ■ simplified regulatory compliance by automating generation and collection of a variety of operational  
71 log data

## 72 SHARE YOUR FEEDBACK

73 You can view or download the guide at [https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use\\_cases/situational\\_awareness](https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use_cases/situational_awareness).  
74 Help us make it better by sharing your thoughts with us as you read the guide. If you adopt this solution  
75 for your own organization, please share your experience and advice with us. We recognize that technical  
76 solutions alone will not fully enable the benefits of our solution, so we encourage organizations to share

77 lessons learned and best practices for transforming the business processes associated with implementing  
78 it.

79 To provide comments or to learn more by arranging a demonstration of this reference solution, contact us  
80 at [energy\\_nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:energy_nccoe@nist.gov).

---

## 81 TECHNOLOGY PARTNERS

82 The technology vendors who participated in this project submitted their capabilities in response to a call  
83 in the Federal Register. Companies with relevant products were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and  
84 Development Agreement with NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example  
85 solution.

86

87 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified in order to describe an  
88 experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply  
89 recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE, nor is it intended to imply that the entities,  
90 equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

---

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity challenges. Through this collaboration, the NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions using commercially available technology.

### LEARN MORE

<http://nccoe.nist.gov>  
nccoe@nist.gov  
301-975-0200

NIST Special Publication 1800-7B

---

# SITUATIONAL AWARENESS

## For Electric Utilities

---

**Volume B:**

**Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics for CIOs, CISOs, and Security Managers**

**Jim McCarthy**

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
Information Technology Laboratory

**Otis Alexander**

**Sallie Edwards**

**Don Faatz**

**Chris Peloquin**

**Susan Symington**

**Andre Thibault**

**John Wiltberger**

**Karen Viani**

The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, VA

February 2017

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:  
[https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use\\_cases/situational\\_awareness](https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use_cases/situational_awareness)



## DISCLAIMER

Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified in this document in order to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE, nor is it intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-7B  
Natl Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 1800-7B, 86 pages (February 2017)  
CODEN: NSPUE2

## FEEDBACK

You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

Comments on this publication may be submitted to: [energy\\_nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:energy_nccoe@nist.gov).

Public comment period: February 16, 2017 through April 17, 2017

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
National Institute of Standards and Technology  
100 Bureau Drive  
Gaithersburg, MD 20899  
Mailstop 2002

## NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific industries or broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Working with technology partners—from Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in IT security—the NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cyber Security Framework and details the steps needed for another entity to recreate the example solution. The NCCoE was established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Md.

To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://nccoe.nist.gov>. To learn more about NIST, visit <https://www.nist.gov>.

## NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES

NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication Series 1800) target specific cybersecurity challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant standards and best practices and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information they need to implement a similar approach.

The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

## ABSTRACT

Through direct dialogue between NCCoE staff and members of the energy sector (comprised mainly of electric power companies and those who provide equipment and/or services to them) it became clear that energy companies need to create and maintain a high level of visibility into their operating environments to ensure the security of their operational resources (OT), including industrial control systems, buildings, and plant equipment. However, energy companies, as well as all other utilities with similar infrastructure and situational awareness challenges, also need insight into their corporate or information technology (IT) and physical access control systems (PACS). The convergence of data across these three often self-contained silos (OT, IT, and PACS) can better protect power generation, transmission, and distribution.

Real-time or near real-time situational awareness is a key element in ensuring this visibility across all resources. Situational awareness, as defined in this use case, is the ability to comprehensively identify and correlate anomalous conditions pertaining to industrial control systems, IT resources, access to buildings, facilities, and other business mission-essential resources. For energy companies, having mechanisms to capture, transmit, view, analyze, and

store real-time or near-real-time data from industrial control systems (ICS) and related networking equipment provides energy companies with the information needed to deter, identify, respond to, and mitigate cyber attacks against their assets.

With such mechanisms in place, electric utility owners and operators can more readily detect anomalous conditions, take appropriate actions to remediate them, investigate the chain of events that led to the anomalies, and share findings with other energy companies. Obtaining real-time and near-real-time data from networks also has the benefit of helping to demonstrate compliance with information security standards. This NCCoE project's goal is ultimately to improve the security of operational technology through situational awareness.

This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide describes our collaborative efforts with technology providers and energy sector stakeholders to address the security challenges energy providers face in deploying a comprehensive situational awareness capability. It offers a technical approach to meeting the challenge, and also incorporates a business value mind-set by identifying the strategic considerations involved in implementing new technologies. The guide provides a modular, end-to-end example solution that can be tailored and implemented by energy providers of varying sizes and sophistication. It shows energy providers how we met the challenge using open source and commercially available tools and technologies that are consistent with cybersecurity standards. The use case is based on an everyday business operational scenario that provides the underlying impetus for the functionality presented in the guide. Test cases were defined with industry participation to provide multiple examples of the capabilities necessary to provide situational awareness.

While the example solution was demonstrated with a certain suite of products, the guide does not endorse these products. Instead, it presents the characteristics and capabilities that an organization's security experts can use to identify similar standards-based products that can be integrated quickly and cost effectively with an energy provider's existing tools and infrastructure.

## KEYWORDS

cybersecurity; energy sector; information technology; physical access control systems; security event and incident management; situational awareness; operational technology, correlated events

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Robert Lee	Dragos
Justin Cavinee	Dragos
Jon Lavender	Dragos
Gregg Garbesi	Engie
Steve Roberts	Hewlett Packard Enterprise
Bruce Oehler	Hewlett Packard Enterprise
Gil Kroyzer	ICS <sup>2</sup>
Gregory Ravikovich	ICS <sup>2</sup>
Robert Bell	ICS <sup>2</sup>
Fred Hintermeister	NERC
Paul J. Geraci	OSIsoft
Mark McCoy	OSIsoft
Stephen J. Sarnecki	OSIsoft
Paul Strasser	PPC
Matt McDonald	PPC
Steve Sage	PPC
T.J. Roe	Radiflow
Ayal Vogel	Radiflow
Dario Lobo	Radiflow
Dave Barnard	RS2
Ben Smith	RSA, a Dell Technologies business
Tarik Williams	RSA, a Dell Technologies business
David Perodin	RSA, a Dell Technologies business
George Wrenn	Schneider Electric
Michael Pyle	Schneider Electric
AJ Nicolosi	Siemens
Jeff Foley	Siemens

Name	Organization
Bill Johnson	TDi Technologies
Pam Johnson	TDi Technologies
Clyde Poole	TDi Technologies
Eric Chapman	University of Maryland, College Park
David S. Shaughnessy	University of Maryland, College Park
Don Hill	University of Maryland, College Park
Mary-Ann Ibeziako	University of Maryland, College Park
Damian Griffe	University of Maryland, College Park
Mark Alexander	University of Maryland, College Park
Nollaig Heffernan	Waratek
James Lee	Waratek
John Matthew Holt	Waratek
Andrew Ginter	Waterfall Security Solutions
Courtney Schneider	Waterfall Security Solutions
Tim Pierce	Waterfall Security Solutions
Kori Fisk	The MITRE Corporation
Tania Copper	The MITRE Corporation

The technology vendors who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in response to a notice in the Federal Register. Companies with relevant products were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
<a href="#">Dragos</a>	CyberLens
<a href="#">Hewlett Packard Enterprise</a>	ArcSight
<a href="#">ICS<sup>2</sup></a>	OnGuard
<a href="#">OSIsoft</a>	Pi Historian
<a href="#">Radiflow</a>	iSIM
<a href="#">RS2 Technologies</a>	Access It!, Door Controller
<a href="#">RSA, a Dell Technologies business</a>	Archer Security Operations Management
<a href="#">Schneider Electric</a>	Tofino Firewall

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
<a href="#">Siemens</a>	RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW
<a href="#">TDi Technologies</a>	ConsoleWorks
<a href="#">Waratek</a>	Waratek Runtime Application Protection
<a href="#">Waterfall Security Solutions</a>	Unidirectional Security Gateway, Secure Bypass

The NCCoE also wishes to acknowledge the special contributions of The University of Maryland, for providing us with a real-world setting for the Situational Awareness build; PPC (Project Performance Company), for their dedication in assisting the NCCoE with the very challenging and complex integration in this build; and the NCCoE EPC (Energy Provider Community), for their support and guidance throughout the lifecycle of this project.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Summary</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Challenge	2
1.2	Solution	3
1.3	Risks	4
1.4	Benefits	4
<b>2</b>	<b>How to Use This Guide</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	Typographical Conventions	6
<b>3</b>	<b>Approach</b>	<b>7</b>
3.1	Audience	9
3.2	Scope	9
3.3	Assumptions	9
3.3.1	Security	9
3.3.2	Existing Infrastructure	10
3.3.3	Capability Variation	10
3.4	Risk Assessment and Mitigation	10
3.4.1	Assessing Risk Posture	10
3.4.2	Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping	12
3.5	Technologies	14
3.6	Situational Awareness Test Cases	18
<b>4</b>	<b>Architecture</b>	<b>23</b>
4.1	Example Solution Description	24
4.2	Example Solution Monitoring, Data Collection, and Analysis	26
4.2.1	Example Solution Monitoring and Data Collection Lab Build	28
4.2.2	Example Solution Data Aggregation and Analysis Lab Build	30
4.3	Example Solution Remote Management Connection	31
4.3.1	Example Solution Operations Remote Management Lab Build	32
4.3.2	Example Solution Enterprise Remote Management Lab Build	33
<b>5</b>	<b>Security Characteristics Analysis</b>	<b>35</b>
5.1	Analysis of the Reference Design's Support for CSF Subcategories	36
5.1.1	Supported CSF Subcategories	42
5.2	Reference Design Security Analysis	49
5.2.1	Protecting the ICS Network	54
5.2.2	Protecting the Reference Design from Outside Attack	56
5.2.3	Protecting the Remote Management Paths	56
5.2.4	Protecting the Remote Path to the IDS Web Interface	59
5.2.5	Protecting the SIEM	59

5.3	Securing an Operational Deployment.....	62
5.4	Security Analysis Summary .....	64
<b>6</b>	<b>Functional Evaluation .....</b>	<b>66</b>
6.1	SA Functional Test Plan .....	67
6.2	SA Use Case Requirements .....	68
6.3	Test Case: SA-1.....	69
6.4	Test Case: SA-2.....	70
6.5	Test Case: SA-3.....	71
6.6	Test Case: SA-4.....	72
6.7	Test Case: SA-5.....	74
6.8	Test Case: SA-6.....	75

## List of Figures

<b>Figure 4.1</b>	<b>High-level Example Solution Architecture.....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Figure 4.2</b>	<b>Network Connections Color Code.....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Figure 4.3</b>	<b>Monitoring, Data Collection, and Analysis Example Solution .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Figure 4.4</b>	<b>Operations Monitoring and Data Collection Lab Build Architecture .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Figure 4.5</b>	<b>Enterprise Data Aggregation and Analysis Lab Build Architecture.....</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Figure 4.6</b>	<b>Remote Management Example Solution.....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Figure 4.7</b>	<b>Operations Remote Management Lab Build Architecture .....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Figure 4.8</b>	<b>Enterprise Remote Management Lab Build Architecture.....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Figure 5.1</b>	<b>Monitoring/Data Collection Sub-architecture Depicted Using Generic Component Names</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Figure 5.2</b>	<b>Data Aggregation/Analysis Sub-architecture using Generic Component Names</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>Figure 5.3</b>	<b>Monitoring/Data Collection Management Architecture Depicted using Generic Component Names</b>	<b>49</b>

## List of Tables

Table 2.1	Typographical Conventions .....	6
Table 3.1	Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping—NIST Cybersecurity Framework (CSF) .....	12
Table 3.2	Products and Technologies .....	14
Table 3.3	Situational Awareness Test Cases .....	18
Table 5.1	SA Reference Design Components and the CSF Subcategories they Support. 39	
Table 5.2	Components for Managing and Securing the ES-SA Reference Design and Protecting the ICS Network50	
Table 6.1	Functional Test Plan .....	65
Table 6.2	Functional Evaluation Requirements .....	66
Table 6.3	Test Case ID: SA-1 .....	67
Table 6.4	Test Case ID: SA-2 .....	68
Table 6.5	Test Case ID: SA-3 .....	69
Table 6.6	Test Case ID: SA-4 .....	70
Table 6.7	Test Case ID: SA-5 .....	72
Table 6.8	Test Case ID: SA-6 .....	73

# 1 Summary

2	1.1 Challenge .....	2
3	1.2 Solution .....	3
4	1.3 Risks .....	4
5	1.4 Benefits .....	4

6 Situational Awareness (SA) is “the perception of elements in the environment within a volume  
7 of time and space, the comprehension of their meaning, and the projection of their status in  
8 the near future.”<sup>1</sup> The intent of SA is to know what is happening around you and how it might  
9 affect your activities. For electric utilities, this means understanding what is happening in the  
10 environment that might affect delivery of electricity to customers. Traditionally, this has  
11 involved knowing the operating status of generation, transmission, and delivery systems, as  
12 well as physical challenges such as weather and readiness to respond to outages. As computers  
13 and networks have been incorporated in grid operations, awareness of the cyber situation is  
14 becoming increasingly important to ensuring that the lights stay on.

15 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) met with energy sector stakeholders  
16 to understand key cybersecurity issues impacting operations. We were told that they need a  
17 more efficient means of comprehensively detecting potential cybersecurity incidents directed  
18 at their Operational Technology (OT) or Industrial Control Systems (ICS), Information  
19 Technology (IT) or corporate networks, and their physical facilities such as sub-stations and  
20 corporate offices.

21 The NCCoE's example solution provides a converged and correlated view of OT, IT, and physical  
22 access resources. In our reference design, we collect sensor data from these resources and  
23 provide alerts to a platform that produced actionable information.

24 This example solution is packaged as a “How To” guide that demonstrates how to implement  
25 standards-based cybersecurity technologies in the real world based on risk analysis and  
26 regulatory requirements. The guide might help the energy industry gain efficiencies in SA while  
27 saving research and proof-of-concept costs.

## 28 1.1 Challenge

29 Energy companies rely on operational technology to control the generation, transmission, and  
30 distribution of power. While there are a number of useful products on the market for  
31 monitoring enterprise networks for possible security events, these products tend to be  
32 imperfect fits for the unusual requirements of control system networks. ICS and IT devices were  
33 designed with different purposes in mind. Attempting to use IT security applications for ICS,  
34 although in many cases useful, still does not properly account for the availability requirements  
35 of ICS networks. A network monitoring solution that is tailored to the needs of control systems  
36 would reduce security blind spots and provide real-time SA.

37 To improve overall SA, energy companies need mechanisms to capture, transmit, view, analyze,  
38 and store real-time or near-real-time data from ICS and related networking equipment. With  
39 such mechanisms in place, electric utility owners and operators can more readily detect  
40 anomalous conditions, take appropriate actions to remediate them, investigate the chain of  
41 events that led to the anomalies, and share findings with other energy companies. Obtaining  
42 real-time or near-real-time data from networks also has the benefit of helping organizations  
43 demonstrate compliance with information security standards or regulations.

44 There is a definite need to improve a utility's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or  
45 anomalous behavior, in real or near-real time. The ability to do this will result in earlier  
46 detection of cybersecurity incidents and potentially reduce the severity of the impact of these  
47 incidents on a utility's operational infrastructure. Energy sector stakeholders noted that a

---

1. Endsley, M.R. (1995b). Toward a theory of situation awareness in dynamic systems. Human Factors 37(1), 32-64

48 robust situational awareness solution also must be able to alert for both individual and  
49 correlated events or incidents. To address these needs, we considered a scenario in which a  
50 dispatcher at an operations center sees that a relay has tripped at a substation and begins to  
51 investigate the cause. The dispatcher uses a single software interface that monitors system  
52 buses, displays an outage map, correlates operational network connections to the bus and  
53 outage maps, and indexes logs from operational network devices and physical security devices.  
54 The dispatcher begins their investigation by querying network logs to determine whether any  
55 ICS devices received commands that might have caused the trip. If the answer is yes, then,  
56 using the same interface, the dispatcher can automatically see logs of the most recent  
57 commands and network traffic sent to the relevant devices. This information allows the  
58 technician to easily extend the investigation to internal systems and users who communicated  
59 with the suspect devices. To extend the scenario, a technician on the IT network receives  
60 notification that a server is down. The technician conducts an investigation across the network  
61 and is alerted of the tripped substation relay. Are the anomalies connected? Use of our SA  
62 solution would answer this question in addition to achieving the needs described above.  
63 Additional benefits of the solution are addressed in [Section 1.4](#).

## 64 1.2 Solution

65 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates how commercially available technologies  
66 can meet your utility's need to provide comprehensive real-time or near-real time SA.

67 In our lab at the NCCoE, we built an environment that simulates the common devices and  
68 technologies found in a utility such as IT, OT, and physical access control systems (PACS). In this  
69 guide, we show how a utility can implement a converged alerting capability to provide a  
70 comprehensive view of cyber-related events and activities across silos by using multiple  
71 commercially available products. We identified products and capabilities that, when linked  
72 together, provide a converged and comprehensive platform that can alert utilities to potentially  
73 malicious activity.

74 The guide provides:

- 75 ■ a detailed example solution and capabilities that address security controls
- 76 ■ a demonstration of the approach using multiple, commercially available products
- 77 ■ how-to instructions for implementers and security engineers with instructions on  
78 integrating and configuring the example solution into their organization's enterprise in a  
79 manner that achieves security goals with minimum impact on operational efficiency and  
80 expense

81 Commercial, standards-based products such as the ones we used are readily available and  
82 interoperable with existing information technology infrastructure and investments. While our  
83 simulated environment might be most similar in breadth and diversity to the widely distributed  
84 networks of large organizations, this guide is modular and provides guidance on the  
85 implementation of unified SA capabilities to organizations of all sizes. These organizations  
86 include but are not limited to corporate and regional business offices, power generation plants,  
87 and substations.

88 This guide lists all the necessary components and provides installation, configuration, and  
89 integration information with the intent that an energy company can replicate what we have  
90 built. The NCCoE does not particularly endorse the suite of commercial products used in our  
91 reference design. These products were used after an open call to participate via the Federal  
92 Register. Your utility's security experts should identify the standards-based products that will

93 best integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. Your company can adopt  
94 this solution or one that adheres to these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a  
95 starting point for tailoring and implementing parts of a solution.

### 96 1.3 Risks

97 This practice guide addresses risk using current industry standards, such as the North American  
98 Electric Reliability Corporation's Critical Infrastructure Protection (NERC CIP) standards, as well  
99 as taking into account risk considerations at both the operational and strategic levels.

100 At the strategic level, you might consider the cost of mitigating these risks and the potential  
101 return on your investment in implementing a product (or multiple products). You might also  
102 want to assess if a converged SA platform can help enhance the productivity of employees,  
103 minimize impacts to your operating environment, and provide the ability to investigate  
104 incidents in order to mitigate future occurrences. This example solution addresses imminent  
105 operational security risks and incorporates strategic risk considerations.

106 Operationally, the lack of a converged SA platform, especially one with the ability to collect and  
107 correlate sensor data from all silos, can increase both the risk of malicious cyber attacks being  
108 directed at your organization, or worse, the resulting damage that might ensue should such  
109 attacks go undetected. At a fundamental level, SA provides alerts to potential malicious  
110 behavior, which includes detection, prevention, and reporting mechanisms to ensure that  
111 proper remediation and investigation take place should these events occur.

112 Adopting any new technology, including this example SA solution, can introduce new risks to  
113 your enterprise. However, by aggregating sensor data from the silos (OT, PACS, and IT), a utility  
114 can increase its ability to identify a potentially malicious event that might otherwise go  
115 undetected or unreported. The lack of ability to see across the silos and correlate event data  
116 yields a potential blind spot to the safe and secure operation of utilities' most critical business  
117 assets.

### 118 1.4 Benefits

119 The NCCoE, in collaboration with our stakeholders in the energy sector, identified the need for a  
120 network monitoring solution specifically adapted for control systems. The following are what  
121 we determined to be the key (but not exclusive) benefits for implementing this solution:

- 122 ■ improves a utility's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior,  
123 likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of critical incidents on energy delivery,  
124 thereby lowering overall business risk
- 125 ■ increases the probability that investigations of attacks or anomalous system behavior will  
126 reach successful conclusions
- 127 ■ improves accountability and traceability, leading to valuable operational lessons learned
- 128 ■ simplifies regulatory compliance by automating generation and collection of a variety of  
129 operational log data

## 2 How to Use This Guide

This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a standards-based reference design and provides users with the information they need to replicate the example solution. This reference design is modular and can be deployed in whole or in parts.

This guide contains three volumes:

- NIST SP 1800-7a: *Executive Summary*
- NIST SP 1800-7b: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics* - what we built and why (**you are here**)
- NIST SP 1800-7c: *How-To Guides* - instructions for building the example solution

Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

**Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers** will be interested in the *Executive Summary (NIST SP 1800-7a)*, which describes the:

- challenges energy sector organizations face in maintaining cross-silo situational awareness
- example solution built at the NCCoE
- benefits of adopting the example solution

**Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess, and mitigate risk will be interested in this part of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-7b*, which describes what we did and why. The following sections will be of particular interest:

- [Section 3.4, Risk Assessment and Mitigation](#), provides a description of the risk analysis we performed
- [Section 3.4.2, Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping](#), maps the security characteristics of this example solution to cybersecurity standards and best practices

You might share the *Executive Summary, NIST SP 1800-7a*, with your leadership team members to help them understand the importance of adopting standards-based situational awareness solution.

**Industrial Control Systems and Information Technology Security professionals** who want to implement an approach like this will find the whole practice guide useful. You can use the How-To portion of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-7c*, to replicate all or parts of the build created in our lab. The How-To guide provides specific product installation, configuration, and integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not recreate the product manufacturers' documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing parts of a solution including PACS, OT, IT systems, and business processes. Your organization's security experts should identify the products that will best integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope you will seek

41 products that are congruent with applicable standards and best practices. [Section 3.5,](#)  
 42 [Technologies](#), lists the products we used and maps them to the cybersecurity controls provided  
 43 by this reference solution.

44 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe “the” solution, but a possible solution.  
 45 This is a draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments,  
 46 suggestions, and success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please  
 47 contribute your thoughts to [energy\\_nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:energy_nccoe@nist.gov).

## 48 2.1 Typographical Conventions

49 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

50 **Table 2.1** Typographical Conventions

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>italics</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ filenames and pathnames</li> <li>■ references to documents that are not hyperlinks, new terms, and placeholders</li> </ul>	For detailed definitions of terms, see the <i>NCCoE Glossary</i> .
<b>bold</b>	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose <b>File &gt; Edit</b>
Monospace	command-line input, on-screen computer output, sample code examples, status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
<b>Monospace Bold</b>	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<b><code>service sshd start</code></b>
<a href="#">blue text</a>	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST’s National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence are available at <a href="http://nccoe.nist.gov">http://nccoe.nist.gov</a>

# 3 Approach

2	3.1 Audience .....	9
3	3.2 Scope .....	9
4	3.3 Assumptions.....	9
5	3.4 Risk Assessment and Mitigation .....	10
6	3.5 Technologies .....	14
7	3.6 Situational Awareness Test Cases .....	18

8 The NCCoE initiated this project because security leaders in the energy sector told us that a lack  
9 of cross-silo SA was a primary security concern to them. As we developed and refined the  
10 original problem statement, or use case, on which this project is based, we consulted with chief  
11 information officers, chief information security officers, security management personnel, and  
12 others with financial decision-making responsibility (particularly for security) in the energy  
13 sector.

14 Energy sector colleagues shared that they need to know when cybersecurity events occur  
15 throughout the organization. Additionally, the information generated about such events should  
16 be used to correlate data between various sources before arriving at a converged platform.  
17 Security staff need to be aware of potential or actual cybersecurity incidents in their IT, OT and  
18 PACS systems, and to view these alerts on a single converged platform. Furthermore, it is  
19 essential that this platform has the ability to drill down, investigate, and subsequently fully  
20 remediate or effectively mitigate a cybersecurity incident affecting any or all of the  
21 organization.

22 The example solution in this guide uses commercially available capabilities designed to perform  
23 these critical functions. Though security components and tools already exist in most utilities,  
24 the value of this NCCoE build can be seen in its ability to span across all silos and correlate  
25 sensor data. Currently, utilities rely on separate, and perhaps disparate, systems to provide  
26 security data. It is time consuming for staff to comb through OT or IT device event logs, physical  
27 access data, and other system data in order to trace anomalies to their source. A real-time SA  
28 platform with a well-developed alerting mechanism can speed up the process of detecting  
29 potentially malicious events, providing the information necessary to focus an investigation,  
30 making a determination regarding the potential issue, and remediating or mitigating any  
31 negative effects.

32 We constructed an end-to-end SA platform that includes many of the components necessary to  
33 eliminate or mitigate the impact of attacks directed at utilities. The solution employs the use of  
34 actual grid data sent to numerous applications and devices to increase cybersecurity. The  
35 solution includes:

- 36 ■ asset inventorying (especially for ICS devices)
- 37 ■ data-in-transit encryption
- 38 ■ advanced security dashboard views
- 39 ■ configuration change alerts
- 40 ■ behavioral anomaly detection
- 41 ■ SIEM capability
- 42 ■ unidirectional gateway functionality for ICS network protection
- 43 ■ single source timestamping and log transmission capability
- 44 ■ Structured Query Language (SQL) injection detection
- 45 ■ intrusion detection/prevention

## 3.1 Audience

This guide is intended for individuals or entities who are interested in understanding the architecture of the end-to-end situational awareness platform the NCCoE has designed and implemented to enable energy sector security staff to receive correlated information on cybersecurity events that occur throughout their IT, OT, and PACS systems on a single, converged platform. It may also be of interest to anyone in the energy sector, industry, academia, or government who seeks general knowledge of an original design and benefits of a situational awareness security solution for energy sector organizations.

## 3.2 Scope

The focus of this project is to address the risk of not being able to prevent, detect, or mitigate cyberattacks against OT, IT, and PACS infrastructure in a timely manner, a topic indicated by the energy sector as a critical cybersecurity concern. In response, the NCCoE drafted a use case that identified numerous desired solution characteristics. After an open call in the Federal Register for vendors to help develop a solution, we chose participating technology collaborators on a first come, first served basis.

We scoped the project to produce the following high-level desired outcomes:

1. provide a real-time, converged SA capability that includes sensor data from OT, IT and PACS networks and devices
2. provide a variety of cyber attack prevention, detection, response, reporting, and mitigation capabilities
3. correlate meaningful sensor data between silos, or between devices within individual silos, that will produce actionable alerts
4. provide a single view of this correlated alerting platform data which can be customized to accommodate the needs of individual organizations

The objective is to perform all four capabilities and display on a single interface that can serve as the authoritative source for security analysts monitoring the security of the assets on an energy provider's facilities, networks, and systems.

## 3.3 Assumptions

This project is guided by the following assumptions, which should be considered when evaluating whether to implement the solution in your organization.

### 3.3.1 Security

The SA example solution supports data monitoring, collection, aggregation, and analysis, with the goal of enabling a robust SA capability.

In the security analysis, we assume that all potential adopters of the build or of any of its components already have in place some degree of network security. Therefore, we focus only on new security protections provided by the reference design and new vulnerabilities that

82 might be introduced if organizations implement the reference design. The security analysis  
83 cannot be expected to identify all weaknesses, especially those that might be introduced in a  
84 specific deployment or by specific commercial off-the-shelf products.

### 85 3.3.2 Existing Infrastructure

86 We assume that you already have some combination of the capabilities discussed in this  
87 example solution. A combination of some of the components described here, or a single  
88 component, can improve your overall security posture for OT, IT and PACS, without requiring  
89 you to remove or replace your existing infrastructure. This guide provides both a complete  
90 end-to-end solution and options you can implement based on your needs.

91 This example solution is made of many commercially available components. The solution is  
92 modular in that you can swap one of the products we used for one that is better suited for your  
93 environment.

#### 94 3.3.2.1 Technical Implementation

95 The guide is written from a “how-to” perspective. Its foremost purpose is to provide details on  
96 how to install, configure, and integrate components, and how to construct correlated alerts  
97 based on the capabilities we selected. We assume that an energy provider has the technical  
98 resources to implement all or parts of the example solution, or has access to integrator  
99 companies that can perform the implementation.

### 100 3.3.3 Capability Variation

101 We fully understand that the capabilities presented here are not the only security capabilities  
102 available to the industry. Desired security capabilities will vary considerably from one company  
103 to the next. As mentioned in the scope, our key here is to provide SA utilizing sensor data from  
104 OT, IT and PACS. We selected what we believe to be a basic and fundamental approach to SA.

## 105 3.4 Risk Assessment and Mitigation

106 We performed two types of risk assessment: the initial analysis of the risk posed to the energy  
107 sector as a whole, which led to the creation of the use case and the desired security  
108 characteristics, and an analysis to show users how to manage the risk to components  
109 introduced by adoption of the solution.

### 110 3.4.1 Assessing Risk Posture

111 According to NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-30, *Risk Management Guide for Information*  
112 *Technology Systems*, “Risk is the net negative impact of the exercise of a vulnerability,  
113 considering both the probability and the impact of occurrence. Risk management is the process  
114 of identifying risk, assessing risk, and taking steps to reduce risk to an acceptable level.” The  
115 NCCoE recommends that any discussion of risk management, particularly at the enterprise  
116 level, begin with a comprehensive review of the Risk Management Framework (RMF)<sup>1</sup> material  
117 available to the public.

118 Using the guidance in NIST's series of SPs concerning the RMF, we performed two key activities  
119 to identify the most compelling risks encountered by energy providers. The first activity was a  
120 face-to-face meeting with members of the energy community to define the main security risks  
121 to business operations. This meeting identified a primary risk concern: the lack of a  
122 comprehensive or cross-silo SA capability, particularly one that would include sensor data from  
123 OT networks and devices. We then identified the core risk area, SA, and established the core  
124 operational risks encountered daily in this area.

125 We deemed the following as tactical risks:

- 126 ■ lack of data visualization and analysis capabilities that help dispatchers and security  
127 analysts view control system behavior, network security events, and physical security  
128 events as a cohesive whole
- 129 ■ lack of analysis and correlation capabilities that could help dispatchers and security analysts  
130 understand and identify security events and predict how those events might affect control  
131 system operational data from a variety of sources
- 132 ■ inability to aggregate and correlate logs, traffic, and operational data from a variety of  
133 sources in OT, IT, and PACS device networks
- 134 ■ inability to allow dispatchers and security analysts to easily automate common, repetitive  
135 investigative tasks

136 Our second key activity was conducting phone interviews with members of the energy sector.  
137 These interviews gave us a better understanding of the actual business risks as they relate to  
138 the potential cost and business value. NIST SP 800-39, *Managing Information Security Risk*,  
139 focuses particularly on the business aspect of risk, namely at the enterprise level. This  
140 foundation is essential for any further risk analysis, risk response/mitigation, and risk  
141 monitoring activities. Below is a summary of the strategic risks:

- 142 ■ impact on service delivery
- 143 ■ cost of implementation
- 144 ■ budget expenditures as they relate to investment in security technologies
- 145 ■ projected cost savings and operational efficiencies to be gained as a result of new  
146 investment in security
- 147 ■ compliance with existing industry standards
- 148 ■ high-quality reputation or public image
- 149 ■ risk of alternative or no action
- 150 ■ successful precedents

151 Undertaking these activities in accordance with the NIST RMF guidance yielded the necessary  
152 operational and strategic risk information, which we subsequently translated to security  
153 characteristics. We mapped these characteristics to NIST's SP 800-53 Rev.4 controls where  
154 applicable, along with other applicable industry and mainstream security standards.

---

1. National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), Risk Management Framework (RMF)  
<http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/SMA/fisma/Risk-Management-Framework/>

## 155 3.4.2 Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping

156 As explained in [Section 3.4.1](#), we derived the security characteristics through a risk analysis  
 157 process conducted in collaboration with our energy sector stakeholders. This is a critical first  
 158 step in acquiring or developing the capability necessary to mitigate the risks as identified by our  
 159 stakeholders. [Table 3.1](#) presents the desired security characteristics of the use case in terms of  
 160 the subcategories of the Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity. Each  
 161 subcategory is mapped to relevant NIST standards, industry standards, controls, and best  
 162 practices. We did not observe any example solution security characteristics that mapped to  
 163 Respond or Recover Subcategories.

164 **Table 3.1 Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping—NIST Cybersecurity Framework (CSF)**

CSF Function	CSF Subcategory	SP800-53R4 <sup>a</sup>	IEC/ISO 27001 <sup>b</sup>	CIS CSC <sup>c</sup>	NERC-CIP v5 <sup>d</sup>
Identify	ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried	CM-8	A.8.1.1 A.8.1.2	CSC-1	CIP-002-5.1
	ID.AM-2: Software platforms and applications within the organization are inventoried	CM-8	A.8.1.1 A.8.1.2	CSC-2	CIP-002-5.1
Protect	PR.AC-2: Physical access to assets is managed and protected	PE-2, PE-3, PE-4, PE-5, PE-6, PE-9	A.11.1.1 A.11.1.2 A.11.1.4 A.11.1.6 A.11.2.3		CIP-006-6
	PR.DS-6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity	SI-7	A.12.2.1 A.12.5.1 A.14.1.2 A.14.1.3		
	PR.PT-1: Audit/log records are determined, documented, implemented, and reviewed in accordance with policy	AU family	A.12.4.1 A.12.4.2 A.12.4.3 A.12.4.4 A.12.7.1	CSC-6	CIP-006-6

**Table 3.1 Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping—NIST Cybersecurity Framework (CSF)**

CSF Function	CSF Subcategory	SP800-53R4 <sup>a</sup>	IEC/ISO 27001 <sup>b</sup>	CIS CSC <sup>c</sup>	NERC-CIP v5 <sup>d</sup>
Detect	DE.AE-1: A baseline of network operations and expected data flows for users and systems is established and managed	AC-4, CA-3, CM-2, SI-4			
	DE.AE-2: Detected events are analyzed to understand attack targets and methods	AU-6, CA-7, IR-4, SI-4	A.16.1.1 A.16.1.4		CIP-008-5
	DE.AE-3: Event data are aggregated and correlated from multiple sources and sensors	AU-6, CA-7, IR-4, IR-5, IR-8, SI-4			CIP-007-6
	DE.AE-4: Impact of events is determined	CP-2, IR-4, RA-3, SI-4			CIP-008-5
	DE.AE-5: Incident alert thresholds are established	IR-4, IR-5, IR-8			CIP-008-5
	DE.CM-1: The network is monitored to detect potential cybersecurity events	AC-2, AU-12, CA-7, CM-3, SC-5, SC-7, SI-4			CIP-005-5 CIP-007-6
	DE.CM-2: The physical environment is monitored to detect potential cybersecurity events	CA-7, PE-3, PE-6, PE-20			CIP-006-6
	DE.CM-3: Personnel activity is monitored to detect potential cybersecurity events	AC-2, AU-12, AU-13, CA-7, CM-10, CM-11	A.12.4.1		CIP-006-6
	DE.CM-4: Malicious code is detected	SI-3	A.12.2.1	CSC-5	CIP-007-6
	DE.CM-7: Monitoring for unauthorized personnel, connections, devices, and software is performed	AU-12, CA-7, CM-3, CM-8, PE-3, PE-6, PE-20, SI-4			CIP-005-5

- Mapping taken from “Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity,” NIST, February 12, 2014
- Mapping taken from “Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity,” NIST, February 12, 2014
- Mapping prepared using “The CIS Security Controls for Effective Cyber Defense, Version 6.0,” Center for Internet Security, October 15, 2015
- Mapping prepared using <http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Pages/CIPStandards.aspx>

165 **3.5 Technologies**

166 Table 3.2 lists all of the technologies used in this project and provides a mapping between the generic application term, the specific  
 167 product used, and the security control(s) that the product provides in the example solution<sup>2</sup>. Table 3.2 describes only the functions and  
 168 CSF subcategories implemented in the example solution. Products may have functionality not described in the table. Refer to Table 3.1  
 169 for an explanation of the CSF Subcategory codes.  
 170

**Table 3.2 Products and Technologies**

Component	Product	Function	CSF Subcategories
Security Information and Event Management (SIEM)	HPE ArcSight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ aggregates all IT, windows, OT (ICS) and physical access monitoring, event, and log data collected by the reference design</li> <li>■ acts as a data normalization and correlation point and enables queries to be developed and executed to detect potential security incidents</li> <li>■ serves as the central location at which the analyst can access all data collected</li> </ul>	DE.AE-3, DE.AE-5 Related Subcategories: PR.PT-1, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-2, DE.CM-3, DE.CM-7
Network Tap	IXIA TP-CU3 Tap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ collects data from specific locations on the ICS network and send it to the monitoring server via the ICS firewall</li> <li>■ the taps are passive, so if they lose power or otherwise fail, they will not adversely affect the ICS network</li> <li>■ collects data via monitor ports that are inherently unidirectional (and so do not pose any threat of information leaking from the tap onto the ICS network)</li> </ul>	DE.CM-1

---

2.Note that two instances of the log collector component are present in the reference design: one in the reference design's monitoring/data collection sub-architecture and another in its data aggregation/analysis sub-architecture. Integrity seals that are applied by a log collector can only be verified at that log collector. Therefore, the log collector that is in the operations facility does not apply an integrity seal to its entries because these integrity seals cannot be verified in the enterprise.

**Table 3.2 Products and Technologies**

Component	Product	Function	CSF Subcategories
Log Collector/ Aggregator	TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ log collection and aggregation</li> <li>■ adds a time stamp and integrity seals the log entries</li> <li>■ log collection in the operations facility protects against potential data loss in the event that the communications channel between the operations and enterprise facilities fails</li> <li>■ aggregating the log entries of all monitoring components at the operations log collector/aggregator ensures that this log data gets buffered in the operations facility and can be transferred later in the event that network connectivity to the enterprise network is lost</li> </ul>	PR.DS-6, PR.DS-6, PR.PT-1, DE.AE-3
ICS Asset Management System	Dragos Security CyberLens	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ monitors ICS traffic and maintains a database of all ICS assets of which it is aware</li> <li>■ this enables it to detect new ICS devices, ICS devices that disappear, and changes to known ICS devices</li> </ul>	ID.AM-1
Network Visualization Tool	Dragos Security CyberLens	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ displays a depiction of network devices, connectivity, and traffic flows</li> </ul>	Does not directly support a CSF subcategory. Related Subcategory: ID.AM-3
Physical Access Control System	RS2 Access It!	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ controls user access to doors</li> <li>■ detects and reports door open/close events and user identity</li> </ul>	PR.AC-2
Physical Access Sensor	RS2 door controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ senses door close/open events</li> <li>■ generates alerts when door open and close events occur</li> </ul>	DE.CM-2
ICS Network Intrusion Detection System (IDS)	Radiflow iSIM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ identify, monitor, and report anomalous ICS traffic that might indicate a potential intrusion</li> </ul>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-7

Table 3.2 Products and Technologies

Component	Product	Function	CSF Subcategories
Historian	OSIsoft Pi Historian	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>serves as a data repository that essentially replicates the database of collected ICS values on the ICS network's Historian</li> <li>can be configured to generate alerts when changes to certain ICS process values occur</li> </ul>	Does not support a CSF subcategory in and of itself. It provides the data to be monitored by the ICS behavior monitor (next item). Related Subcategories: DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1
ICS Behavior Monitor	ICS <sup>2</sup> On-Guard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>monitor ICS process variable values in the Historian to assess application behavior, detect process anomalies, and generate alerts</li> </ul>	DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1
Application Monitor & Protection	Waratek Runtime Application Protection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>monitors &amp; protects a running application, analyzes the data it collects, and detects and reports unusual application behavior, e.g., it might generate an alert if it detects a potential SQL injection attack against the SIEM</li> </ul>	DE.AE-2, DE.AE-4, DE.AE-5, DE.CM-4
Analysis Workflow Engine	RSA Archer Security Operations Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>automates workflow associated with review and analysis of data that has been collected at the SIEM</li> <li>enables orchestration of various analytic engines</li> </ul>	DE.AE-2
Unidirectional gateway	Waterfall unidirectional security gateway	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>allows data to flow in only one direction</li> </ul>	PR.AC-5, PR.PT-4
Visualization Tool	RSA Archer Security Operations Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>provides data reduction and a dashboard capability for the data in the SIEM, as well as risk analysis</li> </ul>	This component does not support a CSF subcategory in and of itself. Related Subcategory: ID.AM-3

**Table 3.2 Products and Technologies**

Component	Product	Function	CSF Subcategories
Electronic Access Control and Monitoring Systems (EACMS)	TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ authenticates system managers</li> <li>■ provides role-based access control of system management functions</li> <li>■ implements a “protocol break” between the system manager and the managed assets</li> <li>■ records all system management actions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-3, PR.AC-4, PR.MA-2, PR.PT-1, PR.PT-3, DE.CM-3
	Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ authenticates system managers</li> <li>■ provides role-based access control of system management functions</li> <li>■ implements a “protocol break” between the system manager and the managed assets</li> <li>■ records all system management actions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-3, PR.AC-4, PR.MA-2, PR.PT-1, PR.PT-3, DE.CM-3
	Waterfall Secure Bypass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ provides time-limited network connectivity to perform system management functions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-5, PR.PT-4
	Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ controls network connectivity for performing system management functions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-5, PR.PT-4

<sup>171</sup> **3.6 Situational Awareness Test Cases**

<sup>172</sup> **Table 3.3 Situational Awareness Test Cases**

Test Case	Purpose	Operational Description	Events	Desired Outcome
<p><b>SA-1: Event Correlation for OT and PACS</b></p>	<p>This test case focuses on the possibility of correlated events involving OT and PACS that might indicate compromised access.</p>	<p>This test case considers the correlation of events from two silos, which provides an indication of a potential security issue to the SIEM. A technician entering a sub-station is inconsequential and expected behavior. However, if a device goes down and triggers alarms within a certain time frame, there is a possible correlation of these two events. It should not automatically be assumed that malicious behavior is the cause. There might be scheduled maintenance to be performed on a certain device, which would provide a perfectly reasonable explanation for this test case. The key here is the correlation of the activity, which provides an indicator that could narrow possibilities and start an investigation into the activity more quickly than having an analyst looking at individual events and attempting to correlate them manually. To learn more about the data fields used to create the alert, see section 3.2.1 of NIST SP 1800-7c, Test Cases.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ technician accesses sub-station/control-station</li> <li>■ OT device goes down</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ alert of anomalous condition that correlates to a physical and ICS network event</li> </ul>

**Table 3.3 Situational Awareness Test Cases**

Test Case	Purpose	Operational Description	Events	Desired Outcome
<p><b>SA-2 Event Correlation - OT &amp; IT</b></p>	<p>SQLi injection detection</p>	<p>This test case demonstrates how SQL injections (SQLi) can be detected. In this instance, the baseline assumption is that applications in the IT (corporate/enterprise) network can conduct limited communication with some devices in the OT network to generate information needed by corporate operations on usage, billing, accounting, or some other type of business information.</p> <p>This is a common scenario-typically a specific Historian would be dedicated for this purpose, perhaps in a network demilitarized zone (DMZ). This scenario is definitely preferable, but there are too many variations in networks to account for all of them. The example we provide is focused on the detection of SQLi, specifically directed at OT devices or devices connected to OT devices. To learn more about the data fields used to create the alert, see section 3.2.1 of NIST SP 1800-7c, Test Cases.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ detection of SQLi on IT device interconnected with OT device</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ alert sent to SIEM on multiple SQLi attempts</li> </ul>

**Table 3.3 Situational Awareness Test Cases**

Test Case	Purpose	Operational Description	Events	Desired Outcome
<p><b>SA-3 Event Correlation - OT &amp; IT / PACS-OT</b></p>	<p>Unauthorized access attempts detected and alerts triggered based on connection requests from a device on the Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) network destined for an internet protocol (IP) that is outside of the SCADA IP range. This test case focuses on the possibility of a malicious actor attempting to gain access to an OT device via the Enterprise (IT) network. This test case is also relevant in a PACS-OT scenario, in which someone has physical access to an OT device but lacks the necessary access to perform changes to the device, and alerts are sent based on numerous failed login attempts.</p>	<p>Unauthorized access attempts can be made in numerous ways. For test case 3, we demonstrate an alerting capability that triggers when an ICS device located on the OT network attempts to communicate with an IT device outside of the authorized parameters. A key assumption here is that proper security measures have been instituted on the OT network to detect and alert for false connection requests.</p> <p>This scenario can also be correlated with PACS and OT, where numerous failed login attempts on a particular device trigger alerts to the SIEM. Since the origination of the connection attempt starts within the OT network, one must first investigate internally to determine the location of the device and who had access to the location where all of this activity occurred. To learn more about the data fields used to create the alert, see section 3.2.1 of NIST SP 1800-7c, Test Cases.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ inbound/outbound connection attempts from devices outside of authorized and known inventory</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ alert to SIEM showing IP of unidentified host attempting to connect, or identified host attempting to connect to unidentified host</li> </ul>

**Table 3.3 Situational Awareness Test Cases**

Test Case	Purpose	Operational Description	Events	Desired Outcome
<b>SA-4 Data Infiltration Attempts:</b>	Examine behavior of systems; configure SIEM to alert on behavior which is outside the normal baseline. Alerts can be created emanating from OT, IT and PACS. This test case seeks alerting based on behavioral anomalies, rather than recognition of IP addresses, and guards against anomalous or malicious inputs.	Baselining the proper operations and communications of an OT network is essential to being able to detect behavioral anomalies. Inserting security capabilities to confirm the normal operation of the OT network and alert to the detection of anomalous behavior provides an essential SA capability to the operator. Anomalous behavior can include any type of security or operational issue which falls outside of pre-defined thresholds. Here, we seek to focus specifically on anomalous behavior as it relates to data changes in the ICS protocols that could provide an indication of a security concern; whether it be data infiltration (rogue data inputs and/or malicious data manipulation), or some other variance that falls outside of the what is considered to be the normal baseline. To learn more about the data fields used to create the alert, see section 3.2.1 of NIST SP 1800-7c, Test Cases.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ anomalous behavior falling outside defined baseline</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ alert sent to SIEM on any event falling outside of what is considered normal activity based on historical data</li> </ul>
<b>SA-5 Configuration Management</b>	Unauthorized (inadvertent or malicious) uploading of an ICS network device configuration. Alert will be created to notify SIEM this has occurred. Detection method will be primarily based on inherent device capability (i.e. log files).	For this test case, we focused on the unauthorized loading of a new configuration on a networking or security device in the ICS network. If a firewall, switch, or router configuration change is made, the SA solution can detect the change and send an alert to the SIEM. The SIEM provides awareness of these changes to those concerned with the security of the OT network and devices. Once they have the information, they can determine whether or not the change was authorized. Malicious changes to the OT network or devices, if undetected, can pave the way for numerous exploits and reintroduce significant risk to the OT network. To learn more about the data fields used to create the alert, see section 3.2.1 of NIST SP 1800-7c, Test Cases.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ configuration change on Tofino FW, Cisco 2950</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ alert will be created to notify SIEM this has occurred</li> </ul>

**Table 3.3 Situational Awareness Test Cases**

Test Case	Purpose	Operational Description	Events	Desired Outcome
<p><b>SA-6 Rogue Device Detection</b></p>	<p>Alerts are triggered by the introduction of any device onto the ICS network that has not been registered with the asset management capability in the build.</p>	<p>A primary concern of ICS owners and operators is the introduction of unauthorized devices onto the OT network. This test case focuses on the introduction of a device that has not been previously registered to the asset management tool. This test case assumes the absolute necessity of having an ICS asset management tool in place, and properly maintaining inventory throughout the lifecycle of all the devices. It is essential that this be in place, as determining the difference between authorized and unauthorized devices will be extremely difficult without one. To learn more about the data fields used to create the alert, see section 3.2.1 of NIST SP 1800-7c, Test Cases.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ unidentified device appears on ICS network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ alert will be created to notify SIEM this has occurred</li> </ul>

## 4 Architecture

2	4.1 Example Solution Description .....	24
3	4.2 Example Solution Monitoring, Data Collection, and Analysis .....	26
4	4.3 Example Solution Remote Management Connection .....	31

5 “Cyber situational awareness involves the normalization, de-confliction, and correlation of  
6 disparate sensor data and the ability to analyze data and display the results of these analyses.”<sup>1</sup>  
7 This guide presents an architecture for instrumenting the ICS network of a utility's OT silo with  
8 sensors to collect cyber events. These events are then sent to a SIEM system where they are  
9 normalized and correlated with cyber events from the IT silo and physical access events. Once  
10 collected in the SIEM, events from all three silos can be analyzed to provide a converged picture  
11 of the cyber situation. Relevant information from this converged picture can then be provided  
12 to OT, IT, and physical security personnel.

13 This section describes both an example solution for providing converged situational awareness  
14 across OT, IT and physical security and a prototype implementation or “lab build” of the  
15 example solution constructed by NCCoE to validate the example solution.

- 16 ■ [Section 4.1, Example Solution Description](#), describes the logical components that make up  
17 the example solution.
- 18 ■ [Section 4.2, Example Solution Monitoring, Data Collection, and Analysis](#), provides details of  
19 the components used to monitor and collect data from operations, transmit the data to the  
20 enterprise services, and analyze the collected data to identify events of interest and detect  
21 potential cyber incidents.
  - 22 ● [Section 4.2.1, Example Solution Monitoring and Data Collection Lab Build](#), describes the  
23 lab prototype of the Monitoring and Data Collection portion of the example solution.
  - 24 ● [Section 4.2.2, Example Solution Data Aggregation and Analysis Lab Build](#), describes the  
25 lab prototype of the Data Aggregation and Analysis portion of the example solution.
- 26 ■ [Section 4.3, Example Solution Remote Management Connection](#), provides details of the  
27 components that comprise the on-demand limited-access remote management  
28 connection.
  - 29 ● [Section 4.3.1, Example Solution Operations Remote Management Lab Build](#), describes  
30 the lab prototype of remote management for Operations facilities.
  - 31 ● [Section 4.3.2, Example Solution Enterprise Remote Management Lab Build](#), describes  
32 the lab prototype of remote management for Enterprise services.

## 33 4.1 Example Solution Description

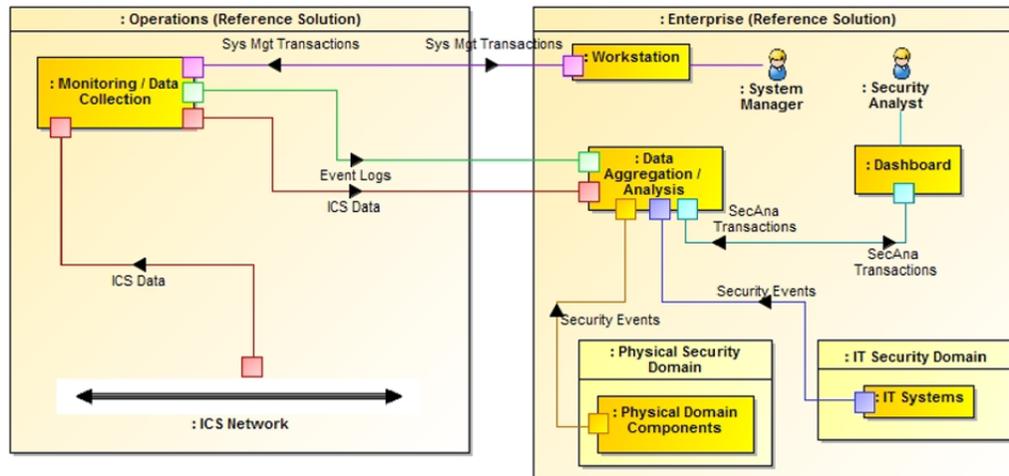
34 A high-level view of the example solution is depicted in [Figure 4.1](#). The solution consists of a  
35 Monitoring/Data Collection component, which is deployed to Operations facilities such as  
36 substations and generating plants, and a Data Aggregation/Analysis component that is  
37 deployed as a single service for the enterprise. Data is collected from the ICS network by the  
38 Monitoring/Data Collection component, and sent to the Data Aggregation/Analysis  
39 component. To protect the ICS network and the Operations facility, the flow of data is restricted  
40 to be unidirectional out of Operations and into the Enterprise services.

41 At the Enterprise Data Aggregation/Analysis component data from the ICS network is combined  
42 with data from physical security monitoring and business systems monitoring. Combining  
43 monitoring data from Operations, physical security, and business systems is the basis for  
44 providing comprehensive cyber situational awareness.

---

1. [http://itlaw.wikia.com/wiki/Cyber\\_situational\\_awareness](http://itlaw.wikia.com/wiki/Cyber_situational_awareness)

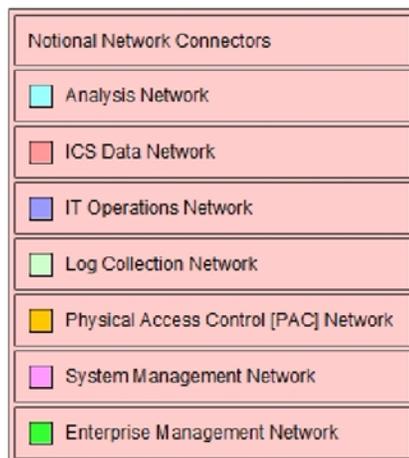
Figure 4.1 High-level Example Solution Architecture



In addition to the unidirectional flow of monitoring data out of operations, an on-demand, limited-access bidirectional system management connection is provided from the enterprise to each operations facility. This connection provides remote access to manage the software that monitors the ICS network and operations components.

Figure 4.2 provides a color-coded legend identifying the different types of network connections portrayed in diagrams throughout section 4.

Figure 4.2 Network Connections Color Code



- Analysis network - connects situational awareness analysis functions
- ICS Data Network - connects ICS monitoring functions
- IT Operations Network - connects IT business systems
- Log Collection Network - connects log collection and aggregation functions
- Physical Access Control (PAC) Network - connects physical access control functions

- 60 ■ System Management Network - provides system managers remote access to ICS monitoring  
61 functions
- 62 ■ Enterprise Management Network - provides vendor remote access to the NCCoE energy  
63 sector lab

## 64 4.2 Example Solution Monitoring, Data Collection, and Analysis

65 Figure 4.3 depicts the monitoring and data collection components deployed in operations and  
66 the data aggregation and analysis components deployed as enterprise services. Operations has  
67 five main sources of monitoring information:

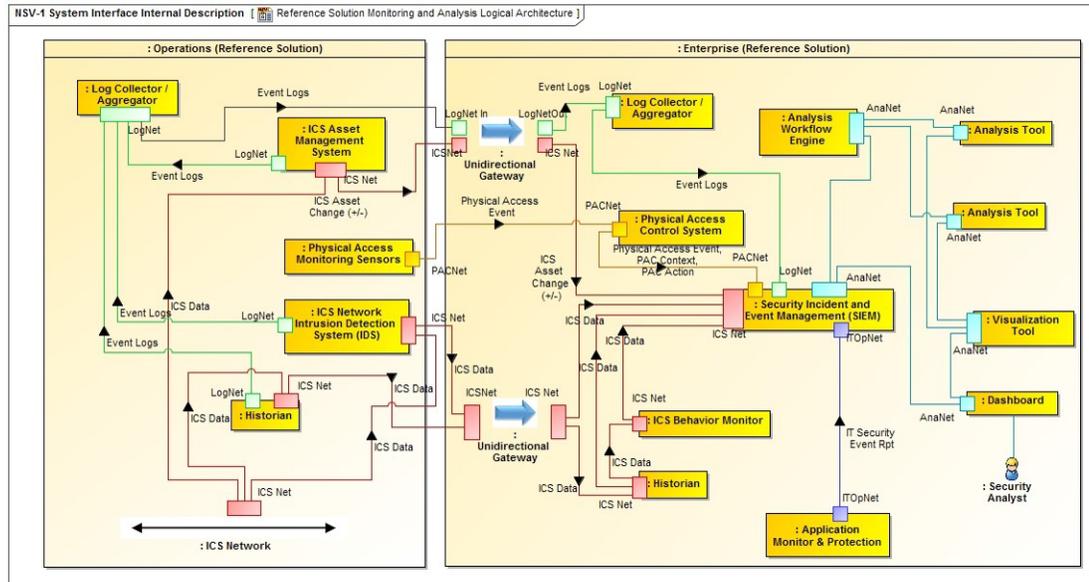
- 68 ■ ICS Asset Management System - this component monitors the ICS network to identify the  
69 devices connected to and communicating over the network. It sends an event to the  
70 enterprise Security Information and Event Management (SIEM) system when a new device  
71 is identified on the ICS network, or if a known device disappears from the network.
- 72 ■ ICS Network Intrusion Detection system - this component monitors ICS network traffic for  
73 traffic that matches a signature of known suspicious activity. When suspicious activity is  
74 detected, an event is sent to the enterprise SIEM.
- 75 ■ Historian - this component collects parameter values from the industrial control systems in  
76 operations and replicates them to a second Historian in enterprise. The operations  
77 Historian is assumed to be an existing ICS component.
- 78 ■ Log Collector/Aggregator - this component collects log data from all of the other monitoring  
79 components in operations, stores them locally, and replicates the log data to another log  
80 collector aggregator in enterprise. Logs are captured and stored locally to prevent loss of  
81 log data should communications between operations and enterprise be disrupted.
- 82 ■ Physical Access Monitoring Sensors - these components monitor physical access to the  
83 operations facility. They detect events such as doors opening or closing and report those  
84 events to the PACS in enterprise.

85 A unidirectional gateway connects monitoring functions in Operations to analysis functions in  
86 Enterprise. This ensures data flows in only one direction, out of Operations.

87 Enterprise contains the following components:

- 88 ■ Log Collector/Aggregator- this component receives log data from the operations facilities  
89 and sends it to the SIEM.
- 90 ■ Physical Access Control System (PACS) - this component monitors physical access to all  
91 facilities and generates events to the SIEM when physical access occurs, such as doors or  
92 windows being opened and closed.

Figure 4.3 Monitoring, Data Collection, and Analysis Example Solution



- Historian - this component receives replicated ICS data from the operations Historian.
- ICS Behavior Monitor - this component compares ICS data from the Historian with expected values based on normal operations. It sends events to the SIEM when ICS data deviates from normal behavior on a particular ICS network.
- Application Monitor & Protection - this component monitors IT applications for suspicious behavior and sends events to the SIEM
- Security Information and Event Management (SIEM) system - this component receives and stores events from sensors, normalizes the data, correlates events from multiple sensors, and generates alerts.
- Analysis Workflow Engine - to the extent feasible, this component automates the execution of courses of action related to events collected in the SIEM.
- Analysis Tools - these components implement algorithms that examine data from the SIEM to identify events of interest and potential cyber incidents. These components report this information to security analysts via the visualization tool.
- Visualization Tool - this component provides alerts and other cyber SA information to security analysts and allows them to examine the underlying data that lead to an alert.

Enterprise components serve one of two primary responsibilities, collect event data from operations into a common repository, the SIEM, or analyze data in the SIEM to detect suspicious events and potential cyber incidents.

A unidirectional gateway is used to ensure the data flows from the components in Operations that monitor the ICS network are one-way data flows from Operations to Enterprise.

## 116 4.2.1 Example Solution Monitoring and Data Collection Lab Build

117 Figure 4.4 shows the products used to build an instance of the monitoring and data collection  
118 portion of the example solution. The instance was constructed at the University of Maryland's  
119 (UMd) power cogeneration plant. As a result of this collaboration with UMD, the NCCoE was  
120 able to utilize real grid data and process it through our build collaborator's security devices and  
121 applications. Though this certainly added to the complexity of the build, we believe using  
122 UMD's grid data provides an actual real-life implementation of ICS network security solutions  
123 that can be replicated at other utilities. The NCCoE energy sector lab provides the enterprise  
124 facility described in the example solution. A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is used in the lab  
125 build to protect data in transit between the operations facility and the enterprise facility. The  
126 VPN was established using a Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1) at the cogeneration facility  
127 and a Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400 at the NCCoE. The RX1501 includes firewall capabilities to  
128 control which TCP ports are available to communicate with the NCCoE.

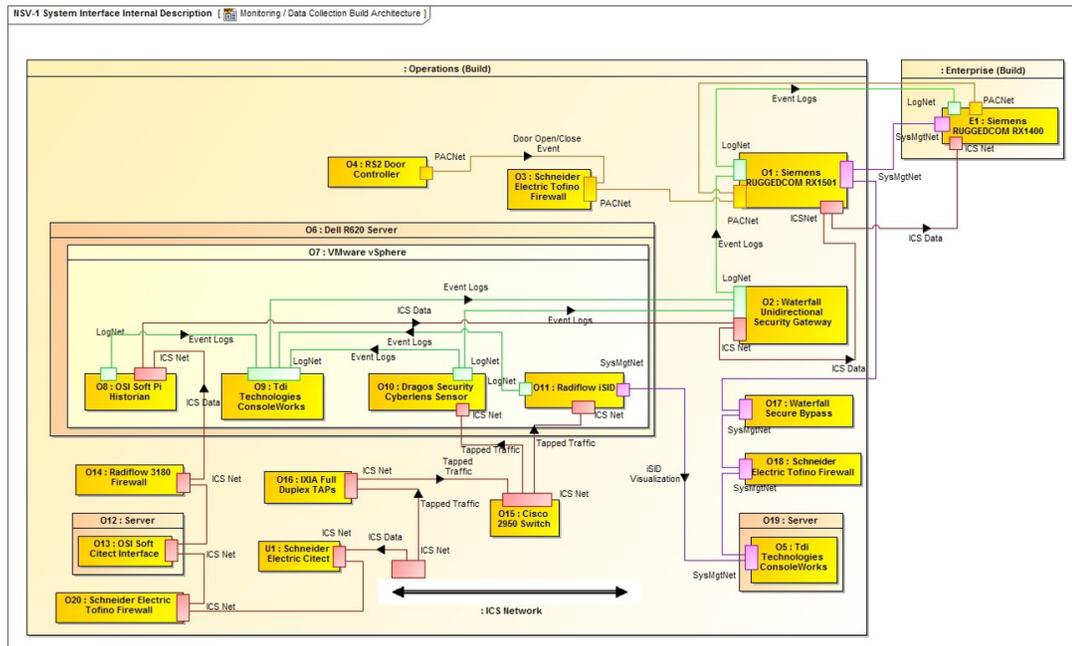
129 When implementing the example solution, utilities need to consider the type of network  
130 connection in place between Operations and Enterprise to determine what protection might be  
131 needed for data in transit.

132 The physical access sensor in the example solution is provided by an RS2 door controller (O4).  
133 The controller monitors a door open/close switch and sends events whenever the door at the  
134 facility is opened or closed. This information is sent over the build collaborator's enterprise  
135 network. To prevent unintended interactions between the collaborator's enterprise network  
136 and the NCCoE energy sector lab, a Schneider Electric Tofino firewall (O3) is installed between  
137 the collaborator's enterprise network and the VPN.

138 A Dell R620 server (O6) running VMware (O7) was deployed to the cogeneration facility to host  
139 monitoring and data collection software. These are infrastructure components needed for the  
140 lab build but not considered part of the example solution.

141 The Historian in the example solution was implemented by an OSIsoft Pi Historian (O8) installed  
142 on the Dell server (O6). In this case, the Historian was not an existing component in the facility.  
143 This facility uses a Schneider Electric Citect SCADA system to control operations. ICS data for the  
144 facility is collected and stored by this Citect SCADA system. To collect this data, the OSIsoft  
145 Citect Interface software (O13) is used to pull data from the Citect SCADA system (U1) and store  
146 it in an OSIsoft Pi Historian (O8). To ensure that data flow from the Citect SCADA system (U1) to  
147 the OSIsoft Pi Historian (O8) is unidirectional, the Citect Interface software (O13) is installed on  
148 a dedicated physical server (O12), isolated from the Citect SCADA system by a Schneider Electric  
149 Tofino firewall (O20), and isolated from the Pi Historian (O8) by a Radiflow 3180 firewall (O14).  
150 The Pi Historian (O8) replicates data to another Pi Historian in the NCCoE energy sector lab.

Figure 4.4 Operations Monitoring and Data Collection Lab Build Architecture



The ICS Asset Management system in the example solution is implemented by Dragos Security CyberLens. CyberLens is deployed in the cogeneration facility as a sensor (O10), which monitors the ICS network, collects relevant information in files, and transfers the files to a CyberLens server in the NCCoE energy sector lab.

The ICS Intrusion Detection component in the example solution is provided by Radiflow iSID (O11). Events detected by iSID (O11) are sent via syslog to the log collector/aggregator implemented by TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (O9). In addition to log data from iSID (O11), ConsoleWorks (O9) also collects log data via syslog from CyberLens Sensor (O10) and the Pi Historian (O8). ConsoleWorks (O9) augments the syslog records with an additional time stamp and an integrity seal. These records are stored in files which are transferred to another instance of ConsoleWorks in the NCCoE energy sector lab.

Both CyberLens Sensor (O10) and iSID (O11) need ICS network data as input. To get this data without affecting the network traffic used to run the cogeneration facility, IXIA full duplex taps (O16) were installed in the ICS network at appropriate points. These taps are designed to ensure ICS network traffic flow continues even if power to the tap is interrupted. The taps are connected to a Cisco 2950 network switch (O15). The span port of the switch is connected to both CyberLens Sensor (O10) and iSID (O11) to provide the necessary network data. Both the taps (O16) and the span port on the switch (O15) are inherently unidirectional so that ICS network data can only flow out of the ICS network to the data aggregation and analysis tools in the NCCoE Energy Sector lab. No data can flow back into the ICS network from the monitoring and data collection components.

Data transferred from the Pi Historian (O8), CyberLens Sensor (O10), and ConsoleWorks (O9) to the NCCoE energy Sector lab is sent using a Waterfall Security Solutions, Ltd. Unidirectional Security Gateway (O2). This gateway ensures that data can only flow out from the cogeneration facility to the NCCoE, and is not physically able to flow back from the NCCoE to the facility.

Radiflow's iSID (O11) has a web interface that is used to both manage the system and provide security analysts access to additional information about events reported via syslog. Access to this web interface is provided via components (O17, O18, O19, and O5) originally intended for remote management of monitoring and data collection components. These components are described in [section 4.3.1](#).

## 4.2.2 Example Solution Data Aggregation and Analysis Lab Build

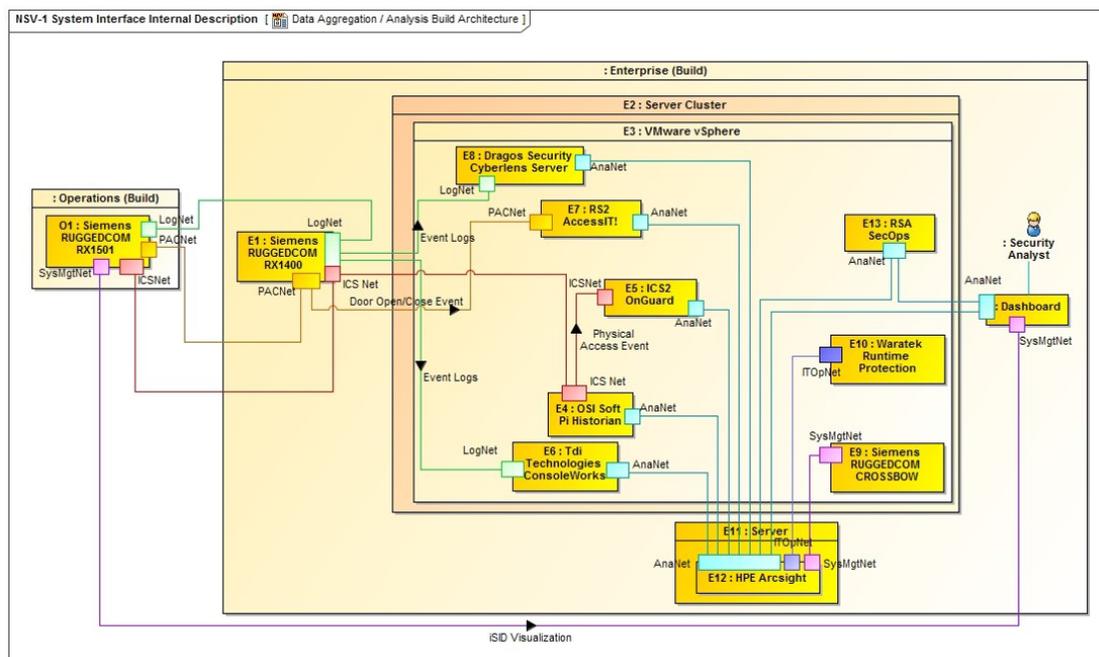
Figure 4.5 shows the products used to build an instance of the data aggregation and analysis portion of the example solution. The instance was constructed in the NCCoE energy sector lab. This lab provides the enterprise environment in the example solution. The VPN between the operations and enterprise in the example solution is provided by a Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400 (E1) in the lab and an RX1501 (O1) in the cogeneration facility.

A Dell server cluster (E2) running VMware (E3) is installed in the NCCoE energy sector lab to host monitoring, data aggregation, and analysis software. A separate server in the lab (E11) hosts HPE ArcSight. These are infrastructure components needed for the lab build but not considered part of the example solution.

The SIEM in the example solution is provided by HPE ArcSight (E12). ArcSight is the central repository for all events generated.

Waratek Runtime Application Protection (E10) implements the Application Monitor and Protection component of the example solution. Waratek Runtime Application Protection monitors and protects Java applications to detect potential cross-site scripting attacks. A Java application was written to access data from the enterprise OSISoft Pi Historian (E4) database. This application is monitored by Waratek Runtime Application Protection (E10) and reports and blocks attempted SQLi attacks against the Historian (E4) to ArcSight (E12).

Figure 4.5 Enterprise Data Aggregation and Analysis Lab Build Architecture



203 The ICS Asset Management System in the operations facilities of the example solution is  
204 provided by Dragos Security CyberLens. As implemented, CyberLens is divided into two parts, a  
205 Sensor (O10) in operations and a Server (E8) in enterprise. The Sensor (O10) sends data files to  
206 the Server (E8) for analysis. When the server detects a change to the assets on the ICS network  
207 in operations, it sends an event to ArcSight (E12).

208 The PACS in the example solution is implemented by RS2 Access It! (E7). Door open/close  
209 events from the RS2 door controller (O4) in operations are sent to Access It! (E7) and stored in  
210 an internal database. An ArcSight database connector is used to extract these events and send  
211 them to ArcSight (E12).

212 The enterprise Historian is provided by the OSIsoft PI Historian (E4). ICS data from the  
213 operations Pi Historian (O8) is replicated to the enterprise PI Historian (E4). This data is used by  
214 the ICS Behavioral Monitoring component in the example solution, implemented by ICS^2  
215 OnGuard (E5), to detect unusual ICS behavior. OnGuard (E5) reports this unusual behavior to  
216 ArcSight (E12).

217 The enterprise log collector/aggregator component in the example solution is provided by TDi  
218 Technologies ConsoleWorks (E6). This instance of ConsoleWorks (E6) receives files from the  
219 operations instance (O9). The files contain integrity-sealed syslog records. The enterprise  
220 instance of ConsoleWorks (E6) verifies the integrity seal on the records and sends the syslog  
221 records to ArcSight (E12).

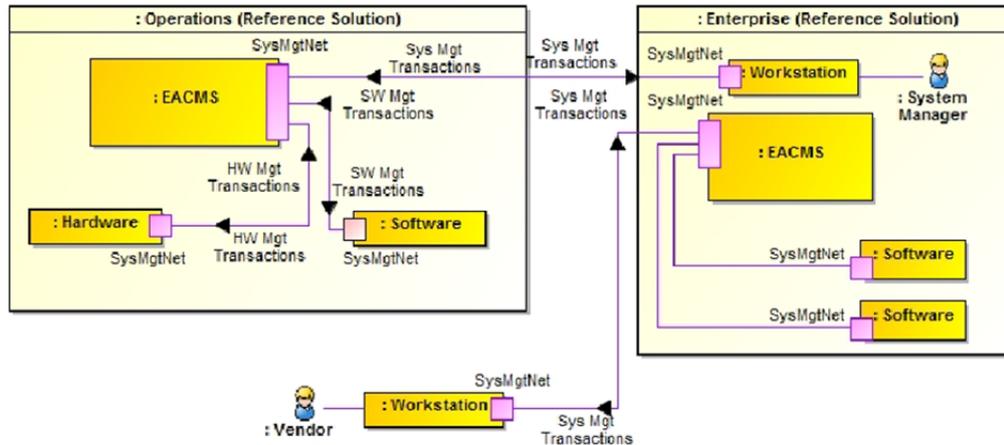
222 Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW (E9), which implements part of the remote management  
223 connection described in [section 4.3](#), sends log information about remote management actions  
224 to ArcSight (E12).

225 The analysis workflow engine, analysis tools, and visualization tools in the example solution  
226 are implemented by RSA Archer Security Operations Management (E13). This product extracts  
227 event data from ArcSight (E12) and performs analyses to identify potential cyber incidents.

### 228 4.3 Example Solution Remote Management Connection

229 Because elements of the example solution are separated from the system managers who  
230 install, configure and manage them, a remote management connection is needed from the  
231 enterprise to operations. Additionally, while not part of the example solution, the vendors who  
232 collaborated with NCCoE to construct the lab build of the example solution need remote access  
233 to the NCCoE energy sector lab to install, configure, and integrate their products. [Figure 4.6](#)  
234 depicts the example solution for both remote management connections. Example  
235 implementation of remote management is depicted in [Figure 4.7](#) and [Figure 4.8](#).

Figure 4.6 Remote Management Example Solution



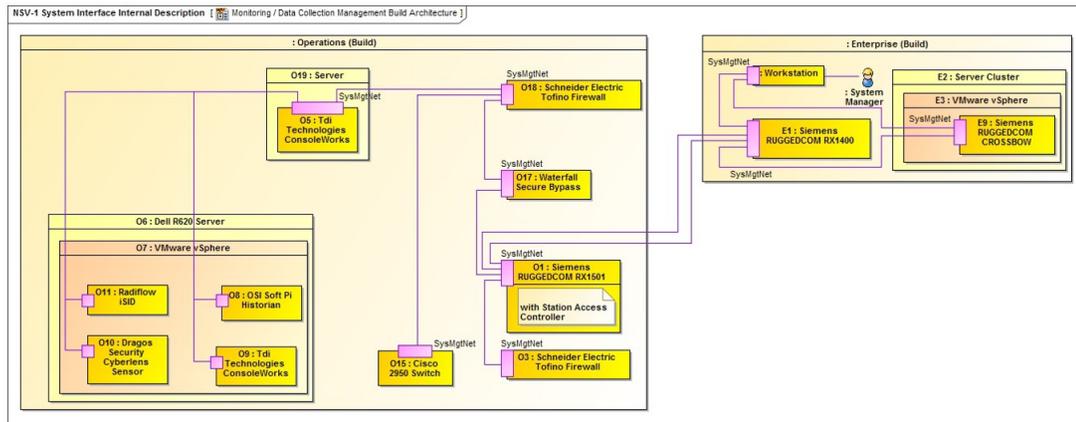
A workstation in the enterprise facility connects to the Operations EACMS. The system manager authenticates to the EACMS and controls the system manager's access to hardware or software within operations, as a privileged user, to perform system management functions. A VPN is used to protect data in transit between Operations and Enterprise. In the lab build, the connection between Operations and Enterprise uses the public Internet. Hence, protection for data transiting the Internet is needed. When implementing the example solution, utilities need to consider the type of network connection in place between Operations and Enterprise to determine what protection might be needed for data in transit.

To install and manage their software in enterprise, vendors connect via VPN to an EACMS in Enterprise. The vendors authenticate to the EACMS and are granted access to the software they provided.

### 4.3.1 Example Solution Operations Remote Management Lab Build

The lab build of operations remote management, depicted in Figure 4.7, provides two distinct implementations of the EACMS. One implementation that provides remote management for software running on the Dell R620 server (O6) uses the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1), the Waterfall Secure Bypass switch (O17), a Schneider Electric Tofino firewall (O18), a Linux server (O19), and an instance of TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (O5). The second implementation which provides remote management for hardware in operations uses Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW (E9) and the Station Access Controller capability in the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1). While the build used each implementation for a specific set of resources, either hardware or software, each implementation is capable of managing both hardware and software.

Figure 4.7 Operations Remote Management Lab Build Architecture



The EACMS implementation for remote management of software in operations has the system manager connect to operations from enterprise over the VPN created using the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400 (E1) and RX1501 (O1). The system manager needs to connect to the operations management instance of ConsoleWorks (O5). However, a Waterfall Secure Bypass (O17) is installed in the network path from the RX1501 to the ConsoleWorks (O5). The Secure Bypass (O17) is a normally-open physical switch. To perform remote management, a person in the operations facility must turn a key on the Secure Bypass (O17) to close the switch<sup>2</sup>. Once the switch is closed, a timer is activated that automatically opens the switch after a preset time period. Remote management can only be performed if the personnel at the operations facility agree to allow access.

A Schneider Electric Tofino firewall (O18) restricts the protocols that can be used to connect to the operations management instance of ConsoleWorks (O5). Once connected to (O5), the system manager authenticates and is allowed to connect to virtual machines on the Dell server (O6).

To remotely manage hardware in operations, the system manager authenticates to Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW (E9) in enterprise. CROSSBOW (E9) determines the resources the system manager is allowed to access and then makes a connection over the VPN to the resource using the Station Access Controller integrated in the RX1501 (O1). In the lab build, the Tofino firewall (O3) isolating the door controller is connected directly to the network switch in the RX1501 (O1), and no operations personnel action is needed to manage the firewall. To manage the Cisco 2950 network switch that connects ICS network taps (O15) to CyberLens Sensor (O10) and iSID (O11), operations personnel must close the switch on the Secure Bypass (O17).

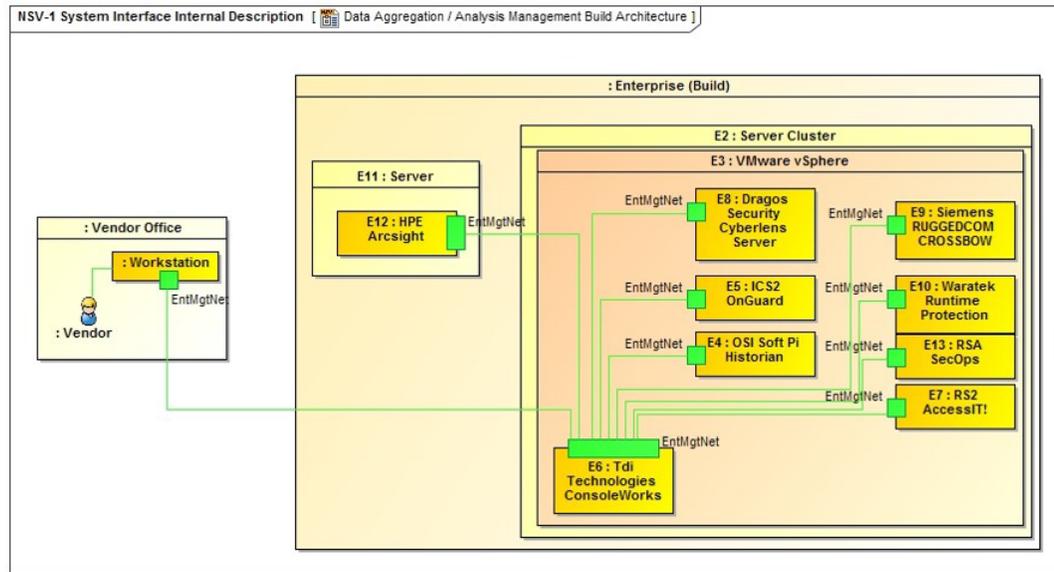
### 4.3.2 Example Solution Enterprise Remote Management Lab Build

Figure 4.8 depicts the implementation of remote access to the NCCoE energy sector lab for vendors.

<sup>2</sup>In the case of this lab build, the collaborator's cogeneration facility representing operations is a staffed facility so an operator is available to close the switch on the secure bypass (O17).

288

Figure 4.8 Enterprise Remote Management Lab Build Architecture



289

290 The VPN providing vendor connectivity to the enterprise in the example solution is provided as  
 291 core lab infrastructure by the NCCoE, and is outside the scope of the lab build. Use of this VPN  
 292 requires two-factor authentication.

293 The EACMS for vendor access in the example solution is implemented by TDi Technologies  
 294 ConsoleWorks (E6). Vendors authenticate to ConsoleWorks and are allowed to connect to the  
 295 virtual machines or physical server hosting their product(s). Additionally, ConsoleWorks records  
 296 all the actions performed over a connection. This provides an audit trail that documents vendor  
 297 activity, which can be used for accountability as well as constructing the how-to portion,  
 298 volume C, of this practice guide.

## 5 Security Characteristics Analysis

2	5.1	Analysis of the Reference Design’s Support for CSF Subcategories .....	36
3	5.2	Reference Design Security Analysis .....	49
4	5.3	Securing an Operational Deployment .....	62
5	5.4	Security Analysis Summary.....	64

6 We organized the security analysis of the SA reference design into two parts. [Section 5.1,](#)  
7 [Analysis of the Reference Design’s Support for CSF Subcategories](#), analyzes the SA reference  
8 design in terms of the specific subcategories of the CSF[1] that it supports. It identifies the  
9 security benefits provided by each of the reference design components and how the reference  
10 design supports specific cybersecurity activities, as specified in terms of CSF subcategories.

11 [Section 5.2, Reference Design Security Analysis](#), discusses potential new vulnerabilities and  
12 attack vectors that the reference design, or the infrastructure needed to manage the reference  
13 design, might introduce, as well as ways to mitigate those vulnerabilities. Overall, the purpose  
14 of the analysis is to identify the security benefits provided by the reference design and how  
15 they map to CSF subcategories, as well as to understand the mitigating steps to secure the  
16 reference design against potential new vulnerabilities.

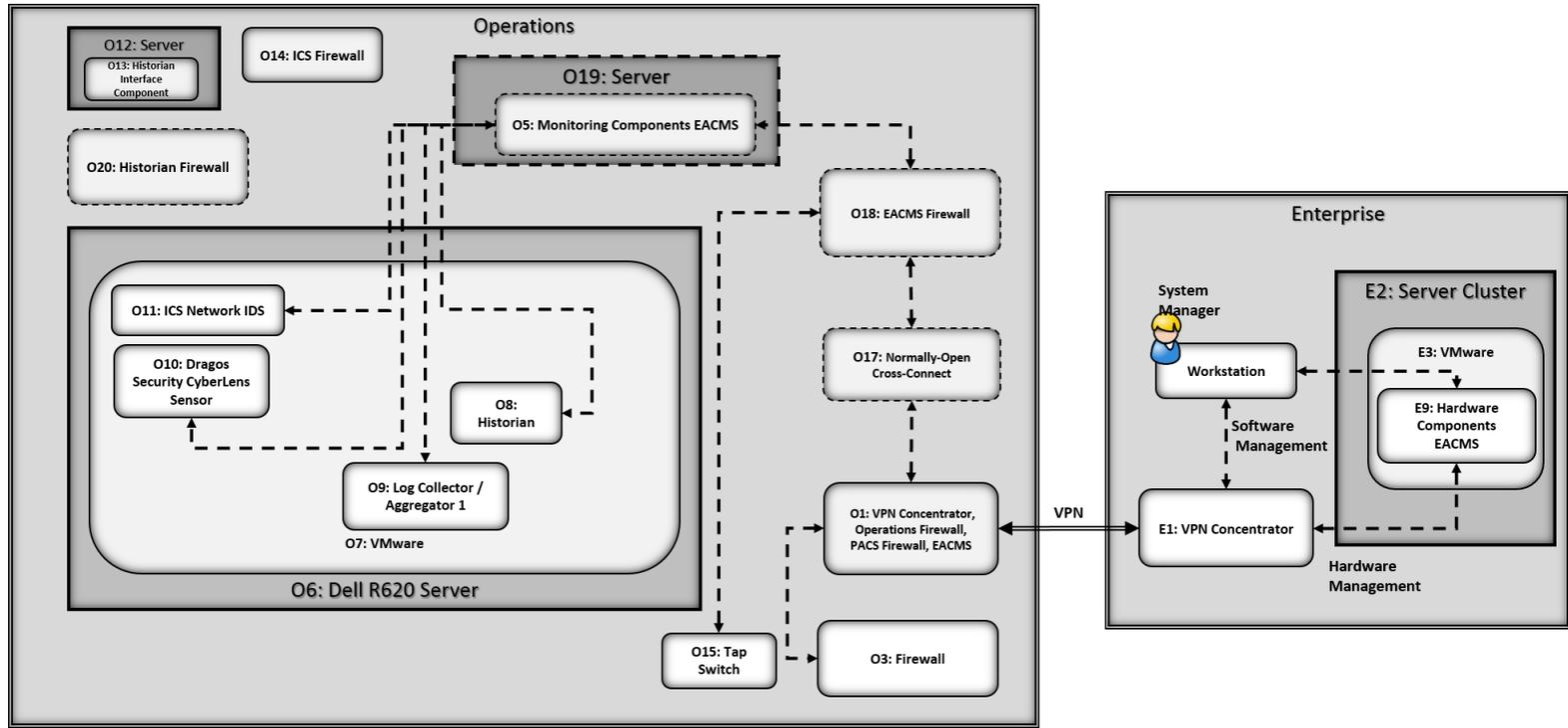
## 17 **5.1 Analysis of the Reference Design’s Support for CSF Subcategories**

18 [Table 5.1, SA Reference Design Components and the CSF Subcategories they Support](#), lists  
19 numerous reference design components, their functions, and the CSF subcategories that they  
20 support. Although the particular products that were used to instantiate each component in the  
21 build are also listed, the focus of the security analysis is the CSF subcategories supported by  
22 these products. This analysis does not concern itself with specific products or their capabilities.  
23 In theory, any number of commercially available products could be substituted to provide the  
24 security capabilities of a given reference design component. [Figure 5.1](#) and [Figure 5.2](#) depict  
25 the monitoring/data collection and data aggregation/analysis sub-architectures of the  
26 reference design using the generic names of each component.



29

Figure 5.2 Data Aggregation/Analysis Sub-architecture using Generic Component Names



30

<sup>31</sup> Table 5.1 SA Reference Design Components and the CSF Subcategories they Support

Component	ID	Specific Product	Function	CSF Subcategories
Security Information and Event Management (SIEM)	E12	HPE ArcSight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>aggregates all IT, windows, OT (ICS) and physical access monitoring, event, and log data collected by the reference design</li> <li>acts as a data normalization and correlation point and enables queries to be developed and executed to detect potential security incidents</li> <li>serves as the central location at which the analyst can access all data collected.</li> </ul>	DE.AE-3, DE.AE-5 Related Subcategories: PR.PT-1, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-2, DE.CM-3, DE.CM-7
Network Tap	O16	IXIA Full Duplex Tap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>collects data from specific locations on the ICS network and sends it to the monitoring server via the ICS firewall</li> <li>the taps are passive, so if they lose power or otherwise fail, they will not adversely affect the ICS network</li> <li>they also collect data via monitor ports that are inherently unidirectional (and so do not pose any threat of information leaking from the tap onto the ICS network)</li> </ul>	DE.CM-1
Log Collector/ aggregator <sup>a</sup>	O9 E6	TDi Technologies Console Works (Operations)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>log collection and aggregation</li> <li>adds a time stamp and integrity seals the log entries</li> <li>log collection in the operations facility protects against potential data loss in the event that the communications channel between the operations and enterprise facilities fails</li> <li>aggregating the log entries of all monitoring components at the operations log collector/aggregator ensures that this log data gets buffered in the operations facility and can be transferred later in the event that network connectivity to the enterprise network is lost</li> </ul>	PR.DS-6, PR.PT-1, DE.AE-3
ICS Asset Management System	O10	Dragos Security CyberLens Sensor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>monitors ICS traffic and maintains a database of all ICS assets of which it is aware</li> <li>this enables it to detect new ICS devices, ICS devices that disappear, and changes to known ICS devices</li> </ul>	ID.AM-1

Table 5.1 SA Reference Design Components and the CSF Subcategories they Support

Component	ID	Specific Product	Function	CSF Subcategories
Network Visualization Tool	E8	Dragos Security CyberLens Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>displays a depiction of network devices, connectivity, and traffic flows</li> </ul>	Does not directly support a CSF subcategory. Related Subcategory: ID.AM-3
Physical Access Control System	E7	RS2 Access It!	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>controls user access to doors</li> <li>detects and reports door open/close events and user identity</li> </ul>	PR.AC-2
Physical Access Sensor	O4	RS2 Door Controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>senses door close/open events</li> <li>generates alerts when door open and close events occur</li> </ul>	DE.CM-2
ICS Network Intrusion Detection System (IDS)	O11	Radiflow iSID	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>identifies, monitors, and reports anomalous ICS traffic that may indicate a potential intrusion</li> </ul>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-7
Historian <sup>b</sup>	O8	OSIsoft Pi Historian	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>serves as a data repository that essentially replicates the database of collected ICS values on the ICS network's Historian</li> <li>can be configured to generate alerts when changes to certain ICS process values occur</li> </ul>	Does not directly support a CSF subcategory. Provides data to be monitored by the ICS behavior monitor. Related Subcategories: DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1
ICS Behavior Monitor	E5	ICS <sup>2</sup> OnGuard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>monitors ICS process variable values in the Historian to assess application behavior, detect process anomalies, and generate alerts</li> </ul>	DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1
Application Monitor & Protection	E10	Waratek Runtime Application Protection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>monitors &amp; protects a running application, analyzes the data it collects, and detects and reports unusual application behavior</li> <li>e.g., it might generate an alert if it detects a potential SQL injection attack against the SIEM</li> </ul>	DE.AE-2, DE.AE-4, DE.AE-5, DE.CM-4
Analysis Workflow Engine	E13	RSA Archer Security Operations Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>automates workflow associated with review and analysis of data that has been collected at the SIEM</li> <li>enables orchestration of various analytic engines</li> </ul>	DE.AE-2

**Table 5.1 SA Reference Design Components and the CSF Subcategories they Support**

Component	ID	Specific Product	Function	CSF Subcategories
Unidirectional Gateway	O2	Waterfal Unidirectional Security Gateway	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>allows data to flow in only one direction</li> </ul>	PR.AC-5, PR.PT-4
Visualization Tool	E13	RSA Archer Security Operations Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>provides data reduction and a dashboard capability for the data in the SIEM, as well as risk analysis</li> </ul>	Does not directly support a CSF subcategory. Related Subcategory: ID.AM-3
Electronic Access Control and Monitoring System (EACMS)	05	TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>authenticates system managers</li> <li>provides role-based access control of system management functions</li> <li>implements a “protocol break” between the system manager and the managed assets</li> <li>records all system management actions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-3, PR.AC-4, PR.PT-1, PR.PT-3, PR.MA-2, DE.CM-3
	E9	Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>authenticates system managers</li> <li>provides role-based access control of system management functions</li> <li>implements a “protocol break” between the system manager and the managed assets</li> <li>records all system management actions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-3, PR.AC-4, PR.PT-1, PR.PT-3, PR.MA-2, DE.CM-3
	O17	Waterfall Secure Bypass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>provides time-limited network connectivity to perform system management functions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-5, PR.PT-4
	O18	Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>controls network connectivity for performing system management functions</li> </ul>	PR.AC-5, PR.PT-4

- a. Note that two instances of the log collector component are present in the reference design: one in the reference design's monitoring/data collection sub-architecture and another in its data aggregation/analysis sub-architecture. Integrity seals that are applied by a log collector can only be verified at that log collector. Therefore, the log collector that is in the operations facility does not apply an integrity seal to its entries because these integrity seals cannot be verified in the enterprise.
- b. Two instances of the Historian component are present in the reference design: one in the monitoring/data collection sub-architecture and another in the data aggregation/analysis sub-architecture.

32 The last column of [Table 5.1](#) lists the CSF subcategories that each component of the reference  
33 design supports. In [Section 3.4.2, Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping](#), the CSF  
34 subcategories are mapped to specific sections of informative references that are comprised of  
35 existing standards, guidelines, and best practices for that CSF subcategory. In conjunction with  
36 these references, the CSF subcategories are able to provide structure to the assessment of the  
37 security support provided by the SA reference design. The references provide use case  
38 validation points in that they list specific security traits that a solution that supports the desired  
39 CSF subcategories would be expected to exhibit. Using the CSF subcategories as a basis for  
40 organizing our analysis allowed us to systematically consider how well the reference design  
41 supports specific security activities and provides additional confidence that the reference  
42 design addresses the SA use case security objectives. The remainder of this subsection  
43 discusses how the reference design supports each of the identified CSF subcategories.

### 44 5.1.1 Supported CSF Subcategories

45 The reference design's primary focus is the “Detect” function area of the CSF as well as a few  
46 subcategories within the “Identify” and “Protect” function areas. Specifically, the reference  
47 design supports:

- 48 ■ all five subcategories of the Anomalies and Events (DE.AE) Category of the Detect Function  
49 area
- 50 ■ five of the eight subcategories of the Security Continuous Monitoring (DE.CM) Category of  
51 the Detect Function area
- 52 ■ one activity in the CSF Identify function area, which is in the Asset Management category  
53 (ID.AM)
- 54 ■ nine activities from various categories of the CSF Protect Function area (PR.AC-2, 3, 4, and  
55 5, PR.DS-2 and 6, and PR.PT-1, 3, and 4)

56 We discuss these CSF subcategories in the following subsections.

#### 57 5.1.1.1 DE.AE-1: A baseline of network operations and expected data flows for users 58 and systems is established and managed

59 This CSF subcategory is supported by the ICS Network Intrusion Detection System (IDS)  
60 component of the reference design. This component is a tool for identifying, monitoring, and  
61 reporting anomalous ICS traffic that might indicate a potential intrusion. This component,  
62 located in the monitoring server, sends syslog events regarding anomalous behavior that it  
63 detects to the log collector/aggregator in the monitoring server, which forwards them to the  
64 SIEM on the enterprise network, where they can be viewed by a security analyst. In addition to  
65 having the ability to send syslog events, the ICS Network IDS component also has its own  
66 graphical user interface that can be accessed only by a web interface.

### 67 5.1.1.2 DE.AE-2: Detected events are analyzed to understand attack targets and 68 methods

69 This CSF subcategory is supported by both the Application Monitor and the Analysis Workflow  
70 Engine components, both of which are located in the Data Aggregation/Analysis  
71 Sub-Architecture. The Application Monitor monitors a running application, analyzes the data it  
72 collects, and detects and reports unusual application behavior. In the build, the Application  
73 Monitor is configured to generate an alert if it detects a potential SQL injection attack against  
74 the SIEM. The Analysis Workflow Engine, located downstream from the SIEM, automates  
75 workflows associated with the review and analysis of data that has been collected at the SIEM.  
76 It consists of various analytic engines that can be orchestrated. This component enables the  
77 automated execution of well-defined courses of action that can be associated with an  
78 observable sequences of events.

79 In some cases, the individual monitoring components in the reference design will be able to  
80 single-handedly detect events. In other cases, the aggregation and correlation of event data  
81 from multiple sources and sensors might be needed to identify anomalies and thereby enable  
82 such detection.

83 Although ensuring that security analysts actually study, analyze, and understand attack targets  
84 and methods is outside the scope of the reference design, the objective of the reference design  
85 is to support and facilitate the ability of the analyst to perform these functions. When possible,  
86 analysis and anomaly detection procedures might be automated within various components.  
87 For events that are not detected automatically, the aggregation of all SA information at the  
88 single, centralized SIEM enables analysts to more easily correlate and visualize multiple facets  
89 of SA, facilitating their ability to analyze and understand attack targets and methods.

### 90 5.1.1.3 DE.AE-3: Event data are aggregated and correlated from multiple sources and 91 sensors

92 This CSF subcategory is supported by the SIEM, which aggregates all IT, OT (ICS), and PACS data  
93 that is collected by the reference design. This includes monitoring, event, and log data. The  
94 SIEM acts as a data normalization and correlation point. It is a location at which queries can be  
95 developed and executed for the purpose of detecting potential security incidents. The SIEM  
96 also serves as the central location at which the analyst can access all data collected.

97 Before log data is sent to the SIEM for aggregation, it is aggregated at two sub-collection points,  
98 both of which also support CSF subcategory DE.AE-3. Log data is collected and aggregated at  
99 both the log collector/aggregator component in the monitoring/data collection  
100 sub-architecture and at the log collector/aggregator component in the data  
101 aggregation/analysis sub-architecture. These log collectors/aggregators add time stamps to the  
102 collected log entries. The log collector/aggregator in the aggregation/analysis sub-architecture  
103 also applies an integrity seal to the log entries.

104 Support for this subcategory is a main goal of the SA reference design. Aggregation and  
105 correlation of SA data from multiple sources and sensors at various analysis and anomaly  
106 detection components into a single, centralized SIEM component enables a security analyst to  
107 more easily understand attack targets and methods. All physical security, ICS network assets,  
108 network security, IT system information, reports, alerts, and other information is consolidated  
109 in a single, centralized SIEM component. In some cases, the information sent to the analysis and

110 anomaly detection components and the SIEM might include notifications of potential events  
111 that have already been detected. In other cases, the analysis and anomaly detection  
112 components or the analyst accessing the SIEM might be able to detect events that were not  
113 indicated by any single monitoring component. Only by combining and correlating information  
114 from a variety of sources was the event identified.

115 The SIEM is the normalization point for all SA data. It is a location at which queries can be  
116 developed and run for the purpose of looking for anomalies. The security analyst has direct  
117 access to the data collected at the SIEM. Analysis components downstream from the SIEM  
118 enable the data that has been collected at the SIEM to be analyzed. They also enable  
119 automation of the workflow that is associated with the analysis activities, enabling analytic  
120 engines to be orchestrated.

#### 121 5.1.1.4 DE.AE-4: Impact of events is determined

122 This CSF subcategory is supported by the Application Monitor component, which monitors a  
123 running application, analyzes the data it collects, and detects and reports unusual application  
124 behavior (e.g., a potential SQL injection attack).

#### 125 5.1.1.5 DE.AE-5: Incident alert thresholds are established

126 Although determining incident alert threshold values is outside the scope of the reference  
127 design, various reference design components support the ability to establish such thresholds  
128 and act upon them when they are exceeded. CSF subcategory DE.AE-5 is supported by four  
129 components in the reference design: SIEM, ICS Network IDS, ICS Behavior Monitor, and  
130 Application Monitor, each of which generates alerts to report some form of unusual behavior  
131 once the detected behavior exceeds established thresholds. The incident alert thresholds in the  
132 SIEM might refer to anomalies that are detected as a result of IT, OT, and PACS information  
133 correlation. The thresholds in the ICS Network IDS might refer to levels of anomalous ICS traffic.  
134 ICS Behavior Monitor component thresholds might refer to ICS process variable anomaly levels.  
135 Application Monitor component thresholds are designed to detect and alert to unusual IT  
136 application behavior.

137 Although the Historian component of the reference design does not support this CSF  
138 subcategory directly, it provides data to the ICS behavior monitor and thereby supports this  
139 subcategory indirectly. The ICS network contains a component that acts as a Historian,  
140 recording important information regarding events and variable values for various ICS  
141 components. All process values stored in this ICS Historian are conveyed to the Historian  
142 component of the reference design via a Historian interface component. As a result, the  
143 reference design's Historian component essentially replicates the ICS Historian's database of  
144 values that have been collected and monitored. The Historian component's database is not a  
145 typical SQL database. It has the capability to issue an "on change" request, meaning that it can  
146 be configured to send notices when changes to certain ICS process values occur. This capability  
147 enables the reference design to avoid constant polling of Historian component values and  
148 constitutes a first line of monitoring defense against potential cybersecurity events on the ICS  
149 network that might be detected when the alert thresholds are exceeded for specific ICS variable  
150 values.

### 151 5.1.1.6 DE.CM-1: The network is monitored to detect potential cybersecurity events

152 This CSF subcategory is supported by three components:

- 153 ■ Network Tap: collects data from specific locations on the ICS network and sends it to the  
154 monitoring server
- 155 ■ ICS Network IDS: monitors ICS traffic and reports anomalous ICS traffic that may indicate a  
156 potential intrusion
- 157 ■ ICS Behavior Monitor: monitors ICS process variable values in the Historian to assess  
158 application behavior, detect process anomalies, and generate alerts

159 Although the Historian component does not support this CSF subcategory directly, it can be  
160 configured to generate alerts when ICS process variable values change. This CSF subcategory is  
161 also listed as being related to the SIEM due to the SIEM's role as the aggregation point for all  
162 collected information, which enables it to support network monitoring to detect potential  
163 cybersecurity events.

### 164 5.1.1.7 DE.CM-2: The physical environment is monitored to detect potential 165 cybersecurity events

166 This CSF subcategory is supported by the Physical Access Sensor component, which senses door  
167 close/open events and generates alerts when door open and close events occur. The Physical  
168 Access Sensor component serves as sort of a placeholder for multiple potential PACS  
169 monitoring devices that could and should be included in an operational deployment. In an  
170 operational deployment, organizations would likely include additional PACS monitoring devices,  
171 such as badge readers, to increase the amount and quality of PACS information provided as part  
172 of SA. In a real deployment, information coming out of the PACS would include not only door  
173 open/close events, but also access decisions based on the identity and permissions of the  
174 individuals trying to access the doors. All such monitored PACS (and IT and OT) information is  
175 aggregated in the SIEM, which is why CSF subcategory DE.CM-2 is listed as being related to the  
176 SIEM. As the aggregation point for all collected PACS data, the SIEM can therefore support the  
177 monitoring of the physical environment to detect potential cybersecurity events.

### 178 5.1.1.8 DE.CM-3: Personnel activity is monitored to detect potential cybersecurity 179 events

180 This CSF subcategory is supported by the EACMS for system managers. All system manager  
181 actions are captured by the EACMS and can be provided to the SIEM for review and correlation  
182 with other system activity.

### 183 5.1.1.9 DE.CM-4: Malicious code is detected

184 This CSF subcategory is supported by the Application Monitor & Protection component, which  
185 monitors a running application, analyzes the data it collects, and detects and reports unusual  
186 application behavior (e.g., a potential SQL injection attack). Because the reference design  
187 focuses mostly on collecting and integrating OT information, and assumes that the collection  
188 and integration of IT information into the SIEM is a solved problem, the Application Monitor  
189 component serves as sort of a placeholder for multiple potential IT monitoring devices that  
190 could and should be included in an operational deployment. In an operational deployment,  
191 organizations would likely include additional IT monitoring capabilities such as anti-virus  
192 software to increase the amount and quality of IT information provided as part of SA.

### 193 5.1.1.10 DE.CM-7: Monitoring for unauthorized personnel, connections, devices, and 194 software is performed

195 This CSF subcategory is supported by the ICS Network IDS component, which identifies,  
196 monitors, and reports anomalous ICS traffic that might indicate a potential intrusion on the OT  
197 network. This CSF subcategory is also listed as related to the SIEM. The SIEM serves as the  
198 aggregation point for all collected information, and can therefore support monitoring for  
199 unauthorized personnel, connections, devices, and software.

### 200 5.1.1.11 ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried

201 This CSF subcategory is supported by the ICS Asset Management System component, which  
202 monitors ICS traffic to sense, track, and record ICS assets, and maintains a database of all ICS  
203 assets of which it becomes aware. Such monitoring enables this component to detect and  
204 identify new devices on the ICS network, devices that disappear from the ICS network, and  
205 changes to known ICS devices. This enables it to perform data analytics and anomaly detection  
206 as well as management of the inventory of ICS assets that it senses and collects. The ICS Asset  
207 Management System sends logs of asset inventory events to the Log Collector/Aggregator and  
208 feeds the ICS asset information it collects into the SIEM component.

### 209 5.1.1.12 PR.AC-2: Physical access to assets is managed and protected

210 This CSF subcategory is supported by the reference design's PACS, which controls user access to  
211 doors and detects and reports door open/close events. As was stated earlier, the reference  
212 design's physical access sensor and control system components serve as placeholders for  
213 multiple potential PACS monitoring devices that could and should be included in a reference  
214 design deployment to manage and protect physical access to assets. For example, organizations  
215 would likely want to include badge readers to support access decisions based on the identity  
216 and permissions of the individuals trying to access the doors. The reference design provides the  
217 vehicle for integrating information from additional PACS devices into the SIEM.

### 218 5.1.1.13 PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed

219 This CSF subcategory is supported by the functions that comprise the EACMS. Together, these  
220 functions allow carefully controlled and monitored remote access to manage monitoring  
221 systems deployed to operations.

222 5.1.1.14 PR.AC-4: Access permissions are managed, incorporating the principles of least  
223 privilege and separation of duties

224 This CSF subcategory is supported by the functions that comprise the EACMS. These functions  
225 allow the definition and enforcement of role-based access permissions that incorporate least  
226 privilege and separation of duties.

227 5.1.1.15 PR.AC-5: Network integrity is protected, incorporating network segmentation  
228 where appropriate

229 This CSF subcategory is supported by the use of firewalls, a unidirectional gateway, and a  
230 normally-open cross-connect. All of these functions segment the network to preserve integrity.

231 5.1.1.16 PR.DS-2: Data-in-transit is protected

232 This CSF subcategory is supported by the use of a Virtual Private Network (VPN), which uses  
233 encryption to protect the confidentiality and integrity of all information while it is in transit  
234 between the monitoring/data collection sub-architecture and the data aggregation/analysis  
235 sub-architecture. The reference design does not, however, protect the confidentiality or  
236 integrity of monitored data while it is in transit within either the monitoring/data collection  
237 sub-architecture or the aggregation/analysis sub-architecture.

238 5.1.1.17 PR.DS-6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware,  
239 and information integrity

240 This CSF subcategory is supported by the log collector/aggregator that is in the  
241 aggregation/analysis sub-architecture of the reference design insofar as the log  
242 collector/aggregator integrity seals the log data that it collects. Ideally, the log  
243 collector/aggregator in the monitoring/data collection sub-architecture would also apply an  
244 integrity seal to each log entry so that this seal could be verified by the log collector/aggregator  
245 in the data aggregation/analysis sub-architecture to ensure that no log entries were modified  
246 before reaching the data aggregation/analysis sub-architecture log collector/aggregator. This  
247 integrity checking of monitoring/data collection log entries, however, is not currently provided  
248 in the build because there is currently no mechanism to enable any component other than the  
249 log collector/aggregator that applies the integrity seals to verify those seals. In an ideal world,  
250 all information sent from components in the monitoring/data collection sub-architecture to the  
251 aggregation/analysis sub-architecture would be integrity-protected both while at rest and in  
252 transit.

253 5.1.1.18 PR.MA-2: Remote maintenance of organizational assets is approved, logged, and  
254 performed in a manner that prevents unauthorized access

255 This CSF subcategory is supported by the EACMS in Operations and in Enterprise. In Operations,  
256 remote maintenance of software requires an operator to manually enable remote access using  
257 the normally-open cross connect. Beyond this, the EACMS firewall controls the devices that are  
258 accessible, restricting access to the monitoring components EACMS and the network IDS  
259 interface. To perform remote maintenance, system managers must authenticate to monitoring  
260 components EACMS, which then controls access to the software and maintenance functions  
261 the system manager is allowed to perform.

262 Remote maintenance of Operations hardware is controlled by the hardware components  
263 EACMS in Enterprise. System managers must authenticate to the hardware components  
264 EACMS, which then controls access to the hardware and maintenance functions the system  
265 manager is allowed to perform.

266 Both the hardware components EACMS and the monitoring components EACMS keep a record  
267 of all system management functions performed.

268 5.1.1.19 PR.PT-1: Audit/log records are determined, documented, implemented, and  
269 reviewed in accordance with policy

270 This CSF subcategory is provided by both of the log collector/aggregators in the reference  
271 design, which aggregate logs from various devices and put timestamps on the log data.  
272 Although the SIEM does not directly support this CSF subcategory, PR.PT-1 is also listed as a  
273 related subcategory for the SIEM because the SIEM can be used to review audit/log records.

274 Ideally, all of the monitoring/data collection components in the reference design will be  
275 capable of generating log data that contains the relevant event information and sending this log  
276 data to the log collector/aggregator component. (In the build, neither the PACS nor the Physical  
277 Access Sensor send log data that contains the events to the log collector/aggregator; instead,  
278 the SIEM obtains PACS event information via a PACS MySQL database.) The Log  
279 Collector/Aggregator component's role is to aggregate all log data that it collects. In addition,  
280 when each log entry is received at the log collector/aggregator, it already contains a time stamp  
281 added by the sending device. Upon receipt of the log entry, the log collector/aggregator  
282 component puts its own timestamp on the entry to indicate the time that it was received.  
283 Discrepancies in the sent and received timestamps for a given entry can be monitored to detect  
284 suspicious activity. The Log Collector/Aggregator in the monitoring and data collection  
285 sub-architecture then sends all logs to the log collector/aggregator in the data  
286 aggregation/analysis sub-architecture, which puts its own timestamps on the entries that it  
287 receives. It also applies an integrity seal to the entry that can be checked at a later time to  
288 ensure that the entry has not been deliberately or inadvertently modified. This log  
289 collector/aggregator then sends its log entries to the SIEM. The SIEM consolidates these log  
290 entries along with all other SA information.

291 The collection of SA information in a single location (at the SIEM) enables audit and log records  
292 to easily be reviewed in accordance with policy. Furthermore, the analysis tool components  
293 into which the SIEM data feeds might facilitate the automation of the review of audit and log  
294 records. Whether or not the organization performs these audit and log reviews according to  
295 policy is outside the scope of the SA reference design.

### 296 5.1.1.20 PR.PT-3: Access to systems and assets is controlled, incorporating the principle 297 of least functionality

298 This CSF subcategory is supported by the functions that comprise the EACMS and by network  
299 firewalls. The EACMS controls system manager access to systems in operations. Network  
300 firewalls control connectivity to and interaction among network assets.

### 301 5.1.1.21 PR.PT-4: Communications and controls networks are protected

302 This CSF subcategory is supported by a VPN, firewall, a unidirectional gateway, and a  
303 normally-open cross-connect. The VPN provides confidentiality protection for data in transit  
304 between the operations facilities and enterprise. Firewalls are placed throughout the system to  
305 control the network connections that are allowed among function within operations. A  
306 unidirectional gateway ensures communication between operations and enterprise is one-way  
307 out of operations. The normally-open cross-connect allows a two-way communications path  
308 between operations and enterprise, but only when physically closed at the operations side.

## 309 5.2 Reference Design Security Analysis

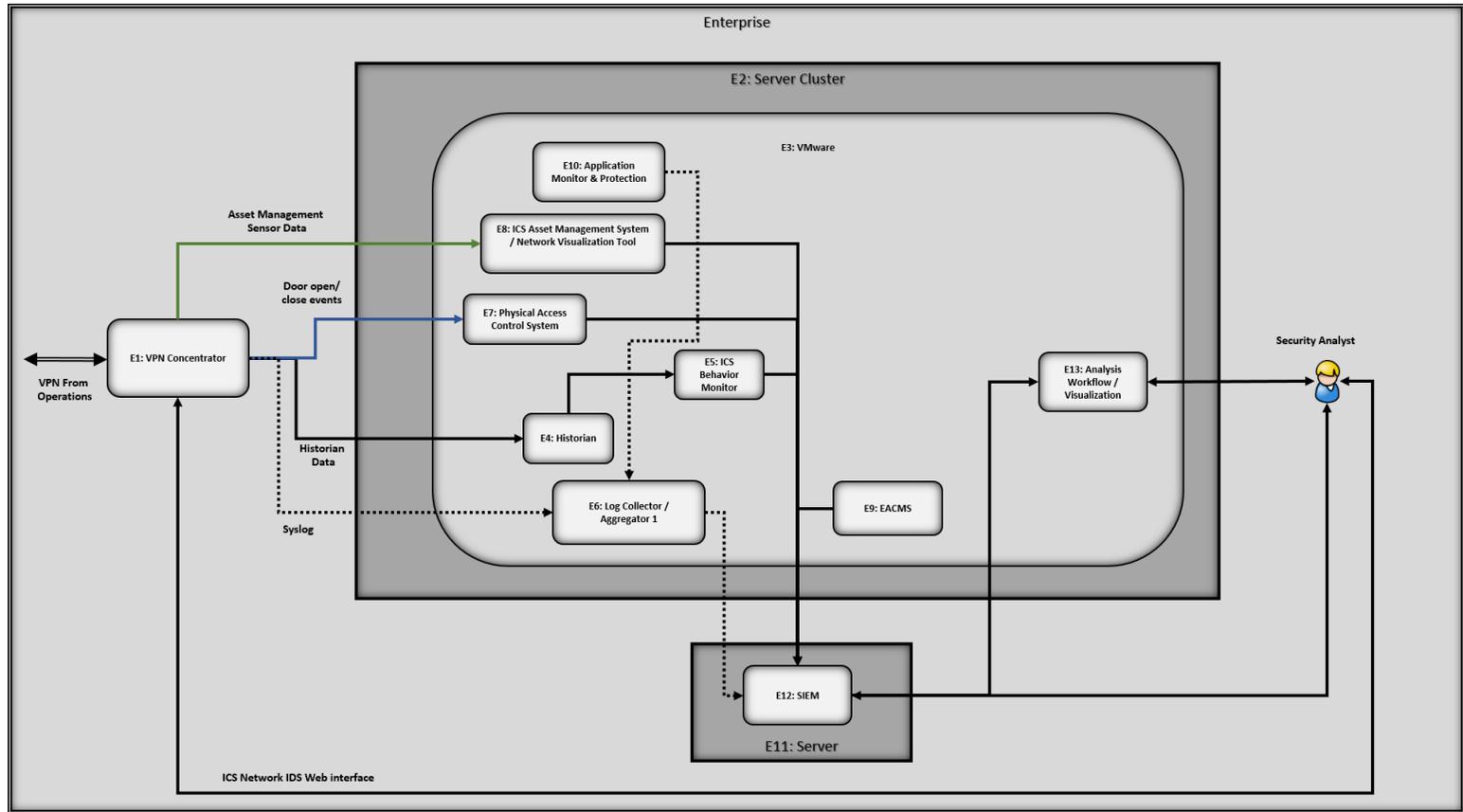
310 The list of reference design components included in [Table 5.1](#) focuses only on the components  
311 of the reference design that are needed to enable it to meet its SA objective of collecting  
312 information from the ICS network, aggregating it at a centralized location, and providing  
313 analysis capability in a manner that supports the intended CSF subcategories. [Table 5.1](#) does  
314 not include components that are needed to manage or secure the reference design. However,  
315 the reference design itself must be managed and secured. To this end, this second part of the  
316 security analysis focuses on the security of both the reference design itself and its management  
317 infrastructure.

318 [Table 5.2](#), Components for Managing and Securing the SA Reference Design and Protecting the  
319 ICS Network, lists components that are needed to manage the reference design, secure both  
320 the reference design and the data it collects, and protect the ICS network. [Table 5.2](#) also  
321 describes the security protections provided by each of the management and security  
322 components. As with Part 1 of the security analysis, although the products that were used to  
323 instantiate each component in the build are also listed, the security protections provided by  
324 these products are the focus of this security analysis.

325 [Figure 5.3](#) depicts the monitoring/data collection management architecture of the reference  
326 design using the generic names of each component.

327

Figure 5.3 Monitoring/Data Collection Management Architecture Depicted using Generic Component Names



328

329

330

331

332

333

Note that because the NCCoE build involved using products from many different vendors, the NCCoE provided those vendors with access to the NCCoE lab for the purpose of product installation, configuration, and maintenance. Therefore, the architecture that was actually instantiated included components for securing this vendor access path. However, this vendor access path is an artifact specific to the NCCoE build. It is not anticipated that organizations that adopt the SA architecture would enable such a vendor access path in their implementations. Therefore, this vendor access path is not included within the scope of the security analysis.

<sup>334</sup> **Table 5.2 Components for Managing and Securing the ES-SA Reference Design and Protecting the ICS Network**

Component	ID	Specific Product	Security Protection Provided
Electronic Access Control and Monitoring System (EACMS)	O1 O5 O18 O17	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 TDi Technologies Console Works (Operations Management) Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall Waterfall Secure Bypass	<p>One EACMS component (Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501) enables remote configuration of privileged user access to the PACS Firewall. This EACMS component is referred to as the PACS Firewall EACMS.</p> <p>A second EACMS component (TDi Technologies Console Works) enables remote configuration of privileged user access to the consoles of the four components on the monitoring server (Log Collector/Aggregator, ICS Asset Management System, ICS Network IDS, and Historian). This EACMS component is referred to as the Monitoring Components' EACMS.</p> <p>The third EACMS component (Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall) operates as the network port and protocol level to control remote management traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and the Monitoring Components' EACMS. It also serves as the EACMS for the taps switch. This EACMS component is referred to as the EACMS Firewall.</p> <p>The fourth EACMS component (Waterfall Secure Bypass) is hardware that might be manually configured to enable data to be sent into the operations facility to support EACMS activities for a limited period of time.</p> <p>All EACMS components except for the Waterfall Secure Bypass, which is a physical cross-connect, also create an audit trail of all privileged user access to the components that they protect. They send log entries documenting this audit trail to the SIEM.</p> <p>None of the four components that comprise the EACMS are able to be remotely managed.</p> <p>Each EACMS component except for the Waterfall Secure Bypass includes the three policy sub-components listed in the next three rows of this table.</p>
EACMS Policy Administration Point (PAP)	O1 O5 O18	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 TDi Technologies Console Works (Operations Management) Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	The point that manages access authorization policies; it is the source of policies for the EACMS and the location at which policies may be created and edited.
EACMS Policy Decision Point (PDP)	O1 O5 O18	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 TDi Technologies Console Works (Operations Management) Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	The point that evaluates access requests against authorization policies for the EACMS before issuing access decisions.

**Table 5.2 Components for Managing and Securing the ES-SA Reference Design and Protecting the ICS Network**

Component	ID	Specific Product	Security Protection Provided
EACMS Policy Enforcement Point (PEP)	O1 O5 O18	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 Station Access Controller TDi Technologies Console Works (Operations Management) Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	The point that intercepts user's access request to a resource, makes a decision request to the EACMS's PDP to obtain the access decision (i.e. access to the resource is approved or rejected), and acts on the received decision. In the build, the Siemens CROSSBOW EACMS Station Access Controller is integrated into the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 component.
PACS Firewall EACMS	O1	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501	Enables configuration of privileged user access to the PAC firewall to be controlled remotely in a manner similar to that in which the Monitoring Components' EACMS enables configuration of privileged user access to the consoles on the monitoring server components to be controlled.
Monitoring Components' EACMS	O5	TDi Technologies Console Works (Operations Management)	Enables configuration of privileged user access to the consoles on the monitoring server components to be controlled remotely in a manner similar to that in which the PACS Firewall EACMS enables privileged user access to the PACS firewall to be controlled.
EACMS Firewall	O18	Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	Firewall that operates as the network port and protocol level to monitor all traffic received at the monitoring components' EACMS from external sources when the normally-open cross connect is closed. In addition to monitoring traffic, the firewall also restricts traffic flow according to its configured rules. This firewall's purpose is to ensure that the only permitted components to which traffic can flow to and from the normally-open cross-connect are the server for the Monitoring Component's EACMS (O19) and the Taps switch (O15). It is configured to permit only three types of traffic: (1) remote management traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and the Monitoring Components' EACMS, which is used to control privileged user access to the consoles of the four components on the monitoring server and access to the web interface of the ICS Network IDS, (2) remote management traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and the taps switch, and (3) traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and the ICS Network IDS component to support the web interface that enables security analysts that are located on the enterprise network to view SA information using the ICS Network IDS component's graphical user interface. (Note that support for this last type of traffic is one way in which the reference design differs from the build, because the reference design requires that the ICS Network IDS component report potential IDS events by sending syslog events; it does not require support for a graphic user interface to the ICS Network IDS component.

**Table 5.2 Components for Managing and Securing the ES-SA Reference Design and Protecting the ICS Network**

Component	ID	Specific Product	Security Protection Provided
PACS Firewall	O3	Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	Monitors traffic sent between the VPN concentrator/PACS Firewall EACMS component and the Physical Access Sensor component. Configured to ensure that the only messages that are permitted to be received from the Physical Access Sensor are door open/close and other valid PACS events are forwarded to the VPN concentrator. The Physical Access Sensor sits on an operational IT network that is connected to the internet. Therefore, this PACS firewall is exposed to the operational IT network and, via that network, to the internet. So configuring the PACS Firewall to accept only PACS sensor messages prevents the PACS devices and the operational network on which they sit from being used as an attack vector to compromise the reference architecture. In particular, the PACS Firewall prevents traffic (other than door controller traffic) from being sent from the internet to the enterprise network via the VPN.
VPN Concentrator	O1	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501	The VPN concentrator supports four types of VPN traffic between the operations facility and the enterprise network: monitoring data sent from the operations facility to the enterprise network; remote management traffic used to support privileged access to the consoles of the four components on the monitoring server, remote management traffic used to support privileged user access to the console of the PACS firewall, and web interface traffic exchanged between the ICS Network IDS component and a remote security analyst located on the enterprise network. The traffic exchanged on this web interface might be either traffic needed to support remote management of the ICS Network IDS component by a security analyst or traffic needed to support the ICS Network IDS component's graphical user interface. (This graphical user interface is not part of the reference design, but it is supported in the build.)
Operations Firewall	O1	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501	Firewall monitoring all traffic sent between the operations facility and external sources and restricting traffic flow according to its configured rules. This firewall is the one device on the operations facility network that is exposed to the Internet at all times. Regarding traffic arriving at the operations facility from external sources, it is configured to permit (1) remote management traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and the Monitoring Components' EACMS, which will be further scrutinized by the EACMS Firewall, (2) remote management traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and the PACS Firewall EACMS, and (3) remote management traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and the taps switch.

**Table 5.2 Components for Managing and Securing the ES-SA Reference Design and Protecting the ICS Network**

Component	ID	Specific Product	Security Protection Provided
Unidirectional Gateway	O2	Waterfall Unidirectional Security Gateway Hardware	Enforces one-way transfer between a transmitter and receiver within hardware, ensuring that data may be sent from the monitoring server to the enterprise, but not in the reverse direction. The gateway also replicates industrial servers and emulates industrial devices to IT users and applications.
Normally-open cross-connect	O17	Waterfall Secure Bypass	Enables the data unidirectional gateway component to be bypassed so that data can be sent into the operations facility for specific management and monitoring purposes. Must be closed manually and stays closed only for a limited period of time.
ICS Firewall	O14	Radiflow 3180 Firewall	Firewall monitoring all traffic that flows from the Historian Interface component to the monitoring server. This firewall is configured to prevent traffic from flowing in the reverse direction, i.e., to prevent traffic from flowing from the monitoring server to the ICS network. Also, it cannot be managed remotely.
Historian Firewall	O20	Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall	Firewall monitoring all traffic that flows between the ICS Historian and the Historian Interface component. This firewall is configured to prevent traffic from flowing from the Historian Interface component to the ICS network. It cannot be managed remotely.
Historian Interface component	O13	OSIsoft Citect Interface	This component interfaces with the ICS Historian that is on the ICS network. It receives data from the ICS Historian and provides this to the Historian component in the monitoring server of the SA reference architecture, but it does not permit data to travel in the other direction, from the monitoring server to the ICS Historian.
Taps Switch	O15	Cisco 2950 (Aggregator)	This switch aggregates data received from all ICS taps and forwards this data to the monitoring server. It is configured to permit only one-way data flow from the tap interfaces toward the monitoring server interface. No data is permitted to travel out the tap interfaces toward the taps.

335 **5.2.1 Protecting the ICS Network**

336 A main security requirement of the SA use case is to ensure that the ICS network is not impacted by the monitoring to which it is  
 337 subjected. In particular, it is crucial to ensure that, although data can flow from the ICS network to the reference design, a minimal  
 338 amount of very strictly restricted data is allowed to flow from the reference design onto the ICS network. There are two paths on which  
 339 data flows from the ICS network to the monitoring server: from the ICS network taps, and from the ICS Historian.

340 These taps are inherently unidirectional. By design, they permit data to flow only from the ICS  
341 network to the monitoring server. They are not able to allow data to flow from the monitoring  
342 server to the ICS network. These taps are also passive, meaning that if they were to lose power  
343 or otherwise fail, they would not disrupt the flow of data on the ICS network.

344 This unidirectional transmission path is enforced by the Historian Firewall (O20) (i.e., a  
345 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall in the build), the Historian Interface component (O13), the  
346 server on which it resides, and the ICS Firewall (O14) (i.e., the Radiflow 3180 firewall in the  
347 build), all of which sit between the ICS Historian (i.e., Schneider Electric Citect in the build) and  
348 the monitoring server. These components are critical for ensuring that only a small amount of  
349 strictly restricted data is permitted to travel into the ICS network from the monitoring server.

350 In the build, the Historian Interface component (O13) pulls data from the ICS Historian  
351 (Schneider Electric Citect, U1) and pushes this information to Historian component in the  
352 monitoring server (O8). This means that the Historian interface component (O13) needs to  
353 send a message to the ICS Historian (U1) that sits on the ICS to cause it to send the Historian  
354 data to the Historian Interface component. Therefore, the Historian Firewall (O20) between the  
355 Historian Interface component and the ICS Historian has to be configured to permit requests for  
356 data to flow from the Historian Interface component to the ICS Historian. It also has to be  
357 configured to allow Historian data to flow in the opposite direction, i.e. from the ICS Historian  
358 to the Historian Interface component.

359 The fact that requests for data pulled from the ICS Historian must be permitted to be sent from  
360 the operations network to the ICS network is not ideal. To protect the ICS network, it would be  
361 preferable prevent all data flow from the operations network to the ICS network. To ensure that  
362 requests for Historian data are the only type of data that is permitted to be sent from the  
363 operations network to the ICS network, it is essential that the Historian Firewall (O20) that sits  
364 between these two components be configured to limit the data that is sent to the ICS network  
365 to the necessary requests for Historian data and nothing more. It is also essential that this  
366 Historian Firewall (O20) cannot be configured remotely. This ensures that only an insider who  
367 has physical access to this firewall (O20) would be able to modify its rules to permit additional  
368 traffic to enter the ICS network from the operations network.

369 Once it has the Historian data, the Historian Interface component pushes this data to the  
370 Historian component (O8) on the monitoring server. This means that the firewall (O14) that sits  
371 between the Historian Interface component and the Historian component can (and must) be  
372 configured not to permit any data to flow in the direction from the monitoring server to the  
373 Historian Interface component. It is also essential not to allow this firewall (O14) to be  
374 configured remotely.

375 In short, the reference design balances two competing goals:

- 376 ■ protecting the ICS network as fully as possible from the receipt of potentially harmful data  
377 from the reference design itself, and
- 378 ■ enabling the ICS Historian to receive requests for data from the reference design.

379 It achieves these goals by isolating the Historian interface component on both sides by  
380 firewalls, ensuring that these firewalls are configured correctly, and ensuring that neither these  
381 firewalls, the Historian Interface Component, nor the server that the Historian Interface  
382 Component sits on are remotely configurable. It should also be noted that the Historian  
383 Interface component is running on a server that is distinct from the monitoring server. This  
384 separation ensures that the reference design does not depend solely on VMWare's ability to  
385 separate applications running on it to ensure that no data is permitted to travel from the

386 monitoring server to the Historian Interface component. As discussed, none of the components  
387 located between the ICS Historian and the monitoring server may be managed remotely.  
388 Creating additional means to configure these components from outside of the operations  
389 facility is considered a greater risk than being unable to monitor changes to these firewalls from  
390 outside of the facility; therefore, only technicians physically on site at the operations facility  
391 may change the configuration of these components.

## 392 5.2.2 Protecting the Reference Design from Outside Attack

393 Measures implemented to protect the monitoring and data collection sub-architecture itself  
394 from outside attack include:

- 395 ■ The PACS Firewall situated between the Physical Access sensors and the VPN  
396 concentrator/PACS Firewall EACMS is configured to permit only door open/close events and  
397 other valid notifications to be sent from the Physical Access sensors to the monitoring and  
398 data collection sub-architecture. The Physical Access sensors sit on the facility's operational  
399 network, which exposes them to the internet. The PACS firewall plays a crucial role in  
400 preventing external attacks to the monitoring network. It prevents the PACS devices and the  
401 operational network on which they sit from being used as an attack vector to compromise  
402 the monitoring and data collection sub-architecture.
- 403 ■ Data should only be allowed to flow from the enterprise network into the monitoring server  
404 under carefully controlled circumstances and with very limited restrictions. The  
405 architecture's unidirectional gateway component (i.e. the Waterfall Unidirectional Security  
406 Gateway Hardware component in the build) that sits between the monitoring server and  
407 the VPN concentrator component (i.e., the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501) is designed to  
408 enforce this unidirectionality. This unidirectional gateway is a combination of hardware and  
409 software. The hardware physically permits only one-way transfer across an optical  
410 connection between a hardware transmitter and a hardware receiver. The hardware  
411 ensures that monitored data may be sent from the monitoring server to the enterprise, but  
412 no data may be sent in the reverse direction on this connection into the monitoring server.  
413 Unidirectional gateway software replicates industrial servers and emulates industrial  
414 devices from the protected operations network to the enterprise network.

## 415 5.2.3 Protecting the Remote Management Paths

416 In the example solution presented, for the purpose of monitoring, the SA architecture design  
417 assumed that the data aggregation/analysis activity would be performed at a physically  
418 separate location from the data monitoring/collection activity. This scenario was used to reflect  
419 real-world operations; its risk is greater than the scenario in which the monitoring/data  
420 collection sub-architecture and the data aggregation/analysis sub-architecture are physically  
421 co-located in the same secure facility. Therefore, mechanisms for protecting the data and  
422 management path between the two parts of the architecture that support these activities are  
423 integral to the reference design.

424 For the purpose of monitoring, data should flow unidirectionally from the operations facility to  
425 the enterprise network. For management purposes, however, there is a need for traffic to be  
426 able to flow into the operations facility from the enterprise network. In particular, incoming  
427 traffic is required to enable remote management of the following components:

- 428 ■ the PACS Firewall (one of the Schneider Electric Tofino Firewalls in the build), which sits  
429 between the VPN concentrator and the Physical Access Sensor
- 430 ■ the four data collection components in the monitoring server at the operations facility
- 431 ■ the taps switch, which sits between the ICS taps and the monitoring server
- 432 ■ the PACS Firewall EACMS/Operations Firewall

433 Remote management traffic destined for the monitoring server or the taps switch must instead  
434 bypass the unidirectional gateway to reach its destination. This remote management traffic can  
435 be used to monitor and configure the PACS firewall.

436 Remote management traffic destined for the monitoring server or the taps switch must instead  
437 bypass the data diode to reach its destination. To enable this bypass, we used the  
438 normally-open cross-connect component (the Waterfall Secure Bypass component in the  
439 build). Closing this normally-open cross-connect enables traffic to flow back and forth between  
440 the enterprise network and the monitoring server for limited time periods.

441 These remote management access paths contain numerous components and features designed  
442 to secure them. These components are as follows:

- 443 ■ VPN concentrator - is directly exposed to the Internet. This component is situated on its  
444 own network in the operations facility.
- 445 ■ Operations Firewall - monitors all traffic sent between the operations facility and external  
446 sources and restricts traffic flow according to its configured rules. It is exposed to the  
447 internet at all times.

448 This component contains a Policy Enforcement Point (PEP) for the PACS firewall (the  
449 Schneider Electric Tofino firewall between the RS2 Door Controller and the RUGGEDCOM  
450 RX1501 in the build) This PEP is the "Station Access Controller" shown within the  
451 RUGGEDCOM RX1501 build diagram. It enables administrative access to the console of the  
452 PACS firewall to be managed and monitored remotely.

- 453 ■ Normally-open Cross-connect - enables the unidirectional gateway to be bypassed,  
454 enabling traffic to flow into the operations facility monitoring architecture. As mentioned  
455 earlier, the unidirectional gateway sits on a path between the monitoring server and the  
456 Operations Firewall/VPN concentrator (RUGGEDCOM RX1500) to ensure that information  
457 can flow only unidirectionally from the monitoring server to the enterprise network.

458 This component is a physical switch that is normally open, ensuring that no data can be  
459 transmitted across it. This switch must be closed manually with a physical key by an  
460 operator who is located on site at the operations facility to enable remote traffic to enter  
461 the monitoring/data collection portion of the architecture from the enterprise. Once  
462 closed, it will remain closed for a limited, configurable amount of time (e.g., 30 minutes),  
463 and then it will automatically open (unless explicitly opened before this time period  
464 expires). The connection cannot be enabled remotely.

- 465 ■ The EACMS Firewall - this component is instantiated using the Schneider Electric Tofino  
466 firewall in the build. After passing through the VPN concentrator, the operations firewall,  
467 and the Normally-open Cross-connect, traffic received from the enterprise flows to the

468 EACMS Firewall. Because of its placement behind the VPN concentrator, the Operations  
469 Firewall, and the Normally-open Cross-connect, this component is not by default exposed  
470 to any traffic from outside of the operations facility except for those periods of time when  
471 the Normally-open Cross-connect has been explicitly closed and traffic sent to the facility  
472 on a VPN meets the requirements for entry that are enforced by the Operations Firewall.

473 When such a connection into the operations facility from outside is established, the EACMS  
474 Firewall is needed to monitor traffic being exchanged between the operations facility and  
475 the outside. This firewall operates at the network port and protocol level to monitor and  
476 control remote management traffic exchanged between the enterprise network and both  
477 the taps switch and the Monitoring Components' EACMS. Three types of traffic are  
478 permitted by the EACMS Firewall:

- 479 • remote management traffic exchanged between the Enterprise network and the  
480 Monitoring Components' EACMS (TDi Console Works), which is used to manage  
481 privileged access to each of the components on the monitoring server
- 482 • web interface traffic exchanged between the ICS Network IDS component on the  
483 monitoring server and a remote security analyst located on the enterprise network. The  
484 traffic exchanged on this web interface might be needed either to support remote  
485 management of the ICS Network IDS component or to enable the security analyst to  
486 view SA data via the ICS Network IDS component's graphical user interface
- 487 • remote management traffic exchanged between the Hardware Component EACMS  
488 (Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW) on the Enterprise network and the taps switch,  
489 which is used to administer the taps switch

- 490 ■ Monitoring Components' EACMS - this component is instantiated using TDi ConsoleWorks  
491 in the build. Remote management traffic coming through the EACMS firewall to the  
492 operations facility that is destined for one of the four monitoring server components may  
493 only reach those components via the Monitoring Components' EACMS. This is a component  
494 that administrators must use to configure user privileges or to access the consoles of the  
495 four components on the monitoring server. This component is connected to the consoles of  
496 each of the four applications running on the monitoring server so it can control access to  
497 these consoles and permit only those users with administrator privileges to access each  
498 console. It also records all activities that are performed on these consoles. The Monitoring  
499 Components' EACMS enables the monitoring server components to be configured  
500 remotely, but the tool itself cannot be configured remotely. Web interface traffic that is  
501 sent between the ICS Network IDS component (O11) and a security analyst on the  
502 enterprise network must also be sent through the Monitoring Component's EACMS. This  
503 web interface traffic includes both SA monitoring data accessed via the ICS Network IDS  
504 graphical user interface and traffic needed to remotely manage the ICS Network IDS.

505 The Monitoring Components' EACMS runs on a server that is separate and distinct from the  
506 monitoring server. This separation is necessary to ensure that the architecture does not  
507 depend solely on VMWare's ability to separate applications running on it, which would be  
508 the case if the Monitoring Components' EACMS were on the same VMWare server as the  
509 monitoring server and its components. The server on which the Monitoring Components'  
510 EACMS server is running cannot be remotely managed.

- 511 ■ PACS Firewall EACMS (O1)- this component is instantiated in the build using the Siemens  
512 RUGGEDCOM RX1501 component that sits on the enterprise network. It enables  
513 monitoring and configuration of user privileges on the PACS firewall (O3) in a manner

514 similar to the Monitoring Components' EACMS (O19). The PACS Firewall EACMS is used to  
515 remotely configure and manage the PACS Firewall, i.e., the firewall that sits between the  
516 VPN Concentrator (O1) and the Physical Access Sensors (O4).

517 To further protect the remote management path, the reference design does not permit any  
518 components that are in the remote management path to be remotely configurable. The only  
519 way that components and software that are in the remote management path can be  
520 administered and configured is in person.

#### 521 5.2.4 Protecting the Remote Path to the IDS Web Interface

522 As mentioned earlier, the ICS Network IDS component has a web interface through that  
523 facilitates remote management and access to its graphical user interface. Because a security  
524 analyst using the web interface to view SA data is expected to be located on the enterprise  
525 network rather than at the operations center, SA traffic will flow between the ICS Network IDS  
526 and the enterprise network via this web interface. Security mechanisms are needed to monitor  
527 and restrict this traffic flowing into the operations center. The web interface traffic uses the  
528 same path as traffic managing the monitoring server components remotely; it relies on the  
529 same security mechanisms as those that protect the remote management path, namely the  
530 operations firewall (O1), the normally-open cross-connect (O17), the EACMS firewall (O18), and  
531 the Monitoring Components' EACMS (O19).

#### 532 5.2.5 Protecting the SIEM

533 The SIEM component enables information collected at the reference design's disparate sensors  
534 and monitoring components to be combined, correlated, and analyzed in a way that would not  
535 be possible when using the data from a single SA component in isolation. Aggregation of SA  
536 information in the SIEM provides enormous potential in terms of anomaly detection and  
537 increased SA. Ironically, the main strength of the reference design might serve as its  
538 vulnerability, unless properly protected. If an adversary can penetrate the SIEM to modify or  
539 delete information, if he can alter the processes used to analyze or visualize asset information,  
540 or if he can alter information while in transit to the SIEM, then the very system that was  
541 designed to increase SA and make a wide variety of asset information centrally available to  
542 security analysts could be used as an attack vector. It is imperative that access to the SIEM be  
543 strictly limited to a small number of authorized users. Ideally, the integrity of the monitored  
544 information will also be protected from the points at which it is collected until it reaches the  
545 SIEM component. Ensuring the integrity and completeness of all data sent to and stored in the  
546 SIEM is essential to securing the reference design solution. If the components used to  
547 implement the reference design do not inherently provide data integrity for monitored  
548 information that is sent to the SIEM, then security will rely on enforcement of strict physical  
549 access control to ensure that attackers are not given the opportunity to access and  
550 modify/delete data that is in the SIEM or in transit to the SIEM.

551 It is worth noting that the absence of an SIEM does not mean that an energy organization does  
552 not have this SA information stored on its networks. Access to the SA information resides  
553 instead at disparate locations on the network. Energy services organizations still have the need  
554 to safeguard this SA information in the various locations where it is generated, stored, and  
555 while in transit.

### 5.2.5.1 Controlling Access to the SIEM

Only highly privileged users should be permitted to log into the SIEM. No users should be permitted to modify SA data that is being stored on this component. Monitoring, logging, and auditing of all console activity performed on this component is essential to ensuring that authorized users are not performing unauthorized activities on this component. Periodic reports should be generated listing all users who logged into the SIEM component and activities performed.

### 5.2.5.2 SIEM Data Verification

Mechanisms are needed to help ensure that information collected or generated at a collection component is sent to and received by the SIEM, i.e., that the SIEM actually receives all of the monitored information that it is supposed to. If an adversary were to have the ability to disable a sensor without the reference design being alerted, serious harm could result. Mechanisms are needed to ensure that if a monitoring or collection system is disabled or otherwise unable to send information to the SIEM, or if monitored information is deleted before reaching the SIEM, the absence of this information will be detected so that the situation can be remedied. Ideally, liveness checks for each of the devices on the enterprise network that report directly to the SIEM can be built into the SIEM, so that if heartbeat messages or other expected updates are not received at the expected intervals, alerts will be generated.

To the extent possible, these checks may be configured and implemented with the reference design components themselves. For example, ArcSight, the SIEM used in the build, can be configured to generate alerts when it does not receive data. However, this mechanism is not foolproof. Configuration of the SIEM requires that ArcSight alerts be tuned using a baseline of received data. Accuracy of the alerts depends on the extent to which the data that is sent mimics the baseline used to tune the SIEM. There is no guarantee that every item of information that is dropped would be detected. If monitoring devices are generating heartbeat messages, the SIEM could be equipped with a script to enable it to detect missing messages and thereby infer that either a monitoring device or its communications channel to the SIEM is not operational.

The SIEM cannot be expected to be able to detect the failure of monitoring devices that do not report directly to it. If a sensor reports to an intermediate system rather than directly to the SIEM itself, the intermediate system must be involved in detecting the potential failure of the sensor. There needs to be a way for the SIEM and all intermediate components in the reference design to know if the sensors that report to them are alive and well. Having sensors send heartbeats is one example of how such a liveness detection mechanism could be implemented. Mechanisms should be designed for each sensor type so that the sensor's liveness can be validated and an alert can be generated when the sensor fails. For example, if the ICS Access Management System on the enterprise network does not receive an update from the ICS Access Management System on the operations network, it should generate an alert. Similarly, if the log collector/aggregator in the monitoring server detects that it has not received a log message that was sent to it by one of the monitoring components, it should be configured to generate an alert.

597 The ability to detect sensor failure is complicated by the unidirectional nature of the data  
598 transfer from the operations network to the enterprise network. This one-way transfer of  
599 information prevents components on the enterprise network from trying to ping sensors on the  
600 operational network. Given this constraint, it might make most sense to have a designated  
601 application in the operations network that is responsible for tracking the health of all  
602 monitoring devices and periodically sending a status report regarding sensor health to the  
603 enterprise network. Given that it is already receiving information from all monitoring  
604 components on the operational network, the Log Collector/Aggregator component is a good  
605 candidate location for implementing such a centralized sensor health tracking service in the  
606 operations network.

### 607 5.2.5.3 Information Integrity Protection

608 If SA information were to be deleted, modified, or falsified, whether in-transit or at-rest, the  
609 result could be catastrophic. Access to each reference design component and especially the  
610 SIEM must be protected to prevent modification or deletion of collected SA information.  
611 Although end-to-end integrity protection for data at rest and for data in transit is desirable,  
612 such comprehensive protection is not a component of this reference design. As a compensating  
613 mechanism, an adversary must be local to the operations network to compromise the integrity  
614 of monitored information that is on the operations network because monitoring data is not  
615 permitted to enter the operations network from outside; all data paths for monitoring data are  
616 outbound. (Note that the build's support of a web interface for monitoring ICS Network IDS  
617 data via a graphical user interface violates this principle.) While this leaves the potential for  
618 malicious activity by an adversary who is an authorized user on the operations network, this  
619 approach greatly reduces component threat exposure. The reference design's use of a VPN  
620 protects data integrity and confidentiality while data is in route between the operations facility  
621 and the enterprise facility.

622 Within the enterprise network, all data in transit to the SIEM can have its integrity protected  
623 using ArcSight connectors that have integrity checking (and/or encryption) enabled. Such use of  
624 integrity-checking connectors between all components and ArcSight might take care of integrity  
625 protection for data in transit within the enterprise network. However, there does not seem to  
626 be an equivalent general solution for protecting data in transit within the operations network. If  
627 ArcSight connectors were to be used to send syslog, Historian, or other monitored data to the  
628 SIEM from the operations network, the integrity of the received data could be validated at the  
629 SIEM. However, because of the unidirectional nature of the one-way transfer between the  
630 operations network and the enterprise network, there would be no way for the SIEM to  
631 become aware that it has lost its connection to the source in the event that the  
632 communications network should fail.

633 In much the same way that mechanisms are needed for each sensor type to ensure that the  
634 sensor's liveness can be validated, mechanisms for ensuring the integrity of each type of  
635 monitored data are also needed. Each data transfer in the reference design should be protected  
636 with integrity mechanisms to ensure that any loss or modification of data that occurs during the  
637 transfer will be detected: the integrity of Historian data sent from the Operations Historian  
638 component to the enterprise Historian component, the integrity of information sent from the  
639 ICS Asset Management System sensor on the operations network to the ICS Asset Management

640 System server and network visualization tool on the enterprise network, the integrity of door  
641 open and close events sent from the Physical Access Sensor on the operations network to the  
642 PACS on the enterprise network, and the integrity of syslog data sent from the Log  
643 Collector/Aggregator on the operations network to the Log Collector/Aggregator on the  
644 enterprise network.

645 Syslog data can, in theory, be encrypted, to ensure the integrity of the log data, assuming the  
646 individual products used to implement the reference design support syslog encryption.  
647 However, relying on syslog encryption to protect the integrity of data sent from monitoring  
648 devices to the SIEM suffers from the same drawback as would relying on ArcSight encryptors: if  
649 the communications network between the operations network and the enterprise network  
650 fails, the SIEM would not have any way to be alerted to this failure, and log data that is  
651 in-transit between the two networks would be dropped. Instead, the proposed solution for the  
652 reference design is for the log collector/aggregator on the operations network to collect all  
653 syslog data sent from other monitoring components and apply an integrity seal to this syslog  
654 information. The integrity seal is applied not only to the syslog record, but to the entire log file  
655 up to that point, so it protects the record's place in the file in addition to protecting the content  
656 of the record. The operations network instance of the log collector/aggregator sends syslog  
657 records to the enterprise network instance of the log collector/aggregator. The enterprise  
658 instance of the log collector/aggregator applies equivalent integrity seals to the received  
659 records. Should a question arise about the integrity of syslog records, both the operations and  
660 enterprise log collector/aggregators can validate the integrity of the records they hold. Further,  
661 a comparison could be made between operations and enterprise records. Because the log  
662 records are stored in a log collector/aggregator on the operations network instead of being sent  
663 directly to the enterprise network from each of the monitoring devices that generate them,  
664 these log records will not be dropped or lost in the event that the communications channel  
665 between the operations and enterprise networks fails.

### 666 5.3 Securing an Operational Deployment

667 When deploying the SA reference design in a live, operational environment, it is essential that  
668 organizations follow security best practices to address potential vulnerabilities, ensure that all  
669 assumptions on which the solution relies upon are valid<sup>1</sup>, and minimize any risk to the  
670 operational ICS network. The following list of best practices recommendations are designed to  
671 reduce this risk, but should not be considered comprehensive. Merely following this list will not  
672 guarantee a secure environment.

- 673 ■ Test individual components to ensure that they provide the expected CSF subcategory  
674 support and that they do not introduce potential vulnerabilities. For example, the taps  
675 deployed should be tested to verify that they are passive, i.e., that when power is turned off  
676 to them they do not disrupt the flow of traffic on the network on which they are deployed.  
677 They should also be tested to validate that they only permit data to flow in one direction,  
678 ensuring that they cannot be used as an entry point for malicious traffic to enter the  
679 network that is being monitored by the taps.

---

1. Note that the laboratory instantiation of the reference architecture builds did not implement every security recommendation.

- 680 ■ Harden all components: all components should be deployed on securely configured  
681 operating systems that use long and complex passwords and are configured according to  
682 best practices.
- 683 ■ Scan operating systems for vulnerabilities.
- 684 ■ Keep operating systems up-to-date on patching, version control, and monitoring indicators  
685 of compromise by performing, for example, virus and malware detection.
- 686 ■ Maintain all components in terms of ensuring that all patches are promptly applied,  
687 anti-virus signatures are kept up-to-date, indicators of compromise are monitored, etc.  
688 (patches should be tested before they are applied).
- 689 ■ Change the default password when installing software.
- 690 ■ Identify and understand what predefined administrative and other accounts each  
691 component comes with by default to eliminate any inadvertent back doors into these  
692 components. These accounts must be disabled and, even though they are disabled, their  
693 default passwords must also be changed to complex passwords.
- 694 ■ On key devices that protect the ICS network (e.g., the ICS firewall and the Historian firewall)  
695 and that are on the remote management path, the number of accounts on these devices  
696 should be limited, ideally, to one specific administrator and a backup account. As is the case  
697 in the reference design, all components on the remote access path should be configurable  
698 only in person.
- 699 ■ Implement mechanisms to monitor the ICS and Historian firewalls.
- 700 ■ Organizations leveraging the reference design solution should conduct their own  
701 evaluations of their implementation of the solution.
- 702 ■ All reference design components that are designed to detect anomalies and identify  
703 potential areas of concern with the use of analysis tools should be equipped with as  
704 complete a set of rules as possible to take full advantage of the analysis and anomaly  
705 detection capabilities of each component. The rules that are implemented must be  
706 consistent across components and they must enforce the organization's security policies as  
707 completely and accurately as possible. The SIEM should be configured with rules indicating  
708 the ICS systems, software, applications, connections, device, values and activities, that are  
709 authorized to enable it to ensure that only authorized personnel, connections, devices and  
710 software are on the ICS network.
- 711 ■ Identity and Access Management (IdAM) and Information Technology Asset Management  
712 (ITAM) security infrastructures should be put into place that will protect the reference  
713 design solution (namely, control access to each reference design component and especially  
714 to the SIEM component) and help ensure that the information fed into the SIEM  
715 component is complete and unmodified.
- 716 ■ The access control policies for the SIEM component should be designed to enforce best  
717 security practices such as the principle of least privilege and separation of duties, and these  
718 policies should be devised so that they can detect anomalous behavior or information that  
719 could indicate a security breach. Access to this component should require authentication  
720 and use of long and complex passwords. SA data stored in this component should be  
721 read-only, with any attempt to modify or delete information generating security alerts and  
722 log entries.

- 723 ■ Firewall configurations should be verified to ensure that data transmission is limited to  
724 those interactions that are needed to support sending information from various  
725 data-gathering components to the SIEM component and to analysis components as  
726 explicitly indicated in the reference design flow diagram. In addition, the inter-component  
727 connections that are permitted should be restricted to specific IP address and port  
728 combinations.
- 729 ■ Physical access to the both the operations and the enterprise networks should be strongly  
730 controlled.
- 731 ■ If possible, SA information sent from the monitoring components to the SIEM component  
732 should have integrity-checking mechanisms applied to enable tampering detection.  
733 Integrity mechanisms should conform to most recent industry best-practices.
- 734 ■ All components of the reference design solution should be installed, configured, and used  
735 according to the guidance provided by the component vendor.
- 736 ■ Only a very few users (super-administrators) should be designated to have the ability to  
737 control (initiate, modify, or stop) the types of information that each monitoring component  
738 collects and sends to the SIEM. Any changes made to the types of information to be  
739 monitored by or sent from any given collection component or device should, by policy,  
740 require the approval of more than one individual, and these changes must themselves be  
741 reported to the SIEM component.
- 742 ■ Whenever a super-administrator logs into or out of a collection component, these events  
743 must be reported to and logged at a “monitor of monitors” system as well as to the SIEM  
744 component. Upon logging in and logging out, a list of the types of information that the  
745 mid-tier device will report to the SIEM component should be sent so that any permanent  
746 changes the super-administrator has made to this list can be detected.
- 747 ■ Ideally, it should not be possible for anyone, including super-administrators, to modify the  
748 logging policies on any collection component such that a change to the list of information  
749 reported to the SIEM component would not itself be reported. However, this might not be  
750 how collection components are implemented. Therefore, it is imperative that a  
751 configuration management component that is part of a “monitor of monitors” system be  
752 configured to frequently validate and enforce such reporting at all collection devices.  
753 Furthermore, access to the configuration management component must be strictly  
754 controlled to ensure that its configuration is not changed such that it will not enforce  
755 reporting of configuration changes at all other mid-tier devices.
- 756 ■ Super-administrator access to the configuration management component should, by policy,  
757 require more than two individuals. All changes made during super-administrator access to  
758 the configuration management component should be reviewed by more than two  
759 individuals.

## 760 5.4 Security Analysis Summary

761 The SA reference design's integration, consolidation, and display of the SA information enables  
762 converged, efficient, and quick access to the variety of SA information that is collected, enabling  
763 better SA. In addition, consolidation of disparate types of PACS, IT, and OT information in a  
764 single location (the SIEM), enables the organization to correlate and analyze different types of  
765 monitored information in a way that is not possible when analyzing different categories of

766 information in isolation, enabling security incidents to be detected and responded to in a timely  
767 and prioritized fashion. This consolidation, combined with the ability to apply rules-based  
768 analysis to the information, makes it possible for the SA system to automatically detect  
769 anomalous situations that might be indicative of a security breach that would otherwise have  
770 been impossible to detect by any single component of the system working in isolation.

## 6 Functional Evaluation

2	6.1 SA Functional Test Plan .....	67
3	6.2 SA Use Case Requirements .....	68
4	6.3 Test Case: SA-1 .....	69
5	6.4 Test Case: SA-2 .....	70
6	6.5 Test Case: SA-3 .....	71
7	6.6 Test Case: SA-4 .....	72
8	6.7 Test Case: SA-5 .....	74
9	6.8 Test Case: SA-6 .....	75

We conducted a functional evaluation of the SA example solution to verify that several common key provisioning functions of the example solution, as implemented in our laboratory build, worked as expected. The SA workflow capability demonstrated the ability to:

- implement a converged alerting capability to provide a comprehensive view of cyber-related events and activities
- utilize multiple commercially available products to achieve the comprehensive view
- provide a converged and comprehensive platform that can alert utilities to potentially malicious activity

Section 6.1 explains the functional test plan in more detail and lists the procedures used for each of the functional tests.

## 6.1 SA Functional Test Plan

This test plan includes the test cases necessary to conduct the functional evaluation of the SA use case. The SA implementation is currently in a split deployment set up, with part of the lab being at the NCCoE (Enterprise Side) and the other at University of Maryland (Operations Side). Section 5 describes the test environment. Each test case consists of multiple fields that collectively identify the goal of the test, the specifics required to implement the test, and how to assess the results of the test. Table 6.1 provides a template of a test case, including a description of each field in the test case.

**Table 6.1 Functional Test Plan**

Test Case Field	Description
Parent requirement	Identifies the top-level requirement or series of top-level requirements leading to the testable requirement
Testable requirement	Drives the definition of the remainder of the test case fields. Specifies the capability to be evaluated
CSF Categories	Associated subcategories from the NIST SP 800-53 rev 4 Cybersecurity Framework controls addressed by the test case
Description	Describes the objective of the test case
Associated test cases	In some instances, a test case may be based on the outcome of another test case(s). For example, analysis-based test cases produce a result that is verifiable through various means such as log entries, reports, and alerts
Preconditions	The starting state of the test case. Preconditions indicate various starting state items, such as a specific capability configuration or protocol and content
Procedure	The step-by-step actions required to implement the test case. A procedure may consist of a single sequence of steps or multiple sequences of steps (with delineation) to indicate variations in the test procedure
Expected results	The expected results for each variation in the test procedure

**Table 6.1 Functional Test Plan**

Test Case Field	Description
Actual results	The actual observed results in comparison with the expected results
Overall result	The overall pass/fail result of the test. In some instances, the determination of the overall result may be more involved, such as determining pass/fail based on a percentage of errors identified

## 29 6.2 SA Use Case Requirements

30 This section identifies the SA functional evaluation requirements that are addressed using this  
 31 test plan. Table 6.2 lists those requirements and associated test cases.

32 **Table 6.2 Functional Evaluation Requirements**

Capability Requirement (CR) ID	Parent Requirement	Sub-requirement 1	Test Case
CR 1	The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves a company's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall business risk		
CR 1.a		IT	SA-2, SA-3, SA-4, SA-6
CR 1.b		OT	SA-1, SA-3, SA-4, SA-5, SA-6
CR 1.c		PACS	SA-1, SA-3
CR 2	The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that increases the probability that investigations of attacks or anomalous system behavior will reach successful conclusions		
CR 2.a		IT	SA-2
CR 2.b		OT	
CR 2.c		PACS	
CR 3	The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves accountability and traceability, leading to valuable operational lessons learned		
CR 3.a		IT	SA-1, SA-5, SA-6

**Table 6.2 Functional Evaluation Requirements**

Capability Requirement (CR) ID	Parent Requirement	Sub-requirement 1	Test Case
CR 3.b		OT	SA-6
CR 3.c		PACS	SA-1
CR 4	The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that simplifies regulatory compliance by automating generation and collection of a variety of operational log data		
CR 4.a		IT	SA-5
CR 4.b		OT	
CR 4.c		PACS	

### 33 6.3 Test Case: SA-1

34

**Table 6.3 Test Case ID: SA-1**

<b>Parent Requirement</b>	<p>(CR 1) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves a company's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall business risk.</p> <p>(CR 1.a) IT, (CR 1.b) OT, (CR 1.c) PACS</p> <p>(CR 3) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves accountability and traceability, leading to valuable operational lessons learned.</p> <p>(CR 3.a) IT, (CR 3.c) PACS</p>
<b>Testable Requirement</b>	(CR 1.b) OT, (CR 1.c) PACS, (CR 3.a) IT, (CR 3.c) PACS
<b>Description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can monitor for door access and correlate to badge used.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution recognize OT device going offline and alert IT network to anomalous condition.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can correlate timeframe between door access and OT device going offline.</li> </ul>
<b>Associated Test Cases</b>	Event Correlation - OT & PACS: Technician accesses sub-station/control-station and OT device goes down. Alert of anomalous condition and subsequently correlate to PACS to see who accessed facility.
<b>CSF Categories</b>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-3, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-2, PR.AC-2

Table 6.3 Test Case ID: SA-1

<b>Preconditions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ SA solution is implemented and operational in both Operations and Enterprise Network</li> <li>■ Ensure door controllers are properly installed and configured.</li> </ul>
<b>Procedure</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. At the Operations Network, open door leading to lab network to create door open event.</li> <li>2. Once inside, unplug a connection from one of the network taps to the aggregating switch (this is to simulate an ICS device being disconnected).</li> <li>3. Monitor SIEM for correlation activity.</li> </ol>
<b>Expected Results (pass)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CyberLens and system recognizes missing device(s) and notifies SIEM.</li> <li>2. AccessIt! updates SIEM of door activity.</li> <li>3. SIEM correlates timing between door activity and device(s) missing.</li> <li>4. SIEM generates alert accordingly.</li> </ol>
<b>Actual Results</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CyberLens system alerted to a device offline.</li> <li>2. Access It! alerted to door open event.</li> <li>3. SIEM shows each individual alert, along with timing between the alert.</li> </ol>
<b>Overall Result</b>	PASS

## 6.4

35  
36

### Test Case: SA-2

Table 6.4 Test Case ID: SA-2

<b>Parent Requirement</b>	<p>(CR 1) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves a company's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall business risk.</p> <p>(CR 1.a) IT</p> <p>(CR 2) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that increases the probability that investigations of attacks or anomalous system behavior will reach successful conclusions.</p> <p>(CR 2.a) IT</p>
<b>Testable Requirement</b>	(CR 1.a) IT, (CR 2.a) IT
<b>Description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can monitor user input for validity.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can actively defend against software-based attacks.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can alert IT to potential attacks.</li> </ul>
<b>Associated Test Cases</b>	Event Correlation - OT & IT: Enterprise (IT) java application communication with OT device (Historian) and used as a vector for SQL injection (SQLi).
<b>CSF Categories</b>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-2, DE.CM-1, DE-CM-4

Table 6.4 Test Case ID: SA-2

<b>Preconditions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Web application running Java is installed.</li> <li>■ Web application is connected to a database.</li> <li>■ Web application server is installed and used to run Java-based web application.</li> </ul>
<b>Procedure</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Connect to web application to query database.</li> <li>2. Attempt a normal query for data.</li> <li>3. Attempt a malicious query for data exfiltration.</li> </ol>
<b>Expected Results (pass)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The database should return normal results when a normal query is initiated.</li> <li>2. The web application should return no results when a malicious query is initiated.</li> <li>3. SIEM should be alerted by Waratek upon receipt of a malicious query.</li> </ol>
<b>Actual Results</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Normal queries yielded normal results as expected.</li> <li>2. Malicious queries yielded warnings and no results from web interface.</li> <li>3. SIEM was alerted of malicious queries by Waratek and displayed malicious queries in dashboard.</li> </ol>
<b>Overall Result</b>	PASS

37 **6.5****Test Case: SA-3**

38

Table 6.5 Test Case ID: SA-3

<b>Parent Requirement</b>	<p>(CR 1) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves a company's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall business risk.</p> <p>(CR 1.a) IT, (CR 1.b) OT, (CR 1.c) PACS</p>
<b>Testable Requirement</b>	(CR 1.a) IT, (CR 1.b) OT, (CR 1.c) PACS
<b>Description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can monitor network traffic inside of the operations network.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can alert to IP addresses not in expected ranges.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can alert on failed logins above a given threshold.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can correlate aforementioned anomalous behavior and alert analyst accordingly.</li> </ul>

Table 6.5 Test Case ID: SA-3

<b>Associated Test Cases</b>	Event Correlation - OT & IT / PACS-OT: Unauthorized access attempts detected and alerts triggered based on connection requests from a device on the SCADA network destined for an IP that is outside of the SCADA IP range. This test case focuses on the possibility of a malicious actor attempting to gain access to an OT device via the Enterprise (IT) network. This test case is also relevant in a PACS-OT scenario, in which someone has physical access to an OT device but lacks the necessary access to perform changes to the device, and alerts are sent based on numerous failed login attempts.
<b>CSF Categories</b>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-2, DE.AE-3, DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-7
<b>Preconditions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Waterfall Unidirectional Security Gateway is configured to allow traffic one-way out of the Operations Network.</li> <li>■ ConsoleWorks configured with authorized user access requirements.</li> </ul>
<b>Procedure</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Attempt authorized login to operations device.</li> <li>2. Attempt unauthorized login to operations device.</li> <li>3. Connect laptop to Powerconnect 7024 switch and attempt communication on network.</li> </ol>
<b>Expected Results (pass)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Allows connection to operations device from authorized users.</li> <li>2. Alerts on threshold of unauthorized logins/failed login attempts to operations device.</li> <li>3. Alerts to new device found on network.</li> <li>4. Blocks attempts of communication from new device to other network devices.</li> </ol>
<b>Actual Results</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. ConsoleWorks connections allowed from authorized users to OT devices.</li> <li>2. OT devices alert on failed login attempts.</li> <li>3. SIEM alerts are shown in dashboard for failed login attempts.</li> </ol>
<b>Overall Result</b>	PASS

## 39 6.6 Test Case: SA-4

40

Table 6.6 Test Case ID: SA-4

<b>Parent Requirement</b>	(CR 1) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves a company's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall business risk  (CR 1.a) IT, (CR 1.b) OT, (CR 1.c) PACS
<b>Testable Requirement</b>	(CR 1.a) IT, (CR 1.b) OT, (CR 1.c) PACS

Table 6.6 Test Case ID: SA-4

<b>Description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can utilize behavioral patterns to recognize anomalous events inside respective networks.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can alert analysts to behavioral anomalies within respective networks.</li> </ul>
<b>Associated Test Cases</b>	Data Exfiltration Attempts: examine behavior of systems; configure SIEM to alert on behavior which is outside the normal baseline. Alerts can be created emanating from OT, IT and PACS. This test case seeks alerting based on behavioral anomalies, rather than recognition of IP addresses.
<b>CSF Categories</b>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-3, DE.AE-5, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-7
<b>Preconditions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Established baselines in Operations network.</li> <li>■ Ensure continued monitoring of modeled behavior in Operations network.</li> </ul>
<b>Procedure</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Inject new IP addresses into established baseline sensor for Operations network.</li> <li>2. Inject anomalous network traffic (previously unreported protocols) into baseline sensor.</li> <li>3. Manipulate Enterprise Historian to show anomalous data/tags being stored.</li> <li>4. Replicate network traffic to show higher volume than normal in baseline.</li> </ol>
<b>Expected Results (pass)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CyberLens acknowledges unknown IP address and/or protocols and reports to SIEM.</li> <li>2. ICS2 recognizes changes within historian to detect anomalous industrial control behavior and alerts SIEM.</li> <li>3. ICS2 recognizes uptick in historian activity and alerts SIEM.</li> <li>4. CyberLens recognizes uptick in network activity and alerts SIEM.</li> <li>5. SIEM aggregates alerts and notifies analyst.</li> </ol>
<b>Actual Results</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CyberLens alerts to both unknown new IP address as well as new protocols.</li> <li>2. Unable to manipulate Enterprise Historian with current setup.</li> <li>3. CyberLens alerted to changes in network traffic.</li> <li>4. SIEM aggregated alerts and showed alerts on dashboard.</li> </ol>
<b>Overall Result</b>	PARTIAL PASS

## 6.7 Test Case: SA-5

41

42

Table 6.7 Test Case ID: SA-5

<b>Parent Requirement</b>	<p>(CR 1) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves a company's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall business risk</p> <p>(CR 1.b) OT</p> <p>(CR 3) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves accountability and traceability, leading to valuable operational lessons learned</p> <p>(CR 3.a) IT, (CR 3.b) OT</p> <p>(CR 4) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that simplifies regulatory compliance by automating generation and collection of a variety of operational log data</p> <p>(CR 4.a) IT, (CR 4.b) OT</p>
<b>Testable Requirement</b>	(CR 1.b) OT, (CR 3.a) IT, (CR 3.b) OT, (CR 4.a) IT
<b>Description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Show that the SA solution can detect when anomalous types of network traffic communicate with devices.</li> </ul>
<b>Associated Test Cases</b>	Configuration Management: unauthorized (inadvertent or malicious) uploading of an ICS network device configuration. Alert will be created to notify SIEM this has occurred. Detection method will be primarily based on inherent device capability (i.e. log files).
<b>CSF Categories</b>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-3, DE.CM-1, DE.CM-4, DE.CM-7, ID.AM-2
<b>Preconditions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Baseline established for Operations network.</li> </ul>
<b>Procedure</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connect through VPN to Operations monitoring network.</li> <li>Inject file into network traffic to mimic unauthorized/unseen protocols between monitored components.</li> </ol>
<b>Expected Results (pass)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>iSID recognizes anomalous network traffic and alerts SIEM.</li> <li>SIEM aggregates alerts and notifies analyst.</li> </ol>
<b>Actual Results</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>iSID shows alert for injected data.</li> <li>SIEM aggregated alerts from iSID and displayed on dashboard.</li> </ol>
<b>Overall Result</b>	PASS

## 6.8 Test Case: SA-6

43

44

**Table 6.8 Test Case ID: SA-6**

<b>Parent Requirement</b>	(CR 1) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves a company's ability to detect cyber-related security breaches or anomalous behavior, likely resulting in earlier detection and less impact of such incidents on energy delivery, thereby lowering overall business risk  (CR 1.a) IT, (CR 1.b) OT  (CR 3) The SA system shall include an SA workflow capability that improves accountability and traceability, leading to valuable operational lessons learned  (CR 3.a) IT, (CR 3.b) OT
<b>Testable Requirement</b>	(CR 1.a) IT, (CR 1.b) OT, (CR 3.a) IT, (CR 3.b) OT
<b>Description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can detect and notify on the introduction of an unknown device to ICS network.</li> <li>■ Show that the SA solution can notify analyst of unknown device.</li> </ul>
<b>Associated Test Cases</b>	Rogue Device Detection: alerts are triggered by the introduction of any device onto the ICS network that has not been registered with the asset management capability in the build.
<b>CSF Categories</b>	DE.AE-1, DE.AE-3, DE.CM-2, DE.CM-7, ID.AM-1, PR.AC-2
<b>Preconditions</b>	Baseline established for Operations Network
<b>Procedure</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Connect previously unknown device to network tap aggregation switch.</li> <li>2. Create IP address on unknown device within known IP address range.</li> <li>3. Send spoofed traffic to monitor.</li> </ol>
<b>Expected Results (pass)</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CyberLens recognizes anomalous network device and alerts SIEM.</li> <li>2. SIEM aggregates alerts and notifies analyst.</li> </ol>
<b>Actual Results</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CyberLens recognized new device on network and alerted SIEM</li> <li>2. SIEM aggregated alerts from CyberLens in dashboard and notified analyst</li> </ol>
<b>Overall Result</b>	PASS

## Appendix A Acronyms

<b>CA</b>	Certificate Authority
<b>CSF</b>	Cybersecurity Framework
<b>DMZ</b>	Demilitarized Zone
<b>EACMS</b>	Electronic Access Control and Monitoring Systems
<b>ICS</b>	Industrial Control Systems
<b>IdAM</b>	Identity and Access Management
<b>IDS</b>	Intrusion Detection System
<b>IT</b>	Information Technology
<b>ITAM</b>	Information Technology and Asset Management
<b>NCCoE</b>	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
<b>OT</b>	Operational Technology
<b>PAC</b>	Physical Access Control
<b>PACS</b>	Physical Access Control Systems
<b>PEP</b>	Policy Enforcement Point
<b>RMF</b>	Risk Management Framework
<b>SA</b>	Situational Awareness
<b>SAC</b>	Station Access Controller
<b>SCADA</b>	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
<b>SIEM</b>	Security Information and Event Management
<b>SQL</b>	Structured Query Language
<b>SQLi</b>	Structured Query Language Injection
<b>UMd</b>	University of Maryland
<b>VPN</b>	Virtual Private Network

NIST Special Publication 1800-7C

---

# Situational Awareness

## For Electric Utilities

---

**Volume C:**  
**How-To Guides**

**Jim McCarthy**

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
Information Technology Laboratory

**Otis Alexander**

**Sallie Edwards**

**Don Faatz**

**Chris Peloquin**

**Susan Symington**

**Andre Thibault**

**John Wiltberger**

**Karen Viani**

The MITRE Corporation  
McLean, VA

February 2017

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:  
[https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use\\_cases/situational\\_awareness](https://nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use_cases/situational_awareness)



## DISCLAIMER

Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified in this document in order to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE, nor is it intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-7C  
Natl Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 1800-7C, 149 pages (February 2017)  
CODEN: NSPUE2

## FEEDBACK

You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

Comments on this publication may be submitted to: [energy\\_nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:energy_nccoe@nist.gov).

Public comment period: February 16, 2017 through April 17, 2017

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
National Institute of Standards and Technology  
100 Bureau Drive  
Gaithersburg, MD 20899  
Mailstop 2002

## NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific industries or broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Working with technology partners—from Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in IT security—the NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cyber Security Framework and details the steps needed for another entity to recreate the example solution. The NCCoE was established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Md.

To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://nccoe.nist.gov>. To learn more about NIST, visit <https://www.nist.gov>.

## NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES

NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication Series 1800) target specific cybersecurity challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant standards and best practices and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information they need to implement a similar approach.

The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

## ABSTRACT

Through direct dialogue between NCCoE staff and members of the energy sector (comprised mainly of electric power companies and those who provide equipment and/or services to them) it became clear that energy companies need to create and maintain a high level of visibility into their operating environments to ensure the security of their operational resources (OT), including industrial control systems, buildings, and plant equipment. However, energy companies, as well as all other utilities with similar infrastructure and situational awareness challenges, also need insight into their corporate or information technology (IT) and physical access control systems (PACS). The convergence of data across these three often self-contained silos (OT, IT, and PACS) can better protect power generation, transmission, and distribution.

Real-time or near real-time situational awareness is a key element in ensuring this visibility across all resources. Situational awareness, as defined in this use case, is the ability to comprehensively identify and correlate anomalous conditions pertaining to industrial control systems, IT resources, access to buildings, facilities, and other business mission-essential resources. For energy companies, having mechanisms to capture, transmit, view, analyze, and

store real-time or near-real-time data from industrial control systems (ICS) and related networking equipment provides energy companies with the information needed to deter, identify, respond to, and mitigate cyber attacks against their assets.

With such mechanisms in place, electric utility owners and operators can more readily detect anomalous conditions, take appropriate actions to remediate them, investigate the chain of events that led to the anomalies, and share findings with other energy companies. Obtaining real-time and near-real-time data from networks also has the benefit of helping to demonstrate compliance with information security standards. This NCCoE project's goal is ultimately to improve the security of operational technology through situational awareness.

This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide describes our collaborative efforts with technology providers and energy sector stakeholders to address the security challenges energy providers face in deploying a comprehensive situational awareness capability. It offers a technical approach to meeting the challenge, and also incorporates a business value mind-set by identifying the strategic considerations involved in implementing new technologies. The guide provides a modular, end-to-end example solution that can be tailored and implemented by energy providers of varying sizes and sophistication. It shows energy providers how we met the challenge using open source and commercially available tools and technologies that are consistent with cybersecurity standards. The use case is based on an everyday business operational scenario that provides the underlying impetus for the functionality presented in the guide. Test cases were defined with industry participation to provide multiple examples of the capabilities necessary to provide situational awareness.

While the example solution was demonstrated with a certain suite of products, the guide does not endorse these products. Instead, it presents the characteristics and capabilities that an organization's security experts can use to identify similar standards-based products that can be integrated quickly and cost effectively with an energy provider's existing tools and infrastructure.

## KEYWORDS

cybersecurity; energy sector; information technology; physical access control systems; security event and incident management; situational awareness; operational technology, correlated events

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Robert Lee	Dragos
Justin Cavinee	Dragos
Jon Lavender	Dragos
Gregg Garbesi	Engie
Steve Roberts	HPE
Bruce Oehler	HPE
Gil Kroyzer	ICS2
Gregory Ravikovich	ICS2
Robert Bell	ICS2
Fred Hintermeister	NERC
Paul J. Geraci	OSIsoft
Mark McCoy	OSIsoft
Stephen J. Sarnecki	OSIsoft
Paul Strasser	PPC
Matt McDonald	PPC
Steve Sage	PPC
T.J. Roe	Radiflow
Ayal Vogel	Radiflow
Dario Loboizzo	Radiflow
Dave Barnard	RS2
Ben Smith	RSA, a Dell Technologies business
Tarik Williams	RSA, a Dell Technologies business
David Perodin	RSA, a Dell Technologies business
George Wrenn	Schneider Electric
Michael Pyle	Schneider Electric
AJ Nicolosi	Siemens
Jeff Foley	Siemens
Bill Johnson	TDi

Name	Organization
Pam Johnson	TDi
Clyde Poole	TDi
Eric Chapman	University of Maryland, College Park
David S. Shaughnessy	University of Maryland, College Park
Don Hill	University of Maryland, College Park
Mary-Ann Ibeziako	University of Maryland, College Park
Damian Griffe	University of Maryland, College Park
Mark Alexander	University of Maryland, College Park
Nollaig Heffernan	Waratek
James Lee	Waratek
John Matthew Holt	Waratek
Andrew Ginter	Waterfall
Courtney Schneider	Waterfall
Tim Pierce	Waterfall
Kori Fisk	The MITRE Corporation
Tania Copper	The MITRE Corporation

The technology vendors who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in response to a notice in the Federal Register. Companies with relevant products were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
<a href="#">Dragos</a>	CyberLens
<a href="#">Hewlett Packard Enterprise</a>	ArcSight
<a href="#">ICS<sup>2</sup></a>	OnGuard
<a href="#">OSIsoft</a>	Pi Historian
<a href="#">Radiflow</a>	iSIM
<a href="#">RS2 Technologies</a>	Access It!, Door Controller
<a href="#">RSA, a Dell Technologies business</a>	Archer Security Operations Management
<a href="#">Schneider Electric</a>	Tofino Firewall
<a href="#">Siemens</a>	RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
<a href="#">TDi Technologies</a>	ConsoleWorks
<a href="#">Waratek</a>	Waratek Runtime Application Protection
<a href="#">Waterfall Security Solutions</a>	Unidirectional Security Gateway, Secure Bypass

The NCCoE also wishes to acknowledge the special contributions of The University of Maryland, for providing us with a real-world setting for the Situational Awareness build; PPC (Project Performance Company), for their dedication in assisting the NCCoE with the very challenging and complex integration in this build; and the NCCoE EPC (Energy Provider Community), for their patience, support, and guidance throughout the lifecycle of this project.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Practice Guide Structure.....	2
1.2	Build Overview.....	3
1.3	Typographical Conventions.....	3
1.4	Logical Architecture Summary.....	4
1.5	Wiring Diagrams.....	5
<b>2</b>	<b>Product Installation Guides.....</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1	Cisco 2950 (O15).....	8
2.1.1	Cisco 2950 (O15) Installation Guide.....	8
2.2	Dragos Security CyberLens (E8, O10).....	11
2.2.1	Dragos Security CyberLens Server (E8) Environment Setup.....	11
2.2.2	Dragos Security CyberLens Server (E8) Installation and Configuration Guide.....	12
2.2.3	Dragos Security CyberLens Sensor (O10) Installation Guide.....	13
2.3	HPE ArcSight (E12).....	13
2.3.1	HPE ArcSight (E12) Installation Guide.....	14
2.3.2	ArcSight ESM Manager Server Operating System Installation.....	15
2.3.3	ArcSight Console Environment Setup.....	16
2.3.4	ArcSight Console Installation.....	17
2.4	ICS2 OnGuard (E5).....	18
2.4.1	Environment Setup.....	18
2.4.2	Install Vendor Software.....	19
2.4.3	Install OnGuard System.....	20
2.5	IXIA Full-Duplex Tap (O16).....	22
2.6	OSIsoft Pi Historian (E4, O8).....	23
2.6.1	OSIsoft Pi Historian (E4) Installation Guide.....	23
2.6.2	OSIsoft Pi Historian (O8) Installation Guide.....	28
2.7	OSIsoft Citect Interface (O13).....	29
2.7.1	OSIsoft Citect Interface (O13) Installation Guide.....	29
2.7.2	Configuration.....	30
2.8	RS2 Technologies Access It! Universal.NET(E7).....	34
2.8.1	Environment Setup.....	34
2.8.2	Post-installation and configuration.....	35
2.9	RS2 Technologies Door Controller (O4).....	36
2.9.1	Hardware Installation.....	36
2.9.2	Connecting Hardware to Access It! Universal.NET.....	39
2.10	Radiflow 3180 (O14).....	40
2.10.1	Radiflow 3180 (O14) Installation Guide.....	40
2.11	Radiflow iSID (O11).....	41

2.11.1 Environment Setup .....	41
2.11.2 Product Installation .....	41
2.12 RSA Archer Security Operations Management (E13) .....	42
2.12.1 System Requirements .....	42
2.12.2 Pre-Installation .....	43
2.12.3 Installation .....	46
2.12.4 Post-Installation .....	47
2.12.5 Configuration of ArcSight ESM to RSA Archer Security Operations Management .....	50
2.12.6 Additional ArcSight Integration Configuration .....	51
2.12.7 Sample Use Case Demonstration .....	52
2.13 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O3, O18, O20) .....	55
2.13.1 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O3) Installation Guide .....	55
2.13.2 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O18) Installation Guide .....	57
2.13.3 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O20) Installation Guide .....	63
2.14 Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW (E9) .....	63
2.14.1 Environment Setup .....	63
2.14.2 Installation Procedure .....	63
2.15 Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400 (E1) .....	82
2.15.1 Environment Setup .....	82
2.15.2 Installation Procedure .....	82
2.16 Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1) .....	85
2.16.1 Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1) Installation Guide .....	85
2.17 TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (E6, O5, O9) .....	85
2.17.1 System Environment .....	85
2.17.2 Installation .....	86
2.17.3 Usage .....	87
2.17.4 TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (E6) Installation Guide .....	89
2.17.5 TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (O9) Installation Guide .....	95
2.18 Waterfall Technologies Unidirectional Security Gateway (O2) .....	96
2.18.1 Waterfall Technologies Unidirectional Security Gateway (O2) Installation Guide .....	96
2.19 Waterfall Secure Bypass (O17) .....	100
2.19.1 Waterfall Secure Bypass (O17) Installation Guide .....	100
2.20 Waratek Runtime Application Protection (E10) .....	101
2.20.1 System Environment .....	101
2.20.2 Waratek Runtime Application Protection (E10) for Java Installation .....	101
2.20.3 Usage .....	102
2.21 ArcSight Connector Guides .....	102
2.21.1 Dragos CyberLens Connector .....	102
2.21.2 ICS2 OnGuard .....	107
2.21.3 RS2 Access It! Universal.NET .....	112
2.21.4 Additional References .....	117

### **3 Test Cases/Alert Configurations ..... 118**

---

3.1	ArcSight Filters.....	119
3.1.1	Filter Creation .....	119
3.1.2	ArcSight Test Cases .....	125
3.2	Test Cases.....	134
3.2.1	SA-1 Event Correlation for OT and PACS .....	135
3.2.2	SA-2 Event Correlation for OT and IT.....	135
3.2.3	SA-3 Event Correlation for OT and IT / PACS and OT .....	136
3.2.4	SA-4 Data Infiltration Attempts .....	136
3.2.5	SA-5 Configuration Management .....	137
3.2.6	SA-6 Rogue Device Detection .....	138

## List of Tables

Table 1.1	Typographical Conventions .....	3
Table 2.1	Centos Partitioning Scheme for ArcSight ESM Manager Server.....	14
Table 2.2	RSA Archer Configuration Settings .....	43
Table 2.3	IIS Components and .NET Framework .....	44

# 1 Introduction

2	1.1 Practice Guide Structure .....	2
3	1.2 Build Overview .....	3
4	1.3 Typographical Conventions.....	3
5	1.4 Logical Architecture Summary .....	4
6	1.5 Wiring Diagrams.....	5

The following guides show IT professionals and security engineers how we implemented this example solution. We cover all of the products employed in this reference design. We do not recreate the product manufacturers' documentation, which is presumed to be widely available. Rather, these guides show how we incorporated the products together in our environment.

**Note:** *These are not comprehensive tutorials. There are many possible service and security configurations for these products that are out of scope for this reference design.*

## 1.1 Practice Guide Structure

This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a standards-based reference design and provides users with the information they need to replicate this approach to mobile device security. The reference design is modular and can be deployed in whole or in parts.

Depending on their roles in an organization, different people will use this guide in different ways.

This guide contains three volumes:

- NIST SP 1800-7a: Executive Summary
- NIST SP 1800-7b: Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics--what we built and why
- NIST SP 1800-7c: How-To Guides--instructions for building the example solution (you are here)

Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

**Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers** will be interested in the Executive Summary (NIST SP 1800-7a), which describes the:

- challenges enterprises face in maintaining cross-silo situational awareness
- example solution built at the NCCoE
- benefits of adopting the example solution

**Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess, and mitigate risk will be interested in the Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics part of the guide, NIST SP 1800-7b, which describes what we did and why. The following sections will be of particular interest:

- Section 3.4.1, Assessing Risk Posture, provides a detailed description of the risk analysis we performed.
- Section 3.4.2, Security Characteristics and Controls Mapping, maps the security characteristics

You might share the *Executive Summary, NIST SP 1800-7a*, with your leadership team members to help them understand the importance of adopting a standards based situational awareness solution.

IT professionals who want to implement an approach like ours will find the whole practice guide useful. You can use the How-To portion of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-7c*, to replicate all or parts of the build created in our lab. The How-To guide provides specific product installation, configuration, and integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not re-create the product manufacturers' documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing parts of a solution including PACS OT, IT systems, and business processes. Your organization's security experts should identify the products that will best integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope you will seek products that are congruent with applicable standards and best practices.

A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe “the” solution, but a possible solution. This is a draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to [energy\\_nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:energy_nccoe@nist.gov).

## 1.2 Build Overview

Energy sector colleagues shared that they need to know when cybersecurity events occur throughout the organization. Additionally, the information about such events must correlate data between various sources before arriving at a converged platform. Security staff need to be aware of potential or actual cybersecurity incidents in their IT, OT and PACS systems, and to view these alerts on a single converged platform. Furthermore, the ability to drill down, investigate, and subsequently fully remediate or effectively mitigate a cybersecurity incident affecting any or all of the organization is essential.

## 1.3 Typographical Conventions

The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

**Table 1.1** Typographical Conventions

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	filenames and pathnames, references to documents that are not hyperlinks, new terms, and placeholders	For detailed definitions of terms, see the <i>NCCoE Glossary</i> .
<b>Bold</b>	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose <b>File &gt; Edit</b> .
Monospace	command-line input, on-screen computer output, sample code examples, status codes	<code>mkdir</code>

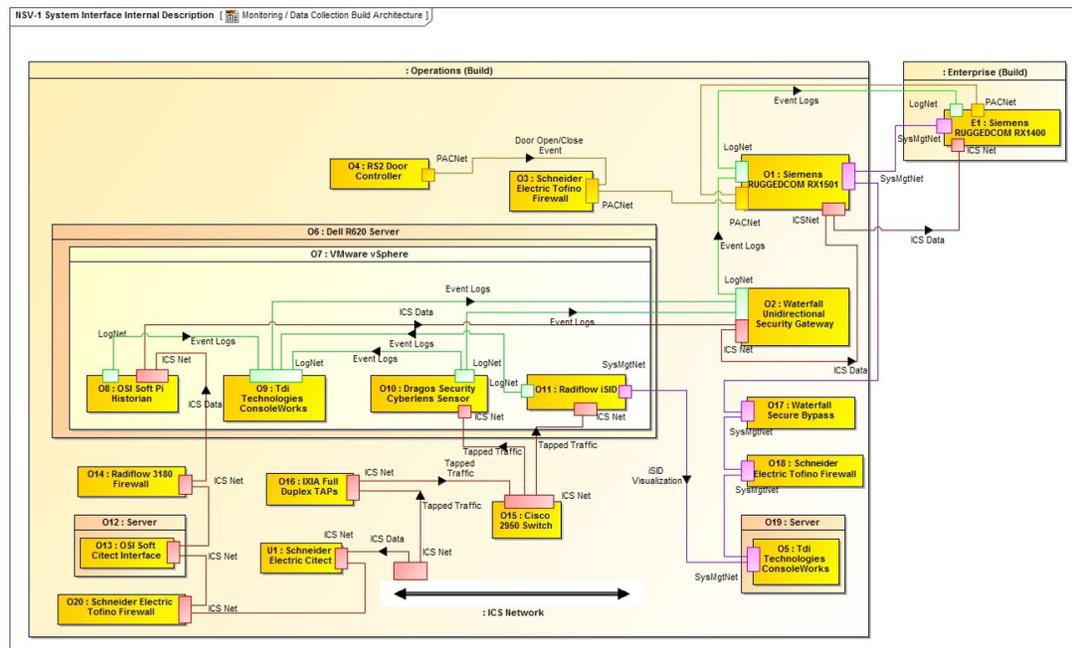
**Table 1.1** Typographical Conventions

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<b>Monospace Bold</b>	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<code>service sshd start</code>
blue text	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST's National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence are available at <a href="http://nccoe.nist.gov">http://nccoe.nist.gov</a>

72 **1.4** Logical Architecture Summary

73 NIST Special Publication 1800-7B (SP1800-7B) describes an example solution consisting of a  
 74 monitoring / data collection component, which is deployed to operations facilities such as  
 75 substations and generating plants, and a data aggregation / analysis component that is  
 76 deployed as a single service for the enterprise. Data is collected from the ICS network by the  
 77 monitoring / data collection component, and sent to the data aggregation / analysis  
 78 component. SP1800-7B also presents an architecture for building and instance of the example  
 79 solution using commercial products. That architecture is depicted in the [Figure 1.1](#) and  
 80 [Figure 1.2](#) below.

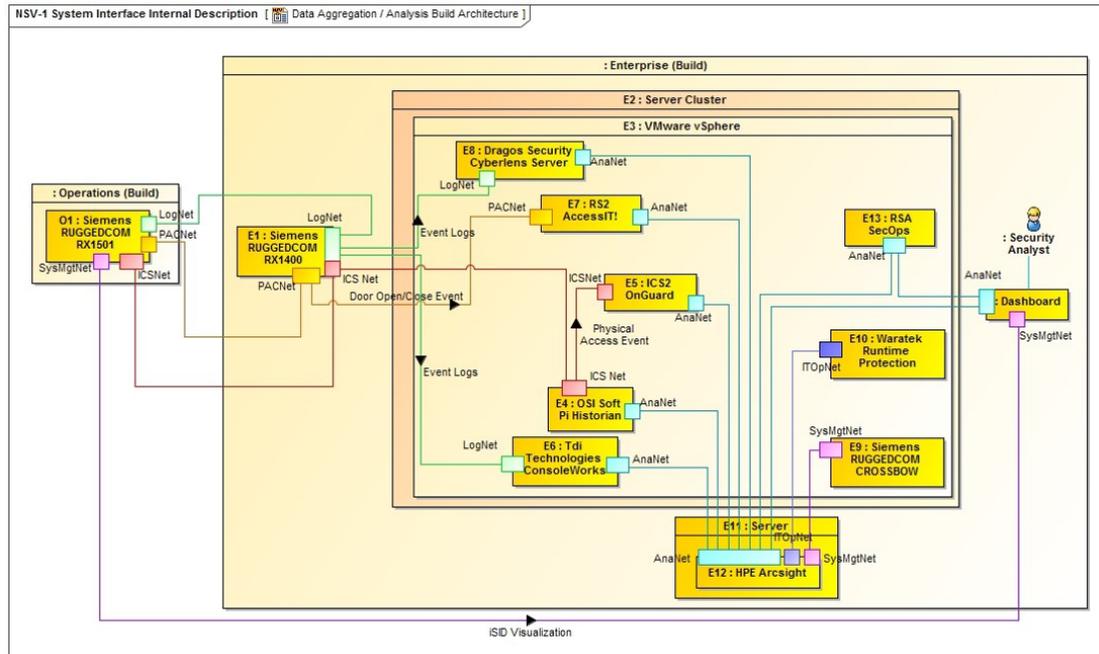
81 **Figure 1.1** Monitoring and Data Collection Lab Build Architecture



82

83

Figure 1.2 Data Aggregation and Analysis Lab Build Architecture



84

85

86

87

This practice guide provides detailed instructions on installing, configuring, and integrating the products used to build an instance of the example solution. The role of each product in the example solution is described in SP1800-7B Section 4, Architecture.

## 88 1.5 Wiring Diagrams

89

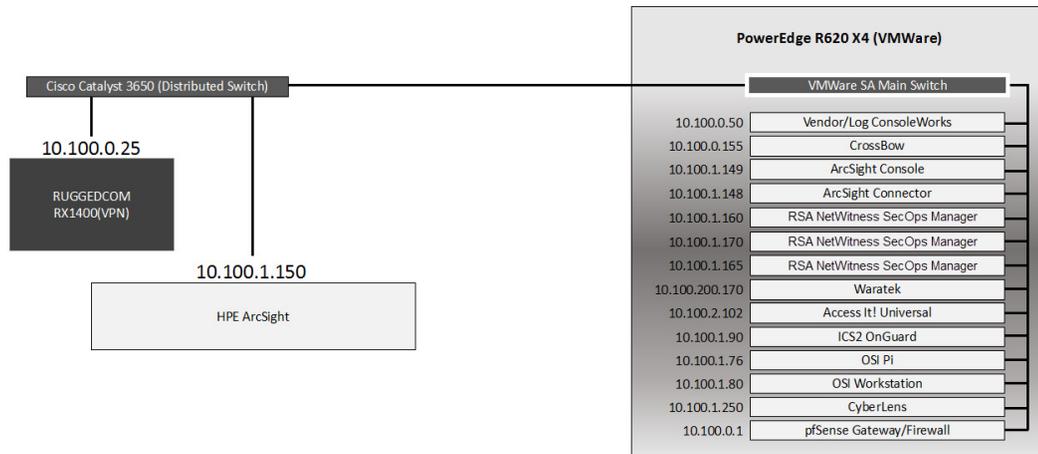
90

91

The architecture diagrams in the previous section present the logical connections needed among the products used to build an instance of the example solution. This section describes the physical wiring that implements those logical connections.

92

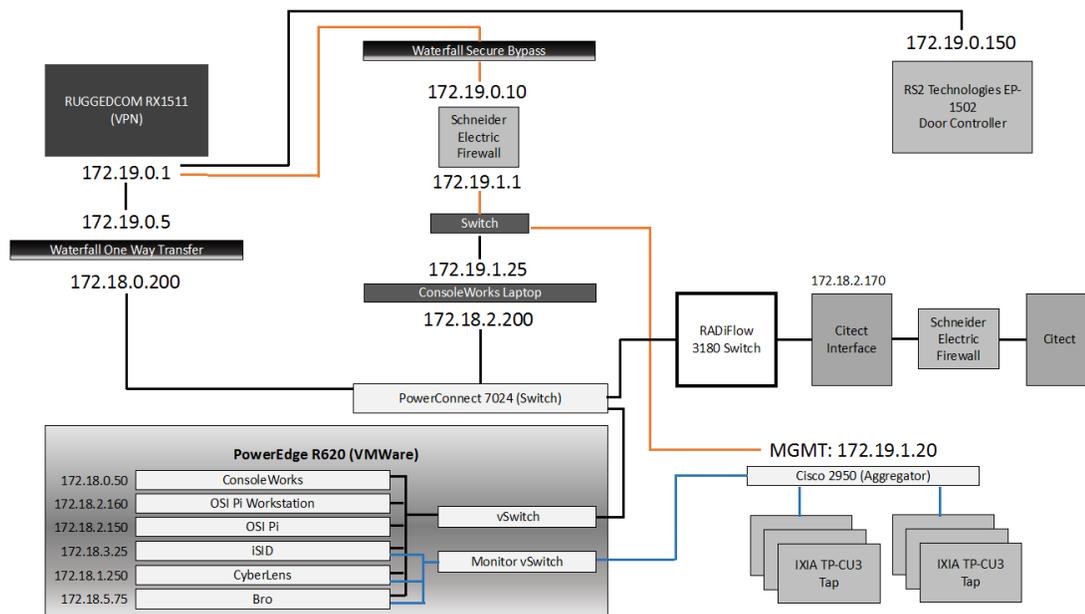
Figure 1.3 Enterprise Lab Wiring Diagram



93

94

Figure 1.4 Cogeneration Facility Lab Network Diagram



95

## 2 Product Installation Guides

2	2.1	Cisco 2950 (O15).....	8
3	2.2	Dragos Security CyberLens (E8, O10).....	11
4	2.3	HPE ArcSight (E12).....	13
5	2.4	ICS2 OnGuard (E5).....	18
6	2.5	IXIA Full-Duplex Tap (O16) .....	22
7	2.6	OSIsoft Pi Historian (E4, O8) .....	23
8	2.7	OSIsoft Citect Interface (O13).....	29
9	2.8	RS2 Technologies Access It! Universal.NET(E7).....	34
10	2.9	RS2 Technologies Door Controller (O4).....	36
11	2.10	Radiflow 3180 (O14) .....	40
12	2.11	Radiflow iSID (O11).....	41
13	2.12	RSA Archer Security Operations Management (E13).....	42
14	2.13	Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O3, O18, O20) .....	55
15	2.14	Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW (E9).....	63
16	2.15	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400 (E1) .....	82
17	2.16	Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1).....	85
18	2.17	TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (E6, O5, O9).....	85
19	2.18	Waterfall Technologies Unidirectional Security Gateway (O2).....	96
20	2.19	Waterfall Secure Bypass (O17).....	100
21	2.20	Waratek Runtime Application Protection (E10).....	101
22	2.21	ArcSight Connector Guides.....	102

23 This section of the practice guide contains detailed instructions for installing and configuring all  
24 of the products used to build an instance of the example solution. Product installation  
25 information is organized alphabetically by vendor with one section for each instance of the  
26 product. The section heading includes the unique product instance identifier used in the  
27 example solution architecture diagrams. Those identifiers have the form 'Ln' where L is a letter  
28 and n is a number. Three different letters are used in the example solution architecture  
29 diagrams:

- 30 ■ **En** identifies a product instance installed in the Enterprise portion of the build constructed  
31 in the NCCoE energy sector lab. For example, **E1** is the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400  
32 installed in the NCCoE lab.
- 33 ■ **On** identifies a product instance installed in the Operations portion of the build constructed  
34 in the build partner's cogeneration facility. For example, **O1** is the Siemens RUGGEDCOM  
35 RX1501 installed in the build partner's cogeneration facility.
- 36 ■ **Un** identifies a product instance that is an existing part of the build partner's cogeneration  
37 facility. For example, **U1** is the Citect SCADA controller that is part of the build partner's  
38 cogeneration facility control system.

39 If the build contains multiple instances of the same product installed in nominally the same  
40 way, the full installation instructions are presented for one instance. Only the differences in  
41 installation and configuration are presented for the additional instances. For example, the build  
42 includes three instances of TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (O5, O9, E6). Full installation  
43 instructions are provided for the E9 instance of TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks. The  
44 instructions provided for the O5 and O9 instances describe only the differences between those  
45 instances and the E6 instance.

## 46 2.1 Cisco 2950 (O15)

47 The Cisco 2950 switch is used to aggregate the IXIA network taps (O16). The configuration file is  
48 presented in the following subsection.

### 49 2.1.1 Cisco 2950 (O15) Installation Guide

```
50 Using 1904 out of 32768 bytes
51 !
52 version 12.1
53 no service pad
54 service timestamps debug uptime
55 service timestamps log uptime
56 no service password-encryption
57 !
58 hostname aggregator
59 !
60 aaa new-model
61 enable secret 5 $1(s*tC$RHcpvnJts/adF.ONLSK32.
62 enable password Clsc0
63 !
```

```
64     username admin privilege 15 secret 5 $1*.1Gz$nHZ.CVIlq28oMB46m2X8k/
65     ip subnet-zero
66     !
67     ip domain-name lab-mgmt
68     ip ssh time-out 120
69     ip ssh authentication-retries 3
70     ip ssh version 2
71     !
72     spanning-tree mode pvst
73     no spanning-tree optimize bpdu transmission
74     spanning-tree extend system-id
75     !
76     !
77     !
78     !
79     interface FastEthernet0/1
80     no keepalive
81     speed 100
82     !
83     interface FastEthernet0/2
84     no keepalive
85     speed 100
86     !
87     interface FastEthernet0/3
88     no keepalive
89     !
90     interface FastEthernet0/4
91     no keepalive
92     !
93     interface FastEthernet0/5
94     no keepalive
95     !
96     interface FastEthernet0/6
97     no keepalive
98     !
99     interface FastEthernet0/7
100    no keepalive
101    !
102    interface FastEthernet0/8
103    no keepalive
104    !
105    interface FastEthernet0/9
106    no keepalive
```

```
107      !
108      interface FastEthernet0/10
109      no keepalive
110      !
111      interface FastEthernet0/11
112      no keepalive
113      !
114      interface FastEthernet0/12
115      no keepalive
116      !
117      interface FastEthernet0/13
118      !
119      interface FastEthernet0/14
120      !
121      interface FastEthernet0/15
122      !
123      interface FastEthernet0/16
124      !
125      interface FastEthernet0/17
126      !
127      interface FastEthernet0/18
128      !
129      interface FastEthernet0/19
130      !
131      interface FastEthernet0/20
132      switchport mode trunk
133      !
134      interface FastEthernet0/21
135      !
136      interface FastEthernet0/22
137      !
138      interface FastEthernet0/23
139      !
140      interface FastEthernet0/24
141      switchport access vlan 1000
142      switchport mode access
143      !
144      interface FastEthernet0/25
145      !
146      interface FastEthernet0/26
147      !
148      interface Vlan1
149      no ip address
```

```
150     no ip route-cache
151     shutdown
152     !
153     interface Vlan1000
154     ip address 172.19.1.20 255.255.254.0
155     no ip route-cache
156     !
157     ip http server
158     !
159     line con 0
160     line vty 0 4
161     password -1pqla,zMXKSOW)@
162     transport input ssh
163     line vty 5 15
164     password -1pqla,zMXKSOW)@
165     transport input ssh
166     !
167     !
168     !
169     monitor session 1 source interface Fa0/1 - 12 rx
170     monitor session 1 destination interface Fa0/23
171     end
```

## 172 **2.2 Dragos Security CyberLens (E8, O10)**

173 Dragos Security CyberLens software utilizes sensors placed within critical networks to identify  
174 assets and networks, building topologies and alerting on anomalies.

### 175 **2.2.1 Dragos Security CyberLens Server (E8) Environment Setup**

176 The system that was set up to run this application was a fully updated (as of 5/20/2016) Ubuntu  
177 14.04LTS Operating System with the following hardware specifications:

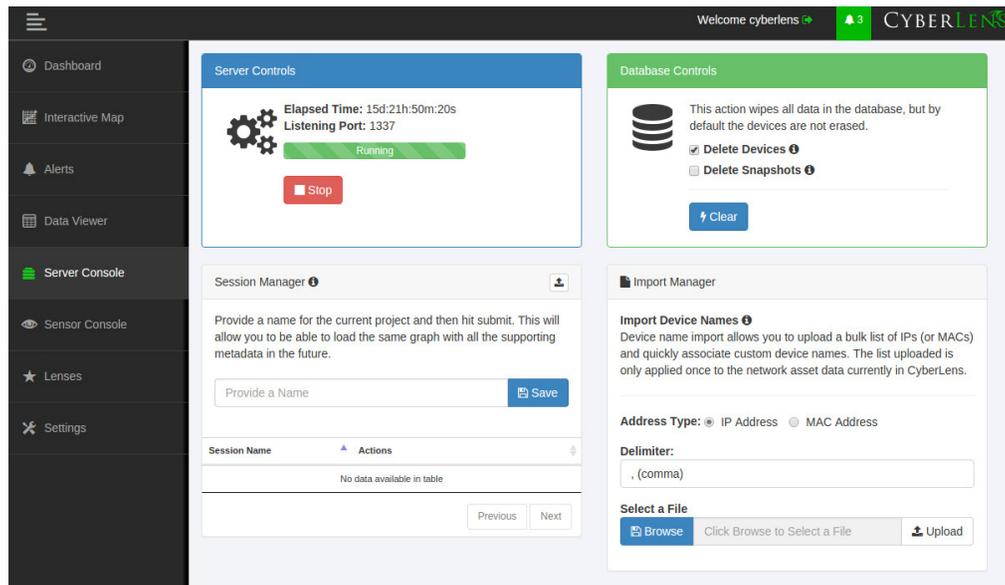
- 178 ■ 4Core Processor
- 179 ■ 8GB RAM
- 180 ■ 40GB HDD
- 181 ■ Other Requirements:
- 182 ■ Sudo or Root privileges
- 183 ■ CyberLens installer (cyberlens-<version>-linux-<architecture>-installer.run)
- 184 ■ Valid CyberLens License file

## 185 2.2.2 Dragos Security CyberLens Server (E8) Installation and Configuration Guide

- 186 1. As Root:
  - 187 a. `./cyberlens-<version>-linux-<architecture>-installer.run`
  - 188 b. Accept the agreement and select **Forward**.
  - 189 c. Select **Forward** for a randomly generated password for root on the MySQL server. You  
190 can also specify your own password if you wish.
  - 191 d. Select **Forward** for a randomly generated password for CyberLens on the MySQL server.  
192 As in the previous step, you can also specify your own password.
  - 193 e. Select **Forward** to accept the installation configuration.
  - 194 f. Choose a **Username**, **Password** (and Confirm Password), and **Email Address** for the  
195 CyberLens login, then select **Forward**.
  - 196 g. Select **Localhost Access Only** (the files will be transferred across the Waterfall Security  
197 Gateway), then select **Forward**.
  - 198 h. Select **Forward**. Do not check the box for Block Outbound Traffic.
  - 199 i. Click the **folder icon** to select the CyberLens license file, then select **Forward**.
  - 200 j. Select **Forward** to begin installation.
- 201 2. Configure:
  - 202 a. Open a browser and navigate to **http://localhost/**
  - 203 b. On the menu bar on the left, select **Server Console**.
  - 204 c. Click the **drop down arrow** next to **Options**, and check the box for **Use Sensor Files**.
  - 205 d. Click **Start** to start the server.
- 206 3. Set up FTP for transferring files across the Waterfall Security Gateway:
  - 207 a. First, set up the user login. We used the username “waterfall”.
  - 208 b. `adduser waterfall`
  - 209 c. Specify password.
  - 210 d. Add additional information if desired.
  - 211 e. Type **y** to accept information.
  - 212 f. `apt-get install vsftpd`
  - 213 g. Edit `/etc/vsftpd.conf`
  - 214 h. Ensure `anonymous_enable=NO`
  - 215 i. Ensure `local_enable=YES`
  - 216 j. Set `write_enable=YES`
  - 217 k. `service vsftpd restart`
  - 218 l. `ln -s /var/www/html/cyberlens/lib/file_link/ /home/waterfall/`
- 219 4. Permissions error: When files are copied over, the permissions default to  
220 **waterfall:waterfall**. Use the following steps to change the default to **www-data:www-data**.

- 221 a. `sudo apt-get install in cron`
- 222 b. `sudo vi /etc/in cron.allow`
- 223 i. Add `root` to file, then save and exit.
- 224 c. `sudo in cron` `-u root -e`
- 225 i. Add `/var/www/html/cyberlens/lib/file_link IN_CREATE /bin/chown`
- 226 `-R www-data:www-data /var/www/html/cyberlens/lib/file_link` then
- 227 save and exit.

228 New files created in the directory should now automatically change permissions and be  
229 ingested.



230

### 231 2.2.3 Dragos Security CyberLens Sensor (O10) Installation Guide

232 For Dragos Security CyberLens Sensor, follow the steps in [Section 2.2.1](#) and [Section 2.2.2](#) for  
233 Dragos Security CyberLens Server. There is no need to fix the permissions error.

## 234 2.3 HPE ArcSight (E12)

235 HPE ArcSight is used as a central SIEM (Security Information and Event Management) platform,  
236 collecting alerts from all across the build and aggregating them in one central location.

237 For more information, visit

238 <http://www8.hp.com/us/en/software-solutions/siem-security-information-event-managemen>  
239 [t/](http://www8.hp.com/us/en/software-solutions/siem-security-information-event-managemen).

## 240 2.3.1 HPE ArcSight (E12) Installation Guide

### 241 2.3.1.1 ArcSight ESM Manager Server Environment Setup

242 The following configuration matched requirements for the product relative to the use in the  
243 Situational Awareness Use Case.

- 244 1. The base Operating System used is Centos 7. The following partition scheme was used for  
245 the install.

246

**Table 2.1 Centos Partitioning Scheme for ArcSight ESM Manager Server**

Name	Size	Type
/	50GB	ext4
/boot	1GB	ext4
/home	22GB	ext4
/tmp	40GB	tmpfs
/opt	2126GB	ext4 <sup>a</sup>

a. It is recommended to use XFS for /opt in lieu of ext4.

247

2. Ensure /tmp is larger than 3GB, otherwise ESM will fail to install

248

3. Ensure the installation of X Windows and 'compatibility libraries' are installed as well; ESM requires them.

249

250

4. Modification of user process limit may be required to ensure efficient thread usage

251

- a. If you do not already have a file /etc/security/limits.d/90-nproc.conf, create it (and the limits.d directory, if necessary).

252

253

- b. If the file already exists, delete all entries in the file.

254

- c. Add the following lines:

255

```
* soft nproc 10240
```

256

```
* hard nproc 10240
```

257

5. Adjust networking items

258

- a. Set **IP address** to 10.100.1.150

259

- b. Set **Gateway** to 10.100.0.1

260

- c. Set **Subnet mask** to 255.255.0.0

261

- d. Add DNS server in **/etc/resolv.conf**

262

```
10.97.74.8
```

263

- e. Add hostname in **/etc/hosts** as follows (or add to DNS):

264

```
10.100.1.150 arcsight.es-sa-b1.test arcsight
```

265

- f. Set hostname in **/etc/sysconfig/network**

- 266 g. Set **ONBOOT** to **yes** in **/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0**
- 267 6. Ensure ports **8443, 9443, 9000** are open on server firewall (e.g. check via iptables -S or
- 268 iptables -L -n) If needed add the following (as root). Adjust 0.0.0.0/0 statements as needed.
- 269 iptables -I INPUT -p tcp --dport 8443 -s 0.0.0.0/0 -j ACCEPT
- 270 iptables -I INPUT -p tcp --dport 9443 -s 0.0.0.0/0 -j ACCEPT
- 271 iptables -I INPUT -p tcp --dport 9000 -s 0.0.0.0/0 -j ACCEPT
- 272 If using a SuperConnector/Forwarder (e.g. to RSA Archer) add the following (adjust for UDP
- 273 or TCP as needed):
- 274 iptables -I OUTPUT -p tcp -d 0.0.0.0/0 --dport 514 -j ACCEPT
- 275 7. Save the rules:
- 276 /sbin/service iptables save
- 277 8. Set Selinux to **permissive mode** (may set back to enforcing mode upon completion of
- 278 installation)
- 279 9. adduser arcsight
- 280 10. mkdir /opt/arcsight/
- 281 11. chown arcsight:arcsight /opt/arcsight/
- 282 12. Modify files to imitate RHEL 6.5 (For CentOS and newer Redhat versions)
- 283 a. Edit /etc/system-release
- 284 CentOS release 6.5 (Final)
- 285 b. Edit /etc/system-release-cpe
- 286 cpe:/o:centos:linux:6:GA
- 287 13. Ensure the time zone (tzdata) package is version 2014F or later. To install, use:
- 288 rpm -Uvh tzdata
- 289 or
- 290 yum update
- 291 14. Reboot

### 292 2.3.2 ArcSight ESM Manager Server Operating System Installation

- 293 1. Copy the ESM installation tar file (don't untar) to:
- 294 /home/arcsight/Desktop/ArcSight (create folder if it does not exist).
- 295 2. Copy the ESM zipped license file (don't unzip) into the folder from the previous step.
- 296 3. cd /home/arcsight/Desktop/ArcSight (su arcsight if not currently arcsight
- 297 user).
- 298 4. chown arcsight:arcsight <ESM Install File>
- 299 5. tar xvf <ESM Install File>

300 6. `./ArcSightESMSuite.bin -i console`

301 *Note: Stop xwindows first if doing the installation with the -i console switch, this switch runs the*  
302 *installation from the command line rather than a GUI. The command line install eases*  
303 *troubleshooting.*

304 7. As user “arcsight” run the configuration wizard:

305 `/opt/arcsight/manager/bin/arcsight firstbootsetup -boxster -soft -i`  
306 `console`

307 8. Settings in the wizard:

- 308 a. CORR-Engine (DB) password = \_\_\_\_\_
- 309 b. System Storage Size = 301GB
- 310 c. Event Storage Size = 361GB
- 311 d. Online Event Archive Size = 200GB (~1/6 minus 10% of total space...system reserves 10%
- 312 of space)
- 313 e. Retention Period (days) = 30
- 314 f. Manager host name = arcsight.es-sa-b1.test
- 315 g. Administrator user name = admin
- 316 h. Administrator password = \_\_\_\_\_

317 9. As user “root” run the following to install the ArcSight services onto the operating system:

318 10. Open a browser and navigate to ArcSight Command Center  
319 (<https://arcsight.es-sa-b1.test:8443>). Set the manager java heap to 12288 (or another value  
320 based on available RAM).

### 321 2.3.3 ArcSight Console Environment Setup

322 1. Microsoft Windows 7 64-bit with the following settings:

- 323 a. 1 vCPU
- 324 b. 4GB ram
- 325 c. 150GB storage

326 2. The guest OS IP information was set as follows:

- 327 a. IP address: 10.100.1.149
- 328 b. Gateway: 10.100.0.1?
- 329 c. Subnet mask: 255.255.0.0?
- 330 d. DNS: 10.97.74.8, 8.8.8.8, 8.8.4.4

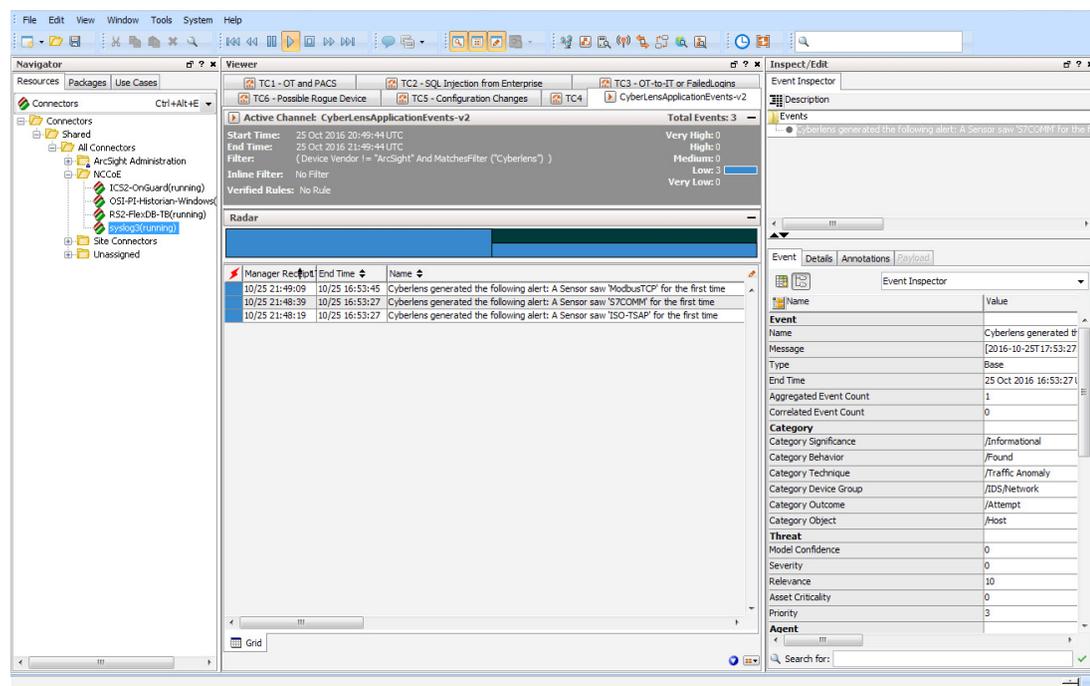
331 3. Installed VM Tools on guest OS to resolve missing mouse cursor issue.

332 4. Created OS user: arcsight, with password: \_\_\_\_\_

### 333 2.3.4 ArcSight Console Installation

- 334 1. Download ArcSight Console installation file (for Windows).
- 335 2. Run ArcSight Console installation file?
- 336 3. Add ArcSight Manager IP address to Windows OS host file (or add to DNS) at:
  - 337 a. C:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts (edit this file as Administrator) by adding the
  - 338 following line:
 

```
339 10.100.1.150 arcsight.es-sa-b1.test arcsight
```
- 340 4. Open ArcSight Console
- 341 5. Login to ArcSight Console with **user: arcsight, password: \_\_\_\_\_**, and in the **Manager** drop
- 342 down selection box type or select the server name: `arcsight.es-sa-b1.test`
- 343 6. At certificate related popup, click **Accept**.



#### 345 2.3.4.1 ArcSight Connector Server Preparation

- 346 1. CentOS 7 host with the following VM settings:
  - 347 a. 1vCPU
  - 348 b. 12 GB ram
  - 349 c. 140 GB provisioned
- 350 2. Install CentOS using the following options:
  - 351 a. Server with GUI (Xwindows libraries are required in accordance with ArcSight guide
  - 352 b. File and Storage (in case file-based log collection will be used)

- 353 c. Compatibility libraries
- 354 d. Development tools
- 355 3. Set guest hostname as follows: `arconn.es-sa-bl.test`
- 356 4. Install VM Tools on guest OS
- 357 5. Set guest OS IP information as follows:
  - 358 a. IP address: `10.100.1.148`
  - 359 b. Gateway: `10.100.0.1`
  - 360 c. Subnet mask: `255.255.0.0`
  - 361 d. DNS: `10.97.74.8, 8.8.8.8`
- 362 6. Add hostnames in `/etc/hosts` as follows (or add to DNS):
  - 363 a. `10.100.1.148 arconn.es-sa-bl.test arconn`
  - 364 b. `10.100.1.150 arcsight.es-sa-bl.test arcsight`
- 365 7. `adduser arcsight`
- 366 8. `mkdir /opt/arcsight/`
- 367 9. `chown -r arcsight:arcsight /opt/arcsight/`
- 368 10. As user `arcsight`, `mkdir /opt/arsight/connectors/syslog1`
- 369 11. Ensure UDP port 514 is open inbound on server firewall and also that connector is allowed  
370 outbound on port 8443. For example:
  - 371 a. as root:

```
372 iptables -I INPUT -p udp --dport 514 -s 0.0.0.0/0 -j ACCEPT
```

```
373 iptables -I OUTPUT -p tcp -d 0.0.0.0/0 --dport 8443 -j ACCEPT
```
  - 374 b. Save the rules:

```
375 /sbin/service iptables save
```
- 376 12. Disable firewall:
  - 377 a. `systemctl disable firewall`
  - 378 b. `systemctl mask firewalld expressions`
- 379 13. Disable OS native syslog service
  - 380 a. `systemctl disable rsyslog.service`

## 381 2.4 ICS<sup>2</sup> OnGuard (E5)

382 ICS2 OnGuard is used for behavioral analysis based on an extended model of historical historian  
383 information. Utilizing this information, OnGuard alerts to changes in historian activity based on  
384 deviations to original model.

### 385 2.4.1 Environment Setup

386 The following configuration matched requirements for the product relative to the use in the  
387 Situational Awareness build:

- 388 ■ Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2
- 389 ■ VM with CPU Quad Core 2.199GHz
- 390 ■ VM with 16384MB of memory
- 391 ■ Virtual Hard disk
- 392 ■ OSisoft PI OLE DB Driver
- 393 ■ ICS2\_Installation\_<version>.zip

## 394 2.4.2 Install Vendor Software

- 395 1. Open and extract the provided **ICS2\_Installation\_<version>.zip** file.
- 396 2. Open the **ICS2 Installation folder** created by extracting the .zip file.
- 397 3. Right-click the **ServerDeploy.PS1** file and select **Run with PowerShell**.
- 398 4. Press **Y** to change the execution policy.
- 399 5. Once the directory structure has been created, press **Enter** for the default PostgreSQL
- 400 directory.

```

Administrator: Windows PowerShell

Execution Policy Change
The execution policy helps protect you from scripts that you do not trust. Changing the execution policy might
you to the security risks described in the about_Execution_Policies help topic at
http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=135170. Do you want to change the execution policy?
[Y] Yes [N] No [S] Suspend [?] Help (default is "Y"): y
Creating directory structure...

Directory: C:\

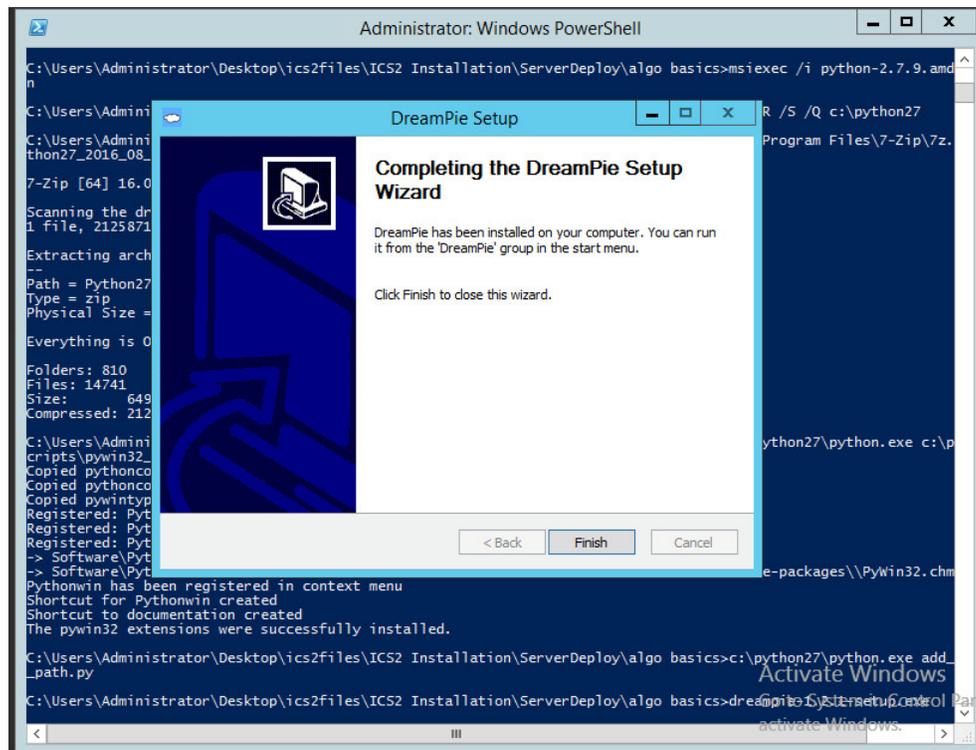
Mode                LastWriteTime         Length Name
----                -
d-----          11/10/2016   2:11 PM          ICS2

Directory: C:\ICS2

Mode                LastWriteTime         Length Name
----                -
d-----          11/10/2016   2:11 PM          Backups
d-----          11/10/2016   2:11 PM          Spider
d-----          11/10/2016   2:11 PM          Versions
d-----          11/10/2016   2:11 PM          Maintenance
d-----          11/10/2016   2:11 PM          Data
Enter PosgreSQL Data directory: (Full path) (default is [c:\ICS2\Data\PostgreSQL]):
  
```

- 401
- 402 6. Press **Enter** for the default SQLServer directory.
- 403 a. The installer will install multiple products, including Google Chrome and Notepad++.
- 404 7. When the DreamPie installer pops up, click **Next**.
- 405 8. Select **Install for anyone using this computer** and click **Next**.

- 406 9. Keep the default destination folder and click **Install**.
- 407 10. When the installation is complete, click **Next**.
- 408 11. Close the installer by clicking **Finish**.



- 409
- 410 12. Once completed, PowerShell will close.

### 411 2.4.3 Install OnGuard System

- 412 1. Open the **Deploy OnGuard <version>** folder.
- 413 2. Double-click the **DeployOnGuard** Windows Batch File.
- 414 3. Verify that **ApplicationSettings.config**, **ConnectionStrings.config**, and **SpiderSettings.json**
- 415 have been created.
- 416 a. If necessary, change the historian IP address (OSIsoft PI) in **SpiderSettings.json** to the
- 417 appropriate IP address (the key is **DataProviders.SqlConfig.ConnectionString**).

418

Figure 2.1 OSisoft PI Historian Connection

```

1 {
2   "IoList": {
3     "Db": {
4       "ConnectionString": "Server=localhost;Port=5432;User Id=postgres;Password=guard2$;Database=RawData",
5       "DatabaseVendor": "PostgreSQL"
6     }
7   },
8   "DataProviders": {
9     "SqlConfig": {
10      "ConnectionString": "Provider=PIOLEDB; Data Source=10.100.1.76; InitialCatalog=piarchive; UserId=piarc
11      "DataQuery": "SELECT time, pointid as id, value FROM [piarchive].[picomp2] as b inner join (select t
12      "FirstTagTime": "2016-11-07 12:39:00",
13      "InputTimeZone": "Eastern Standard Time",
14      "PollingInterval": "00:00:10",
15      "TimestampColumn": "time",
16      "SqlCommunicatorType": "PiOle"
17    },
18    "Normalizer": "IoList",
19    "Diluter": "TimeStampComparison"
20  },
21  "DataExporters": {
22    "Console": {
23      "OutputFormat": "{0}, {1}, {2}"
24    },
25    "PostgreSQL": {
26      "ConnectionString": "Server=localhost;Port=5432;User Id=postgres;Password=guard2$;Database=RawData;"
27      "TableName": "TagValues"
28    },
29  },
30  "Status": {
31    "ReportFrequency": "00:00:20"
32  }
33 }

```

419

- b. In ApplicationSettings.config, verify that settings LogAlarmsToSyslog is True, SyslogTargetHost is set to the syslog server IP (10.100.0.50), and that the SyslogTargetPort is set to 514 (or whatever port syslog is listening on).

420

421

422

423

Figure 2.2 ApplicationSettings Syslog Configuration

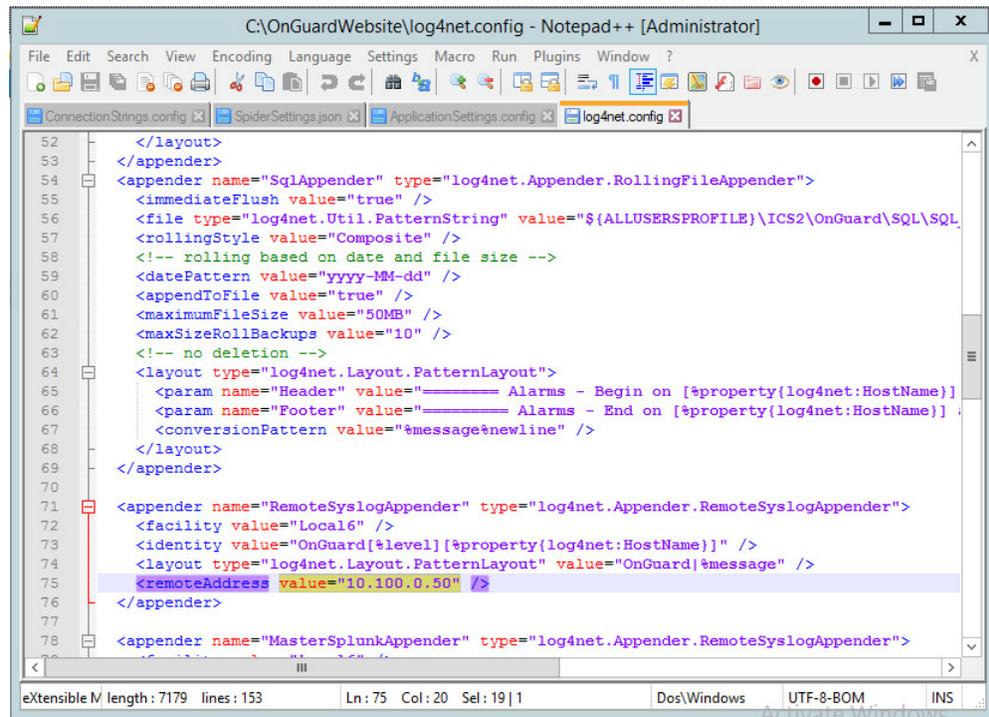
```

8 <setting name="ApplicationName" serializeAs="String">
9   <value>OnGuard</value>
10 </setting>
11 <setting name="RawDatabaseVendor" serializeAs="String">
12   <value>PostgreSQL</value>
13 </setting>
14 <setting name="AlarmsLink" serializeAs="String">
15   <value>http://localhost/#/alarms/id/{0}</value>
16 </setting>
17 <setting name="OnGuardHost" serializeAs="String">
18   <value>localhost</value>
19 </setting>
20 <setting name="ChangeSet" serializeAs="String">
21   <value>delb0filef1b1</value>
22 </setting>
23 <setting name="AccessTokenExpireTimeSpan" serializeAs="String">
24   <value>336.00:00:00</value>
25 </setting>
26 <setting name="LogAlarmsToSyslog" serializeAs="String">
27   <value>True</value>
28 </setting>
29 <setting name="SyslogTargetHost" serializeAs="String">
30   <value>10.100.0.50</value>
31 </setting>
32 <setting name="SyslogTargetPort" serializeAs="String">
33   <value>514</value>
34 </setting>
35 </Ics2.Frontend.Web.Properties.Settings>

```

424

- 425 c. Open **C:\OnGuardWebsite\log4net.config** in Notepad++ and verify that the appender  
 426 **RemoteSyslogAppender** has a **remoteAddress** value of the syslog server IP  
 427 (10.100.0.50).



```

52 </layout>
53 </appender>
54 <appender name="SqlAppender" type="log4net.Appender.RollingFileAppender">
55 <immediateFlush value="true" />
56 <file type="log4net.Util.PatternString" value="{ALLUSERSPROFILE}\ICS2\OnGuard\SQL\SQL
57 <rollingStyle value="Composite" />
58 <!-- rolling based on date and file size -->
59 <datePattern value="yyyy-MM-dd" />
60 <appendToFile value="true" />
61 <maximumFileSize value="50MB" />
62 <maxSizeRollBackups value="10" />
63 <!-- no deletion -->
64 <layout type="log4net.Layout.PatternLayout">
65 <param name="Header" value="===== Alarms - Begin on [{*property{log4net:HostName}}]
66 <param name="Footer" value="===== Alarms - End on [{*property{log4net:HostName}}]
67 <conversionPattern value="%message%newline" />
68 </layout>
69 </appender>
70
71 <appender name="RemoteSyslogAppender" type="log4net.Appender.RemoteSyslogAppender">
72 <facility value="Local6" />
73 <identity value="OnGuard[{*level}] [{*property{log4net:HostName}}" />
74 <layout type="log4net.Layout.PatternLayout" value="OnGuard|*message" />
75 <remoteAddress value="10.100.0.50" />
76 </appender>
77
78 <appender name="MasterSplunkAppender" type="log4net.Appender.RemoteSyslogAppender">

```

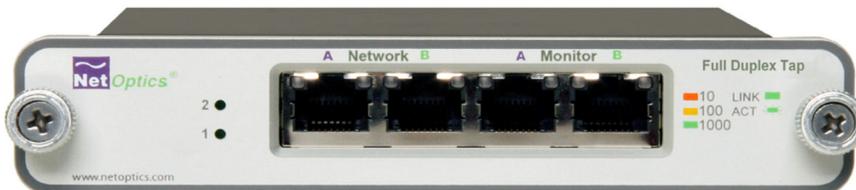
428

- 429 4. Close Notepad++ and open Google Chrome to **http://localhost/** for the login screen.

## 430 2.5 IXIA Full-Duplex Tap (O16)

431 The following is the installation for the IXIA TP-CU3 taps used in the lab.

432 **Figure 2.3 IXIA TP-CU3 Network Tap**



433

- 434 1. Mount the tap to the rack.
- 435 2. Utilize the supplied power cord to connect an outlet to the power jacks located on the rear  
 436 of the tap.
- 437 3. To connect to the network:
- 438 a. Connect **Network Port A** to the Ethernet cable coming in from the control system  
 439 network.

- 440 b. Connect **Network Port B** to an Ethernet cable going out to the destination port of the
- 441 original Ethernet cable used in the previous step.
- 442 c. Verify that the link LEDs illuminate.
- 443 d. Connect **Monitor Port A** to the monitoring port of the device used to monitor the
- 444 ingress of **Network Port A**.
- 445 e. Connect **Monitor Port B** to the monitoring port of the device used to monitor the
- 446 ingress of **Network Port B**.
- 447 4. The tap installation and setup is complete.

## 448 2.6 OSIssoft Pi Historian (E4, O8)

449 OSIssoft PI Historian is the primary historian type utilized in the build. The two instances serve as  
450 the main mirror of the control system's historian, as well as a secondary historian located in the  
451 enterprise network. The secondary historian feeds the anomaly detection platform in the  
452 enterprise network.

453 For further information, visit <http://www.osisoft.com/federal/>.

### 454 2.6.1 OSIssoft Pi Historian (E4) Installation Guide

455 The following is the installation and configuration for the OSIssoft Pi Historian located within the  
456 Enterprise network.

#### 457 2.6.1.1 Environment Setup

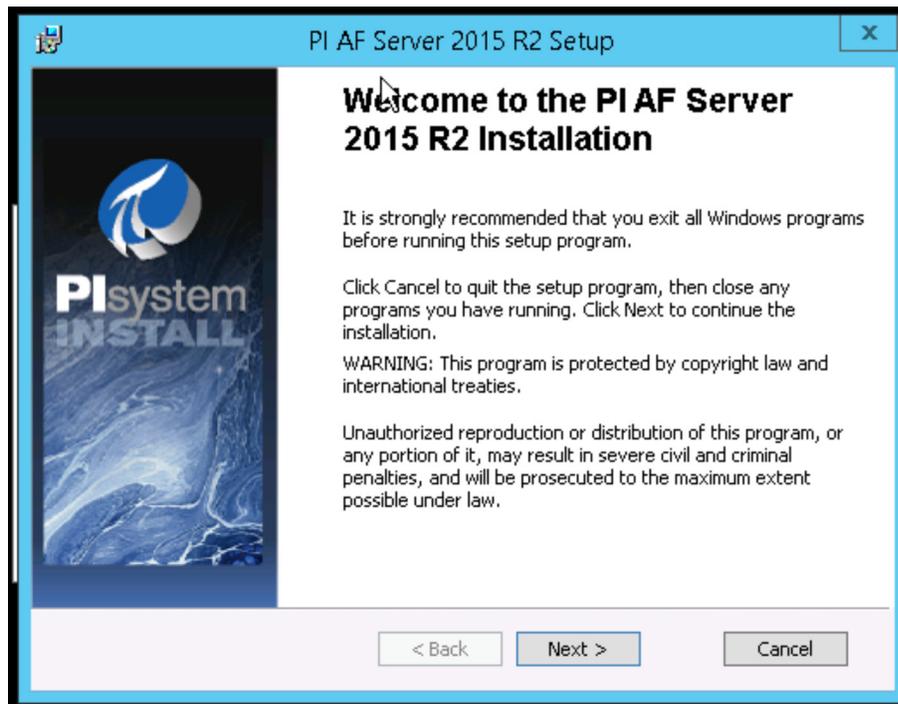
- 458 ■ Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2
- 459 ■ 2.2Ghz Processor
- 460 ■ 8GB RAM
- 461 ■ 250GB storage
- 462 ■ SQL Server Express

#### 463 2.6.1.2 Installation Instructions

- 464 1. Create admin user in windows: **Piadmin**
- 465 2. Create admin user in windows: **Afadmin**
- 466 3. Create standard user in windows: **Piuser**
- 467 4. Create new folder **C:\Download**
- 468 5. Install SQL Server 2014.
  - 469 a. Create instance:
    - 470 i. Name: **PIAFSQL**
    - 471 ii. Instance ID: **PIAF**

- 472 b. SQL Server Configuration Manager
- 473 i. Enable SWL Server Network Configuration -> Protocols for PIAFSQL -> {Shared
- 474 Memory, Named Pipes, TCP/IP}
- 475 6. Copy **PI-AF-Server\_2015-R2\_** to **C:\Download** and self-extract setup (run as administrator).
- 476 a. A reboot will be required.
- 477 b. After reboot, the Microsoft Visual C++ 2013 install window will appear.

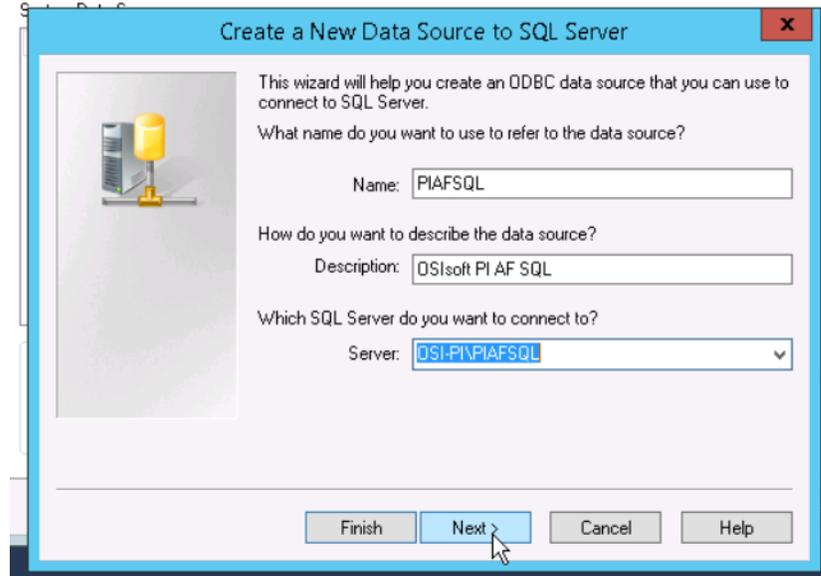
478 **Figure 2.4 PI AF Server 2015 R2 Setup**



- 479
- 480 c. On the “Welcome to PI AF Server 2015 R2 Installation” screen:
- 481 i. Click **Next**.
- 482 ii. Click **Next** to select default install directory.
- 483 iii. Click **Next** for default features.
- 484 iv. Select **Virtual User Account**.
- 485 v. Under SQL Server Connection, select **<hostname>\PIAFSQL** and click **Next**.
- 486 vi. Click **Install**.
- 487 7. Open **ODBC Data Sources (64-bit)**.
- 488 a. Under System DSN, click **Add**.
- 489 i. Name: **PIAFSQL**
- 490 ii. Description: **OSIsoft PI AF SQL**
- 491 iii. Server: **<hostname>\PIAFSQL**

492

Figure 2.5 Create New Data Source for SQL



493

494

b. Click **Next**.

495

c. Click **Next**.

496

d. Check the **Change the default database to:** and select **PIFD**.

497

e. Click **Next**.

498

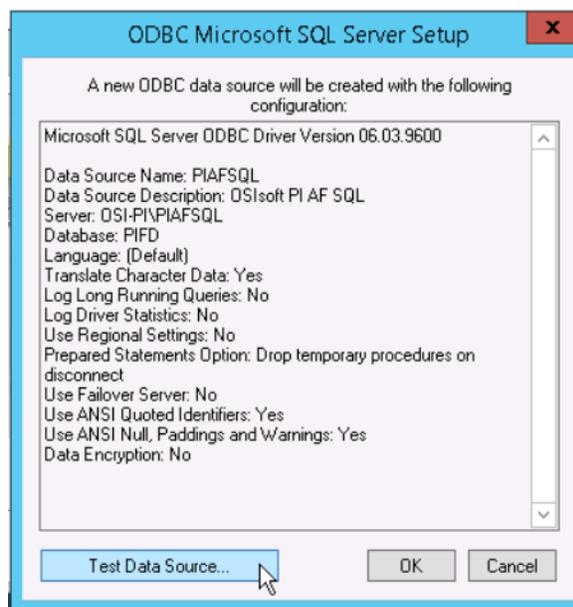
f. Click **Finish**.

499

g. Click **Test Data Source...**

500

Figure 2.6 Testing SQL Setup



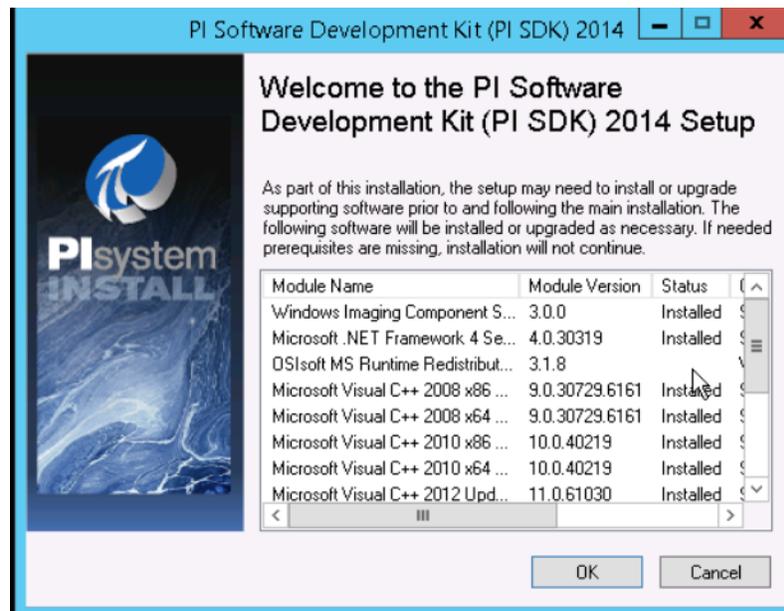
501

502

h. After a successful pass, click **OK** three times to close ODBC Data Sources.

- 503 8. Open Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio (as Administrator).
- 504 a. Ensure the settings are correct and click **Connect**.
- 505 b. In the left tab, select <hostname>\PIAFSQL > **Databases** > **PFID** > **Tables** and ensure
- 506 tables are listed.
- 507 c. Close Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.
- 508 9. Copy **PISDK\_2014\_** and **PISMT\_2015\_R2\_** to **C:\Downloads**.
- 509 10. Copy **PI-AF-Client\_2015-R2\_** to **C:\Download** and run as administrator.
- 510 a. Change the Extraction path to **.\**
- 511 b. When the PI AF Client 2015 R2 install screen starts up, click **OK**.
- 512 c. In the Default Data server input, type **piafsql** and click **Next**.
- 513 d. Click **Next** for the default PIHOME directory.
- 514 e. Wait for the installation to finish and click **Next**.
- 515 f. Select whether to participate in the Customer Experience Improvement and click **Next**.
- 516 g. Click **Next** for default features, then click **Install**.
- 517 h. Verify the Service Status screen shows all services started successfully, and click **Next**.
- 518 i. Click **Close**.
- 519 11. Run **PISDK\_2014\_** as administrator.
- 520 a. Change the Extraction path to **.\**
- 521 b. When the PI Software Development Kit install screen starts up, click **OK**.

522 **Figure 2.7 PI SDK Setup**



- 523
- 524 c. On the screen listing services that will be stopped, click **OK**.

- 525           d. Verify the Service Status screen shows all services started successfully, and click **Next**.
- 526           e. Click **Close**.
- 527       12. Run **PISMT\_2015\_R2\_** as administrator.
- 528           a. Change the Extraction path to **.\**
- 529           b. When the install screen starts up, click **Next** twice.
- 530           c. On User Information, change the **Full Name** field to **Pladmin** and fill in **Organization**.
- 531           d. Click **Next**.
- 532           e. Click **Install**.
- 533           f. Click **Close**.
- 534       13. Run the **MSRuntimes** and **MSRuntimes\_x64** applications to install the proper DLLs.
- 535       14. Run **OSIprerequisites-standalone\_2.0.0.10\_** as administrator.
- 536           a. Click **OK**.
- 537           b. Change Unzip folder to **.\** and select **Unzip**.
- 538           c. When completed, click **Close**.
- 539       15. Run **OSIprerequisites-Patch\_2.1.1\_**
- 540           a. Change Unzip folder to **.\** and select **Unzip**.
- 541           b. When completed, click **Close**.
- 542       16. Reboot your machine.
- 543       17. Create the following folders:
- 544           c. **C:\PI**
- 545           d. **C:\PI\Bin**
- 546           e. **C:\PI\Dat**
- 547           f. **C:\PI\License**
- 548           g. **C:\PI\Queue**
- 549           h. **C:\PI\Archive**
- 550       18. Copy a generated license file into **C:\PI\License** and name **pilicense.dat**.
- 551       19. Copy **PIServer\_2012SP\_x64\_** to **C:\Downloads**.
- 552       20. Run **PIServer\_2012SP\_x64\_** as Administrator.
- 553           a. Change the Unzip folder to **.\** and click **Unzip**.
- 554           b. When the PI Server 2012 SP1 64-bit install screen starts up, click **OK**.
- 555           c. When showing what's installed, click **Close**.
- 556           d. On the welcome screen, click **Next**.
- 557           e. On licensing, click **Browse** and select **C:\PI\License**, then **Next**.
- 558           f. Verify the AF Server is the hostname, then click **Next**.

- 559 g. Ensure **No** is selected for **enabling PI Module Database** and click **Next**.
- 560 h. For PI Server Binaries, click **Browse** and select **C:\PI\Bin**.
- 561 i. For Event Queues, click **Browse** and select **C:\PI\Dat**.
- 562 j. For Archives, click **Browse** and select **C:\PI\Archive**.
- 563 k. Click **Next**.
- 564 l. Click **Next** to start installation.
- 565 m. When complete, click **Close**.
- 566 21. Open **PI System Management Tools**.
  - 567 a. Under Servers on the left, select the **piafsqli server**.
  - 568 b. Close **PI System Management Tools**.
- 569 22. Reboot system.
- 570 23. Copy **C:\PI\Bin\admin\pisrvstart.bat** and **C:\PI\Bin\admin\pisrvstop.bat** to your **Desktop**.
- 571 24. Open **PISDKUtility**.
  - 572 a. Under Tools, select **Add Server**.
    - 573 i. Network Path/FQDN: **<hostname>**
    - 574 ii. Click **OK**.
  - 575 b. Under Default User Name for the new server, type **piadmin**.
  - 576 c. Under Connections, select **Options**.
    - 577 i. Set the Connection timeout to **30 seconds**.
    - 578 ii. For Default Server, select **<hostname>**.
    - 579 iii. Ensure the **Protocol Order** is:
      - 580 **1. PI Trust**
      - 581 **2. Default User**
      - 582 **3. Windows Security**
    - 583 iv. Click **OK**.
  - 584 d. Under Connections, select **Aliases**.
    - 585 i. Click **Add...**
    - 586 ii. Under Alias, type the machine's **IP Address**.
    - 587 iii. Click **OK**.
    - 588 iv. Click **Close**.
  - 589 e. Click **Save**.

## 590 2.6.2 OSisoft Pi Historian (O8) Installation Guide

591 Follow the installation guide for OSisoft Pi Historian in [Section 2.6.1](#).

## 592 2.7 OSIssoft Citect Interface (O13)

593 The OSIssoft Citect Interface creates a connection for the OSIssoft PI Historian to interface with  
594 the SCADA server for aggregating historian data.

### 595 2.7.1 OSIssoft Citect Interface (O13) Installation Guide

- 596 1. Open the **pipc.ini** file located in **C:\Windows** (or the **%windir%** directory).
- 597 2. The file should contain the following info. If the file does not exist, create it and add the  
598 following lines:  
599 `[PIPC]`  
600 `PIHOME=C:\Program Files (x86)\PIPC`
- 601 3. Start the installation executable (**Citect\_#.#.#.#\_exe**).
- 602 4. This will install files in **PIHOME\Interfaces\Citect\**.
- 603 5. Copy the following files from the Citect machine's **Bin** directory into the  
604 **PIHOME\Interfaces\Citect\** directory.
  - 605 a. **CtApi.dll**
  - 606 b. **Ct\_ipc.dll**
  - 607 c. **CtEng32.dll**
  - 608 d. **CtRes32.dll**
  - 609 e. **CtUtil32.dll**
  - 610 f. **CiDebugHelp.dll**
- 611 6. To install the connector as a service, run **PI\_Citect.exe /install /auto /depend tcpip**. Test  
612 the connection between the interface node and the Citect node using the **PI\_CitectTest.exe**  
613 connection tester.
- 614 7. Run the **ICU** and configure a new instance of this interface.
- 615 8. Define digital states.
- 616 9. **Cit\_Bad\_Conn** is an indicator of communication problems with the Citect node.
- 617 10. Build input tags and, if desired, output tags for this interface using the point builder utility  
618 **PI\_Citect\_PointBuilder.exe**. Important point attributes and their purposes are:
 

619 a. Location1 (interface instance ID):	1
620 b. Location2 (input / output parameter):	0 (input)
621 c. Location3 (not used):	0
622 d. Location4 (scan class):	1
623 e. Location5 (not used):	0
624 f. ExDesc (optional, event-driven scans):	-
625 g. InstrumentTag:	[Citect point name]

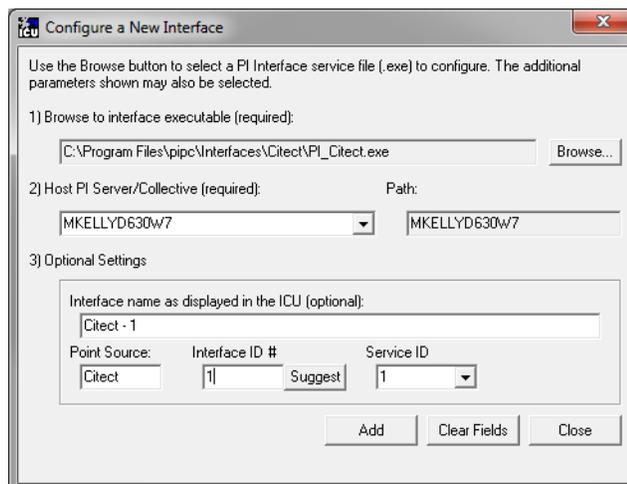
- 626 11. Start the interface interactively and confirm its successful connection to the PI Server  
627 without buffering.
- 628 12. Confirm that the interface collects data successfully.
- 629 13. Stop the interface and configure a buffering application (either Bufserv or PIBufss). When  
630 configuring buffering, use the ICU menu item **Tools > Buffering... > Buffering Settings** to  
631 make a change to the default value (32678) for the Primary and Secondary Memory Buffer  
632 Size (Bytes) to **2000000**. This will optimize the throughput for buffering and is  
633 recommended by OSisoft.
- 634 14. Start the buffering application and the interface. Confirm that the interface works together  
635 with the buffering application by stopping the PI Server.
- 636 15. Configure the interface to run as an automatic service that depends on the PI Update  
637 Manager and PI Network Manager services.
- 638 16. Restart the interface node and confirm that the interface and the buffering application  
639 restart.

## 640 2.7.2 Configuration

641 The PI Interface Configuration Utility provides a graphical user interface for configuring PI  
642 interfaces. If the interface is configured by the PI ICU, the batch file of the interface  
643 (PI\_Citect.bat) will be maintained by the PI ICU and all configuration changes will be kept in that  
644 file and the module database. The procedure below describes the necessary steps for using PI  
645 ICU to configure the PI Citect interface.

- 646 1. From the PI ICU menu, select **Interface**, then **New Windows Interface Instance** from EXE...,  
647 and then **Browse** to the **PI\_Citect.exe** executable file. Then, enter values for **Host PI System**,  
648 **Point Source**, and **Interface ID#**. A window such as the following results:

649 **Figure 2.8 Configure New Interface**

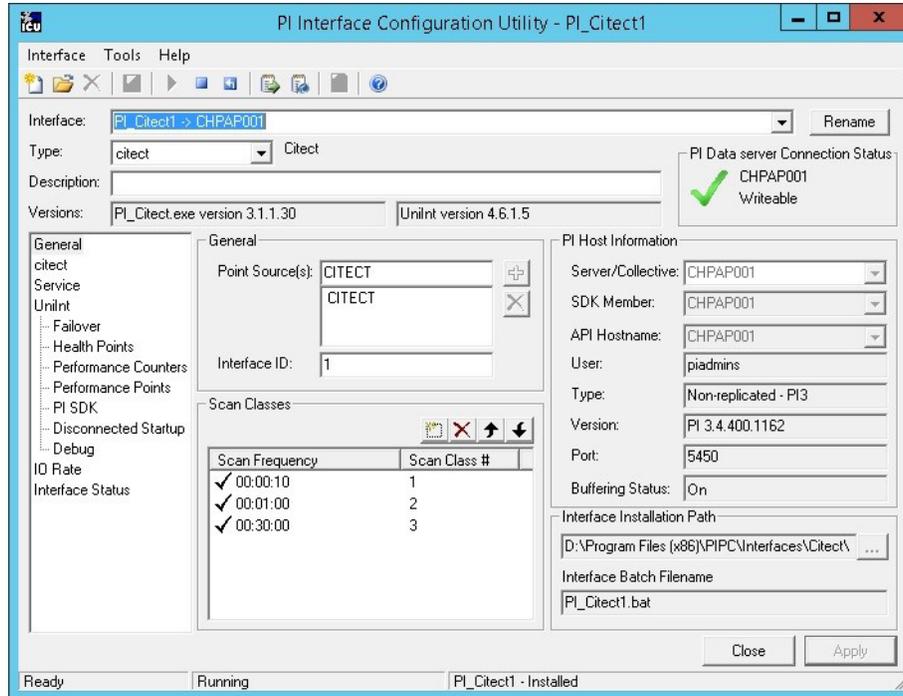


650

- 651 2. **Interface name as displayed in the ICU (optional)** will have PI- pre-pended to this name  
652 and it will be the display name in the services menu.
- 653 3. Click **Add**.

- 654 4. Once the interface is added to PI ICU, near the top of the main PI ICU screen, the interface  
 655 **Type** should be **Citect**. If not, use the drop-down box to change the interface Type to be  
 656 Citect.
- 657 5. Click on **Apply** to enable the PI ICU to manage this instance of the PI Citect interface.

658 **Figure 2.9 ICU - General Configuration**

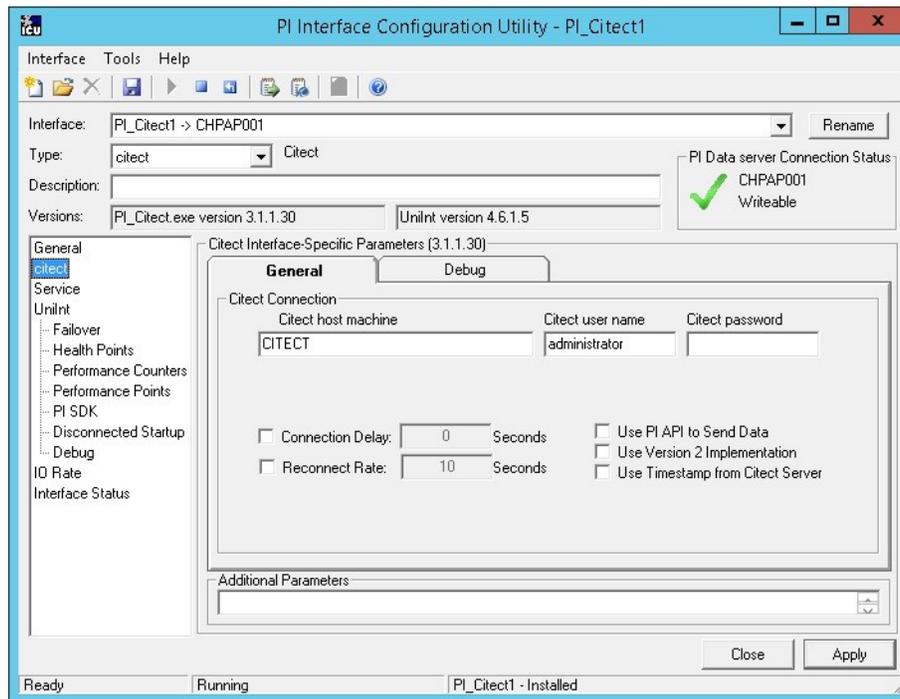


659

- 660 6. Since the startup file of the PI Citect interface is maintained automatically by the PI ICU, use  
 661 the Citect page to configure the startup parameters and do not make changes in the file  
 662 manually.

663

Figure 2.10 ICU - Citect ICU Control



664

665

7. Supply values for the fields in the Citect **General** tab as follows:

666

a. Citect host machine - **CITECT**

667

b. Citect user name - **administrator**

668

c. Citect password - **<enter password here>**

669

d. Connection Delay - **none (unchecked)**

670

e. Reconnect Rate - **none (unchecked)**

671

f. Use PI API data to Send Data - **(unchecked)**

672

g. Use Version 2 Implementation - **(unchecked)**

673

h. Use Timestamp from Citect Server - **(unchecked)**

674

8. Keep the defaults on the Citect **Debug** tab.

675

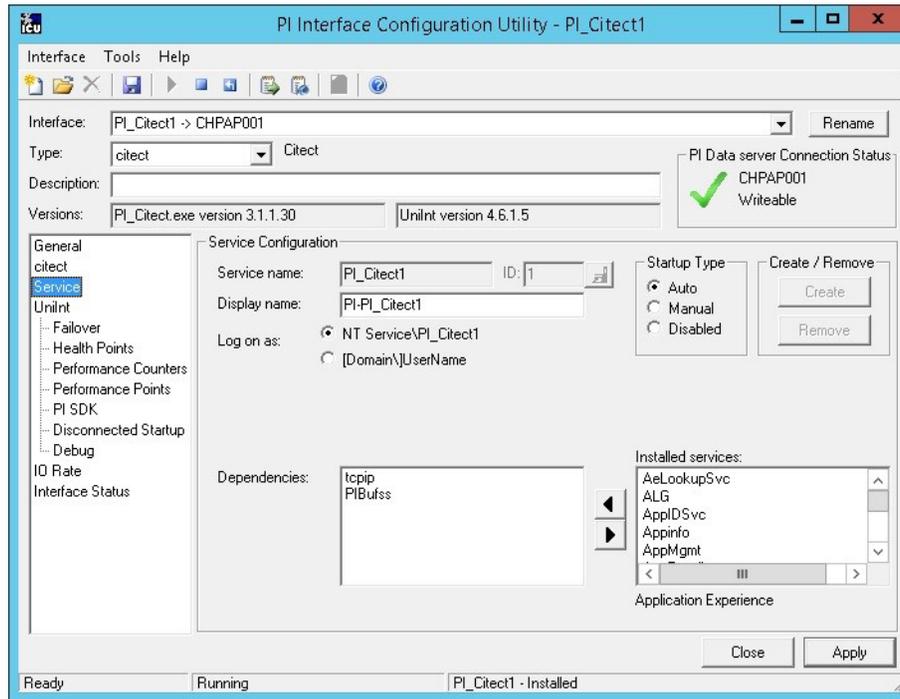
9. To set up the interface as a Windows Service, use the **Service** page. This page allows configuration of the interface to run as a service as well as the starting and stopping of the interface service. Keep the default values, as shown below.

676

677

678

Figure 2.11 ICU - Windows Service Setup



679

680

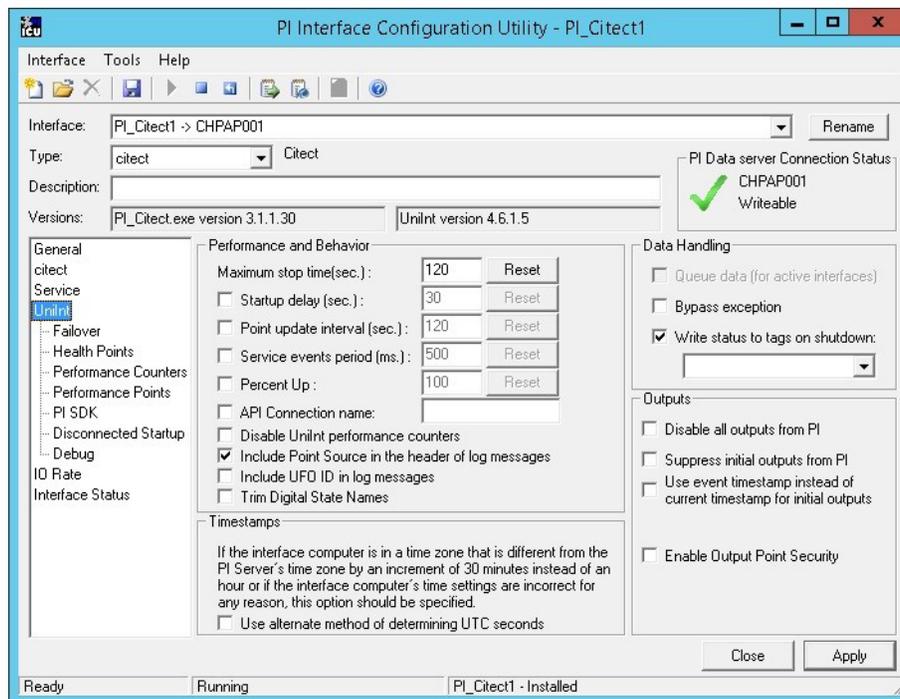
10. Since the PI Citect interface is a Unilnt-based interface, the Unilnt page allows the user to access Unilnt features through the PI ICU and to make changes to the behavior of the interface.

681

682

683

Figure 2.12 ICU - Unilnt Configuration



684

- 685 11. Keep the default values, but check the following boxes:
- 686 a. **Include Point Source in the header log of messages**
- 687 b. **Write status to tags on shutdown**
- 688 12. Uncheck the following box:
- 689 a. **Suppress initial outputs from PI**

## 690 2.8 RS2 Technologies Access It! Universal.NET(E7)

691 RS2 Technologies Access It! Universal.NET pairs with the RS2 Door Controller to monitor access  
692 into the lab utilized in the build. The software then alerts the SIEM for any access into the  
693 facility, allowing the SIEM to correlate network events with physical access events.

### 694 2.8.1 Environment Setup

695 The following configuration matched requirements for the product relative to the use in the  
696 example solution:

- 697 ■ Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2
- 698 ■ VM with CPU Quad Core 2.199GHz
- 699 ■ VM with 8192MB of memory
- 700 ■ Virtual Hard Disk containing 240 GB of storage
- 701 ■ .NET Framework 3.5

#### 702 2.8.1.1 Product Installation

- 703 1. Start the provided **AIUniversalNET51044CD.exe**.
- 704 2. Follow the prompts for installation:
  - 705 a. Select **Stand-Alone / Server Installation**.
  - 706 b. Select **I do not have a SQL Server Installed**.
  - 707 c. When prompted to install SQL Server 2008 R2 Express Edition, select **Yes**.
  - 708 d. Select **Install Access It! Universal.NET**.
  - 709 e. When prompted to install a Stand-Alone Server version of Access It! Universal.NET,  
710 select **OK**.
  - 711 f. Select **Next >**.
  - 712 g. Read the license agreement and select **Next >** if you agree with the terms of the  
713 agreement.
  - 714 h. Use the default installation folder **C:\Program Files(x86)\RS2 Technologies\Access It!  
715 Universal.NET\**, then select **Next >**.
- 716 3. When the installer is ready, select **Next >** to continue.
- 717 4. Select **Close** to exit the installer.

## 718 2.8.2 Post-installation and configuration

719 Post installation and configuration is partially dependent on the installation and configuration  
720 of the RS2 Technologies Door controller (O4). If that is not complete, please follow that guide  
721 first before attempting to complete the post installation of Access It! Universal.NET (E7).

- 722 1. Launch Access It! Universal.NET by selecting it from the **Start** menu.
- 723 2. Log in with the default user name **Admin**. Leave password blank.

### 724 2.8.2.1 Connecting Access It! Universal.NET

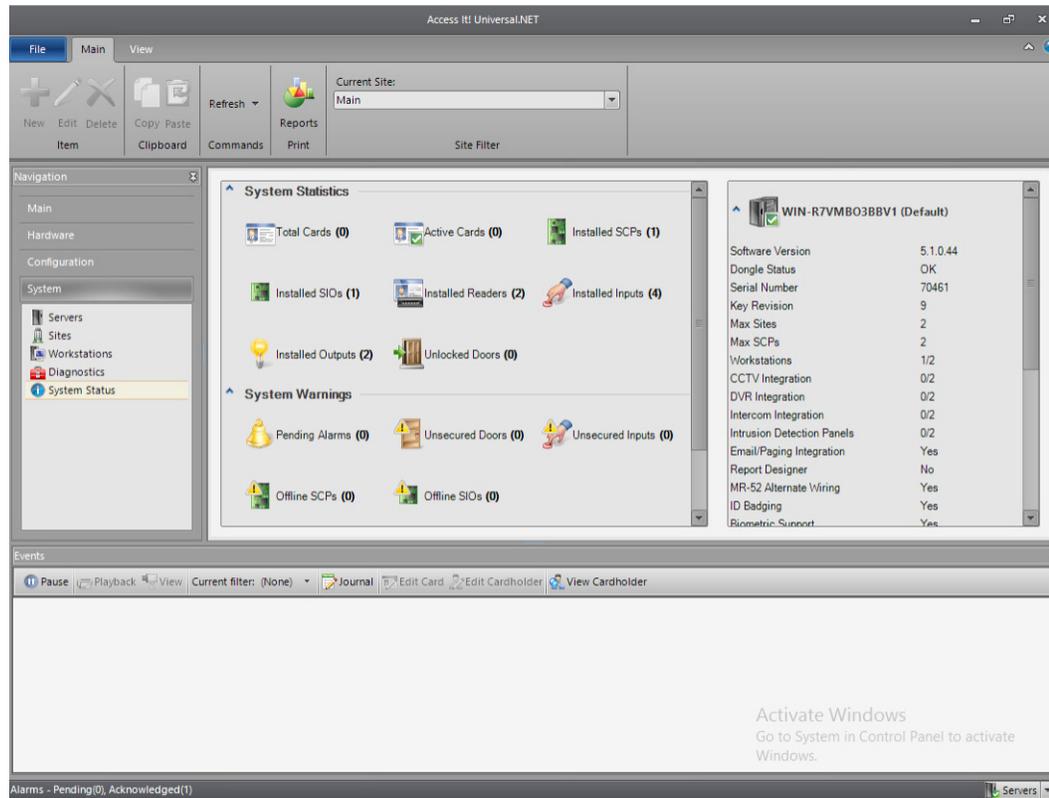
- 725 1. Select **Hardware** under the Navigation pane, then select the **Channels** pane.
- 726 2. Select the **green + sign** in the top left corner to create a new channel.
- 727 3. For Channel Type, select **IP server**.
- 728 4. Ensure Protocol Type is **SCP**.
- 729 5. Ensure **Channel Enabled** is checked.
- 730 6. Select **Save**.
- 731 7. Select **SCPs** under the Navigation pane on the left.
- 732 8. Select the **green + sign** in the top left corner to create a new SCP.
- 733 9. Under the **General** tab:
  - 734 a. Select **EP-1502** for Model.
  - 735 b. Ensure **Device installed** is checked.
  - 736 c. Set **SCP time zone** to the local time zone of the door controller.
- 737 10. Under the **Comm.** tab:
  - 738 a. Ensure that the channel created in the previous steps is listed.
  - 739 b. Set the IP address to **10.100.2.150**.
  - 740 c. Ensure the port number is set to **3001**.
  - 741 d. Ensure the Encryption Settings is set to **None**.
- 742 11. Select **Save**.

### 743 2.8.2.2 Enable TCP/IP for local SQL 2008 R2 Express Edition Server

- 744 1. Launch **Microsoft SQL Server Configuration Manager**.
- 745 2. Expand **SQL Server Network Configuration (32-bit)**.
- 746 3. Select **Protocols** for **AIUNIVERSAL**.
- 747 4. Right-click on **TCP/IP**, then select **Properties**.
- 748 5. Select the **IP Addresses** tab.
- 749 6. Under **IP1**, ensure that **IP Address** is set to **0.0.0.0**, and **TCP Port** is set to **1433**.
- 750 7. Under **IPALL**, ensure that **TCP Dynamic Ports** is set to **52839**, and **TCP Port** is set to **1433**.

- 751 8. Restart the SQL server. Select **SQL Server Services**, then right-click on **SQL Server**  
 752 **(AIUNIVERSAL)** and select **Restart**.

753 **Figure 2.13 System Status**



754

## 755 2.9 RS2 Technologies Door Controller (O4)

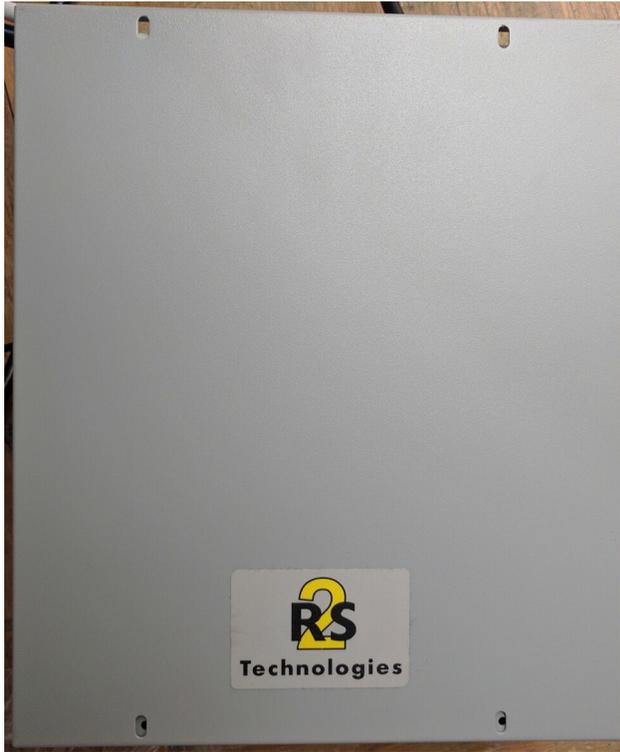
756 The RS2 Technologies Door Controller is the physical piece to the Access It! Universal.NET  
 757 product. This piece connects to the door itself, alerting the software to any access to the  
 758 location.

### 759 2.9.1 Hardware Installation

760 The following instructions detail the hardware installation for the door controller:

- 761 1. The fully assembled and closed case:

762

**Figure 2.14 RS2 Door Controller Case**

763

764

2. The interior modules:

765

**Figure 2.15** Inside of RS2 Door Controller Case

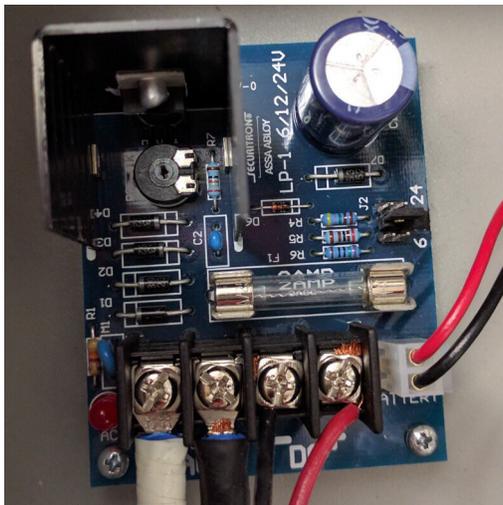
766

767

3. The battery is pictured in the lower right corner of the case. The smaller board (AC/DC Inverter) is pictured below:

768

769

**Figure 2.16** AC/DC Inverter

770

771

772

773

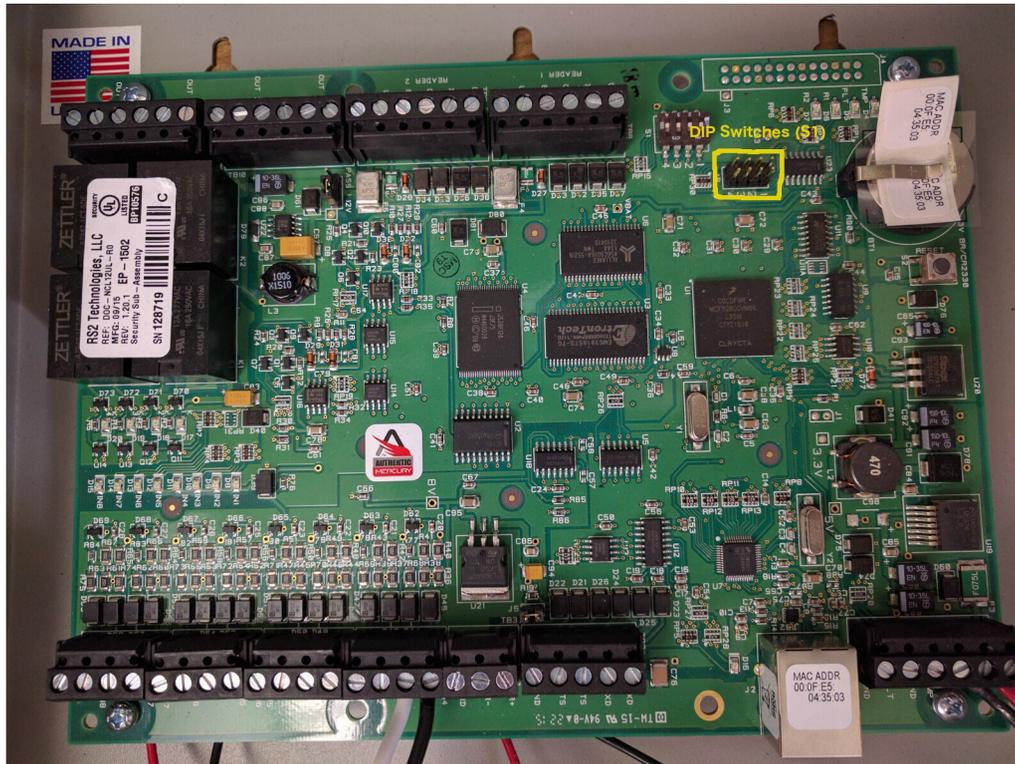
4. The two cables to the left are for positive and neutral input from a low voltage AC power supply. The ground (green) cable from the AC power supply attaches to a grounding nut on the case (pictured in the previous figure).

774 The black and red cables to the left of AC are the DC outputs. These supply power directly to  
 775 the door controller EP-1502 board.

776 The other two black and red wires, connected to a harness, sit in the BATTERY port of the  
 777 smaller board. These provide a trickle charge to the battery which can be used in the event of a  
 778 power outage.

779 The larger EP-1502 board is pictured below:

780 **Figure 2.17 EP-1502 Door Controller Board**



781

782 5. The white and black wires on the bottom center of the figure go into **Door Contact 1 - IN1**,  
 783 and these connect to the physical door monitoring devices.

784 6. Power is supplied to the board via the bottom right corner posts, for 12 to 24VDC (max  
 785 500mA).

## 786 2.9.2 Connecting Hardware to Access It! Universal.NET

787 Conduct the following steps to connect the EP-1502 Door Controller Board to the Access It!  
 788 Universal.NET software. The DIP switches referenced in these steps apply to those highlighted  
 789 in yellow in the figure above.

- 790 1. Ensure that DIP Switch **DIP 2** is **ON** and **1, 3, & 4** are **OFF**.
- 791 2. Power on the EP-1502.
- 792 3. Manually configure a computer to **192.168.0.100**.
- 793 4. Using a crossover cable, connect the computer to the EP-1502 board.

- 794 5. Open a web browser and navigate to `http://192.168.0.251`.
- 795 6. Set DIP Switch **DIP 1** to **ON**.
- 796 7. Select **Click Here to Login**.
- 797 8. Select **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.
- 798 9. Login with username: **admin** and password: **password**.
- 799 10. Select **Network** on the left-hand menu.
- 800 11. Select **Use Static IP configuration**.
- 801 a. IP Address: **172.18.3.50**
- 802 b. Subnet Mask: **172.18.0.0/16**
- 803 c. Default Gateway: **172.18.0.1**
- 804 12. Click **OK**.
- 805 13. Click **Apply Setting**.
- 806 14. Click **Apply, Reboot**.
- 807 15. Wait 60 seconds for the EP-1502 to reboot.
- 808 16. Remove power from the EP-1502.
- 809 17. Set **all DIP switches** to **OFF**.
- 810 18. Remove the crossover cable and connect to the network.
- 811 19. Apply power to the EP-1502 and follow the instructions in [Section 2.8.2, Post-installation](#)
- 812 [and configuration](#).

## 813 **2.10 Radiflow 3180 (O14)**

814 Radiflow's 3180 is a secure, ruggedized router used to handle connections between the OSIsoft  
815 Citect Interface and the OSIsoft PI Historian. This device ensures proper communication is  
816 allowed while stopping any traffic that is not required.

### 817 **2.10.1 Radiflow 3180 (O14) Installation Guide**

- 818 1. Log in with the **su** user with the provided username and password.
- 819 2. Enter the following commands:
  - 820 a. `config terminal`
  - 821 b. `ip access-list extended 1001`
  - 822 c. `permit tcp host 172.16.2.170 eq 5450 host 172.18.2.150 eq 5450`
  - 823 `priority 1`
  - 824 d. `exit`
  - 825 e. `interface fastethernet 0/1`
  - 826 f. `ip access-group 1001 in`
  - 827 g. `exit`

```
828     h. ip access-list extended 1002
829     i. permit tcp host 172.16.2.150 eq 5450 host 172.18.2.170 eq 5450
830     priority 2
831     j. exit
832     k. interface fastethernet 0/2
833     l. ip access-group 1002 in
834     m. exit
835     n. ip access-list extended 2001
836     o. deny ip any any priority 51
837     p. exit
838     q. interface fastethernet 0/1
839     r. ip access-group 2001 in
840     s. exit
841     t. ip access-list extended 2002
842     u. deny ip any any priority 52
843     v. exit
844     w. interface fastethernet 0/2
845     x. ip access-group 2002 in
846     y. exit
847     z. write start
848     aa. reload
```

## 849 **2.11 Radiflow iSID (O11)**

850 Radiflow's iSID product is a software industrial intrusion detection system that monitors for  
851 anomalies within the control systems network and builds a network topology model.

### 852 **2.11.1 Environment Setup**

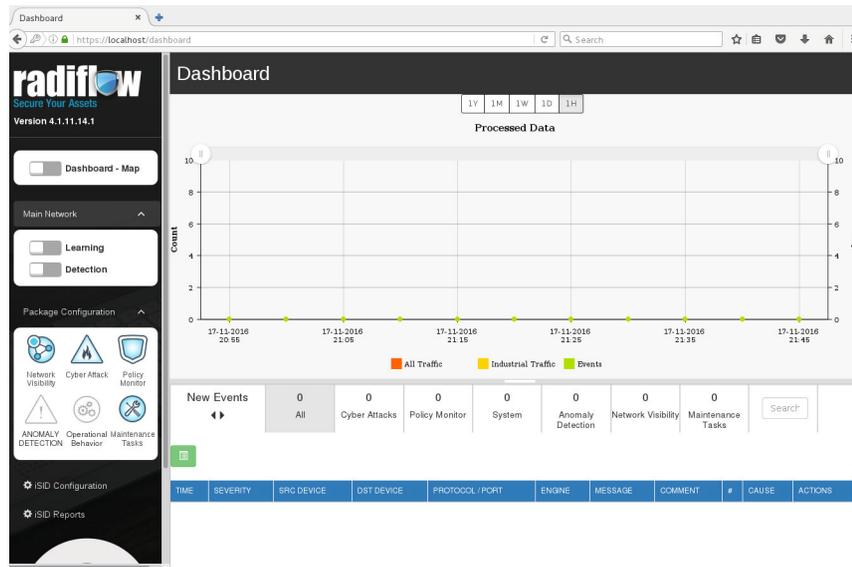
853 Radiflow supplies an OVA to be deployed to a virtualized environment, so environment setup  
854 should be minimal.

### 855 **2.11.2 Product Installation**

- 856 1. After deploying the vendor-provided OVA on a virtualized platform, navigate to  
857 **/home/radiflow/isid.**
- 858 2. Modify the **server.conf** file to reflect the IP Address of the syslog server:  
859 `rfids_remote_syslog_server=172.18.0.50`  
860 `poco_source_dir=/home/radiflow/tools/poco`
- 861 3. Run **sudo ./build\_install\_all.sh stop start install config bridge.**

- 862 4. Open a web browser and navigate to <https://localhost/dashboard>.

863 **Figure 2.18 Radiflow iSID Web Dashboard**



864

- 865 5. Toggle the **Learning** switch on the left bar under Main Network.
- 866 a. Allow learning to take place for **5-7 days**.
- 867 6. Toggle the **Detection** switch on the left bar under Main Network.
- 868 7. Setup and configuration is now complete.

## 869 2.12 RSA Archer Security Operations Management (E13)

870 Governance, risk, and compliance (GRC) platforms allow an organization to link strategy and  
 871 risk, adjusting strategy when risk changes, while remaining in compliance with laws,  
 872 regulations, and security policies. RSA Archer Security Operations Management, based in  
 873 part on the RSA Archer GRC platform, was used to perform the task of the Analysis  
 874 Workflow Engine and Security Incident Response and Management.

875 For more information, visit:

- 876 ■ <https://www.rsa.com/en-us/resources/rsa-netwitness-secops-manager>
- 877 ■ [https://www.rsa.com/en-us/products/threat-detection-and-response/rsa-netwitness-secops-  
878 -manager](https://www.rsa.com/en-us/products/threat-detection-and-response/rsa-netwitness-secops-manager)
- 879 ■ [https://www.rsa.com/en-us/products/threat-detection-and-response/network-monitoring-a-  
880 nd-forensics](https://www.rsa.com/en-us/products/threat-detection-and-response/network-monitoring-and-forensics)

### 881 2.12.1 System Requirements

882 This build installed a multi-host RSA Archer GRC platform node on a VMware VM with the  
 883 Microsoft Windows Server 2012R2 operating system to provide the Security Incident Response  
 884 Management environment needed.

885 Note: All components, features, and configurations presented in this guide reflect what we  
 886 used based on vendors' best practices and requirements. Please refer to vendors' official  
 887 documentation for complete instruction for other options.

## 888 2.12.2 Pre-Installation

889 We chose the multi-host deployment option for installing and configuring the GRC platform on  
 890 multiple VMs under the Microsoft Windows Server 2012R2 Operating System. The Web  
 891 application and services are running on one server, instance database / Microsoft SQL Server is  
 892 running on one server, and integration components for Security Incident Response are running  
 893 on a third server. Below are the pre-installation tasks that we performed prior the RSA Archer  
 894 installation:

- 895 ■ Operating System: Windows Server 2012R2 Enterprise
- 896 ■ Database: Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Enterprise (x64)

897 Follow Microsoft's installation guidelines and steps to install the SQL Server Database Engine  
 898 and SQL Server Management tools. Refer to  
 899 [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb500395\(v=sql.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb500395(v=sql.110).aspx) for additional details.

900 We used the following configuration settings during the installation and configuration process.  
 901 We also created the required database instances and users for the RSA Archer installation. Test  
 902 the database instances by using different users to verify the login permissions on all database  
 903 instances and configuration databases to ensure that database owners have sufficient  
 904 privileges and correct user mappings.

905 **Table 2.2 RSA Archer Configuration Settings**

Setting	Value
Collation settings set to case insensitive for instance database	SQL_Latin1_general_CP1_CI_AS
SQL compatibility level set appropriately	SQL Server 2012 - 110
Locale set	English (United States)
Database server time zone	EST
Platform language	English
Create both the instance and configuration databases within a single SQL Server instance. For migration, create only the configuration database.	Database names: <i>grc-content</i> <i>grc-config</i>
User Account set to Database Owner role	<i>grc-content-archeruser</i> <i>grc-config-archeruser</i>
Recovery Model	Simple (configuration and instance databases)
Auto Shrink	False (configuration database)
Auto-Growth	Set it for (instance database)
Max Degree of Parallelism	1 (configuration and instance databases)

906 **Web and Services**

- 907 ■ Microsoft IIS 8
- 908 ■ Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5

909 Use Server Manager for installing IIS and .NET Framework, referring to  
 910 <http://www.iis.net/learn/get-started/whats-new-in-iis-8/installing-iis-8-on-windows-server-20>  
 911 [12](#) for detailed steps and corresponding screen shots.

912 First install IIS and then install the .NET Framework.

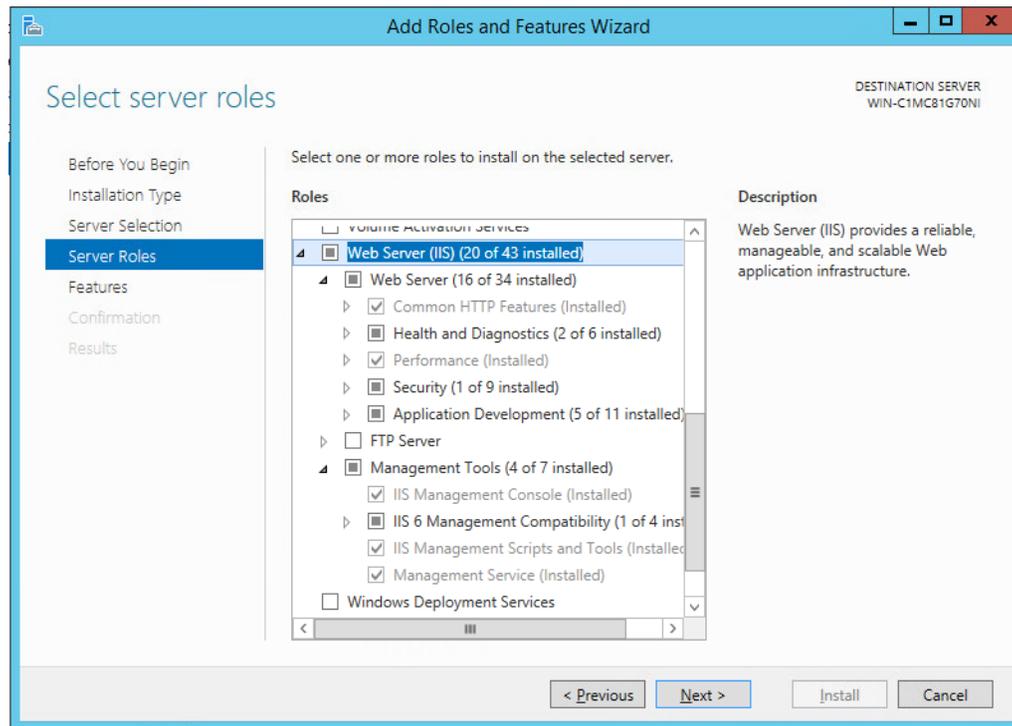
913 **Table 2.3** below summarizes the required IIS components and .NET Framework features  
 914 followed by the screen shots.

915 **Table 2.3 IIS Components and .NET Framework**

Required Option	Value
<b>IIS</b>	
Common HTTP Features	Default Document Directory Browsing HTTP Errors Static Content
Health and Diagnostics	HTTP Logging
Application Development	.NET Extensibility 4.5 ASP .NET 4.5 ISAPI Extensions ISAPI Filters
Security	Request Filtering
Management Tools	IIS Management Console
<b>.NET Framework</b>	
.NET Framework 4.5 Features	.NET Framework 4.5 ASP.NET 4.5
WCF Services	HTTP Activation TCP Port Sharing

916

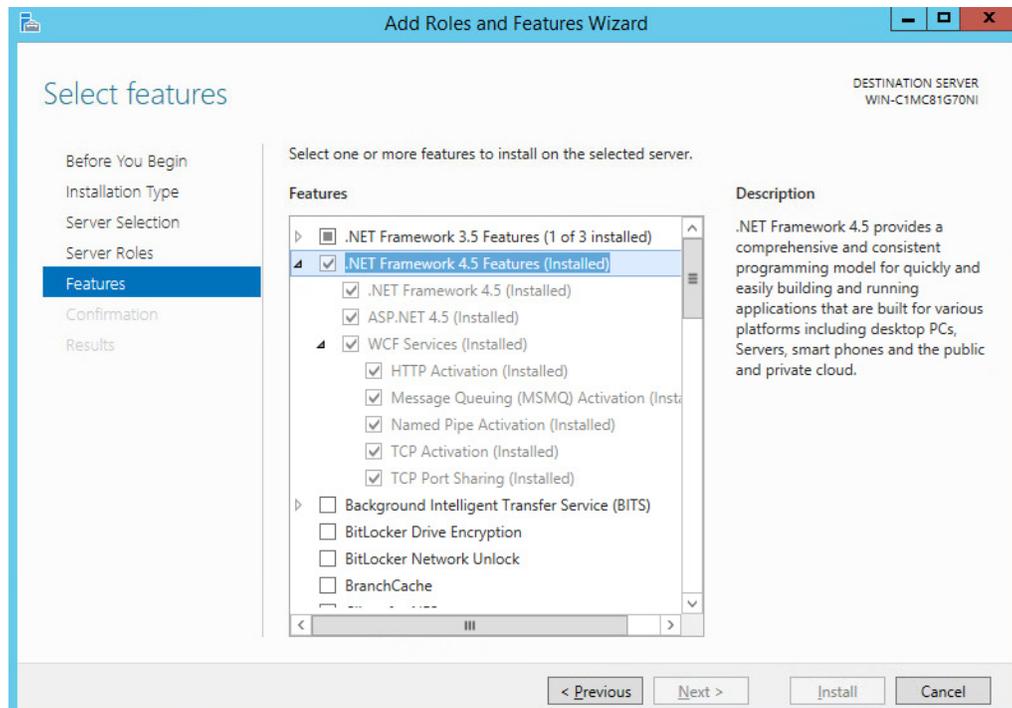
Figure 2.19 Web Server (IIS) Components Section



917

918

Figure 2.20 .NET Framework 4.5 Features Selection



919

920

## Microsoft Office 2013 Filter Pack

- 921 Download it from Microsoft website  
922 <http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=40229> and install it.
- 923 **Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 8**
- 924 Download and install JRE 8. Refer to  
925 <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/install-windows-64-142952.html> for details.
- 926 *Note: All pre-installation software must be installed and configured before installing RSA Archer.*

### 927 2.12.3 Installation

- 928 1. Create folders **C:\ArcherFiles\Indexes** and **C:\ArcherFiles\Logging** (will be used later).
- 929 2. Obtain/Download the installer package from RSA; extract the installation package.
- 930 3. Run installer.
  - 931 a. Open installation folder, right-click on **ArcherInstall.exe**.
  - 932 b. Select **Run as Administrator**.
  - 933 c. Click **OK** to run the Installer.
  - 934 d. Follow the prompts from the installer for each step, set the value, and click Next.
  - 935 e. Select all components (Web Application, Services, Instance Database) for installation;  
936 then click **Next**.
  - 937 f. Specify the X.509 Certification by selecting it from the checklist (create new cert or use  
938 existing cert). We created a new cert.
  - 939 g. Set the Configuration Database options with the following properties:  
940 SQL Server: **<ip address of SQL Server>**  
941 Login Name: **#####**  
942 Password: **#####**  
943 Database: **grc-config** (this is the configuration database we created  
944 during the pre-installation process)
  - 945 h. Set the Configuration Web Application options with the following properties:  
946 Website: **Default Website**  
947 Destination Directory: select **Install in an IIS application option** with **RSAArcher** as  
948 the value
  - 949 i. Set the Configuration of the Service Credentials.
    - 950 i. Select **Use the Local System Account to Run All** from the checklist.
    - 951 j. Set the Services and Application Files paths with the following properties:
      - 952 i. Services: use the default value **C:\Program Files\RSA Archer\Services\**.
      - 953 ii. Application Files: use the default value **C:\Program Files\RSA Archer\**.
    - 954 k. Set the Log File Path to **C:\ArcherFiles\Logging**.

- 955 I. Perform the installation by clicking **Install**, wait for the installer to complete installing all  
956 components, then click **Finish**. The RSA Archer Control Panel opens.

## 957 2.12.4 Post-Installation

### 958 2.12.4.1 Configure the Installation Settings

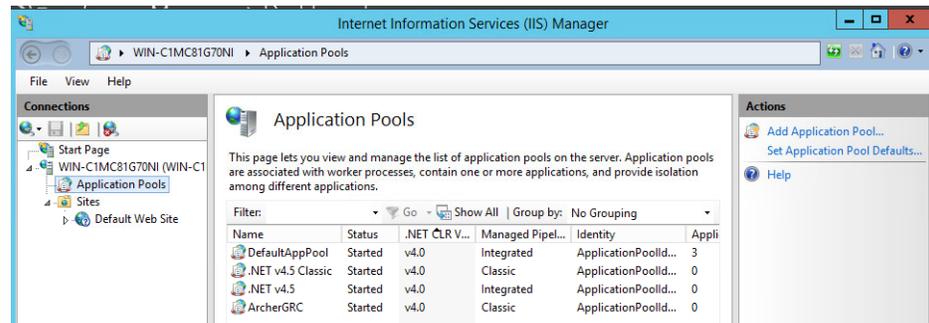
959 Verify and set the configurations for the following by clicking on **RSA Archer Control Panel >**  
960 **Installation Settings**, then select corresponding sections:

- 961 1. Logging Section
  - 962 a. Path: **Archer Files\Logging**
  - 963 b. Level: **Error**
- 964 2. Locale and Time Zone Section
  - 965 a. Locale: **English (United States)**
  - 966 b. Time Zone: **(UTC-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)**
- 967 3. On the Toolbar, click **Save**.
- 968 4. Create the Default GRC Platform Instance.
  - 969 a. Start the RSA Archer Queuing Service by doing the following steps:
    - 970 i. Go to **Start**.
    - 971 ii. Open **Server Manager**.
    - 972 iii. Locate **RSA Archer Queuing** in the list under the **SERVICES** section.
    - 973 iv. Right-click **RSA Archer Queuing** and click **Start**.
  - 974 b. Add a new instance by doing the following steps:
    - 975 i. Open the **RSA Archer Control Panel**.
    - 976 ii. In **Instance Management**, double-click **Add New Instance**.
    - 977 iii. Enter **SituationalAwareness** as the **Instance Name**, then click **Go**.
    - 978 iv. Complete the properties as needed.
  - 979 c. Configure the Database Connection Properties by doing the following steps:
    - 980 i. Open the RSA Archer Control Panel.
    - 981 ii. In the **Database** tab, go to the **Connection Properties** section.
    - 982 iii. In **Instance Management**, double-click the **SituationalAwareness** instance.
  - 983 d. In the **Database** tab, set up the following:
    - 984 i. SQL Server: **<ip address of SQL Server>**
    - 985 ii. Login name: **xxxxxx**
    - 986 iii. Password: **xxxxxx**
    - 987 iv. Database: **grc-content**

- 988 5. Click on the **Test Connection** link to make sure the **Success** message appears.
- 989 6. Configure the **General Properties** by doing the following steps:
  - 990 a. Open **RSA Archer Control Panel**.
  - 991 b. Go to **Instance Management**.
  - 992 c. Under **All Instances**, click on **SituationalAwareness**.
  - 993 d. In the **General** tab, set up the following:
    - 994 i. **File Repository** section - Path **C:\ArcherFiles\Indexes**.
    - 995 ii. **Search Index** section - **Content Indexing**: Check on Index design language only;  
996 Path: **C:\ArcherFiles\Indexes\SituationalAwareness**
- 997 7. Configure the **Web Properties** by doing the following steps:
  - 998 a. Open the **RSA Archer Control Panel**.
  - 999 b. Go to **Instance Management**.
  - 1000 c. Under **All Instances**, click on **SituationalAwareness**.
  - 1001 d. In the **Web** tab, set up the following:
    - 1002 i. Base URL: **http://localhost/RSAArcher/**
    - 1003 ii. Authentication URL: **default.aspx**
- 1004 8. Change **SysAdmin** and **Service Account** passwords by doing the following steps:
  - 1005 a. Open the **RSA Archer Control Panel**.
  - 1006 b. Go to **Instance Management**.
  - 1007 c. Under **All Instances**, click on **SituationalAwareness**.
  - 1008 d. Select the **Accounts** tab.
  - 1009 e. Change the password on the page by using a strong password.
  - 1010 f. Complete the Default GRC Platform Instance Creation by clicking **Save** on the toolbar.
- 1011 9. Register the Instance by doing the following steps:
  - 1012 a. Open the **RSA Archer Control Panel**.
  - 1013 b. Go to **Instance Management**.
  - 1014 c. Under **All Instances**, right-click on **SituationalAwareness**.
  - 1015 d. Select **Update Licensing**, enter the following information, then click on **Active**:
    - 1016 i. **Serial Number** (obtained from RSA)
    - 1017 ii. **Contact Info** (First Name, Last Name, Company, etc.)
    - 1018 iii. **Activation Method** (select Automated)
- 1019 10. Activate the Archer Instance by doing the following steps:
  - 1020 a. Start the **RSA Archer Services**.
  - 1021 b. On **Server Manager**, go to **Local Services** or **All Services**.

- 1022 c. Locate the following services, right-click on each service, and click **Start**.
- 1023 i. **RSA Archer Configuration**
- 1024 ii. **RSA Archer Job Engine**
- 1025 iii. **RSA Archer LDAP Synchronization**
- 1026 d. Restart the **RSA Archer Queuing Service**.
- 1027 i. Open **Server Manager**.
- 1028 ii. Go to **Local Services** or **All Services**.
- 1029 iii. Locate the **RSA Archer Queuing**.
- 1030 iv. Right-click on **RSA Archer Queuing** and click **Restart**.
- 1031 e. Rebuild the Archer Search Index.
- 1032 i. Open **RSA Archer Control Panel**.
- 1033 ii. Go to **Instance Management**.
- 1034 iii. Under **All Instances**, right-click on **SituationalAwareness**, then click on **Rebuild**
- 1035 **Search Index**.
- 1036 11. Configure and activate the Web Role (IIS).
- 1037 a. Set up **Application Pools** as shown in the screen shot.
- 1038 i. Open **Server Manager**.
- 1039 ii. Navigate to **Tools > IIS Manager > Application Pools** (in the left side bar).
- 1040 iii. Right-click to add applications (.NET, ArcherGRC, etc.), example screen shot below.

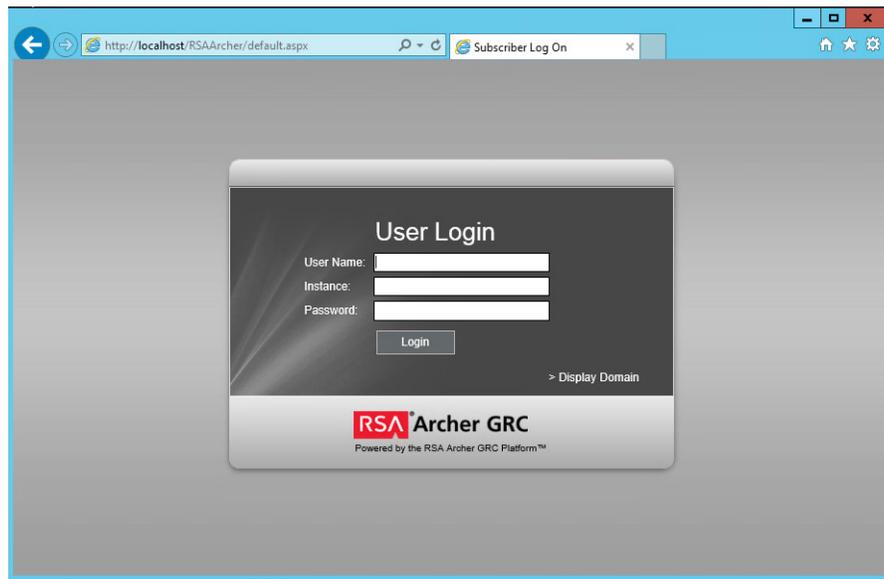
1041 **Figure 2.21 Application Pools**



- 1043 b. Restart IIS.
- 1044 12. Verify that RSA Archer GRC is accessible by opening a browser and inserting the **Base** and
- 1045 **Authentication URL** from the Web tab of the RSA Archer Control Panel. The RSA Archer GRC
- 1046 Login screen appears as shown below.

1047

Figure 2.22 RSA Archer User Login

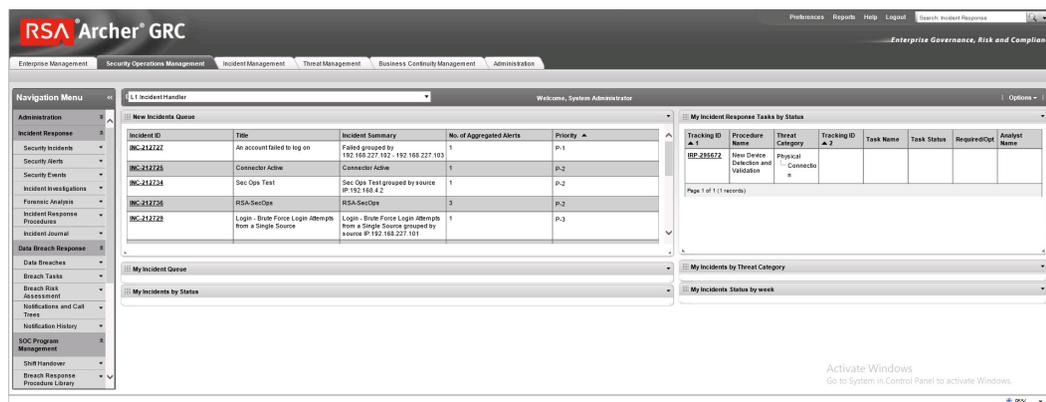


1048

1049 13. Log in to **SituationalAwareness** Instance.

1050

Figure 2.23 Security Operations Management Tab



1051

## 1052 2.12.5 Configuration of ArcSight ESM to RSA Archer Security Operations Management

1053

1054

1055

1056

1057

1058

After a base installation of RSA Archer and the associated RSA Archer Security Operations Management functionality, an additional configuration is required to connect the Security Incident Response use case to external data providers, such as ArcSight ESM. In this environment, this required an installation and configuration of the RSA Archer Unified Collector Framework on the third Windows Server in the Archer multi-host setup. For full details, please consult the installation and configuration guide for the RSA Collector Framework.

1059

1060

1061

1. Create user within RSA Archer framework for the Collector Framework Web Services access. For testing, this user was granted appropriate privileges to read and write data for Security Alert Data originating from ArcSight.

- 1062 2. Execute Archer Unified Collector Framework installer. When prompted, provide the Archer  
1063 Collector Framework Web Services username and password created in step 1.
- 1064 3. When prompted, follow the instructions for importing the Data Feed for the Unified  
1065 Collector Framework (UCF).

## 1066 2.12.6 Additional ArcSight Integration Configuration

1067 Additional details for the ArcSight Installation can be found in the RSA Archer Security  
1068 Operations Management Implementation Guide from RSA. Below are the steps that were  
1069 followed specifically for this environment to enable the connection to ArcSight.

- 1070 1. Create ArcSight Forwarding Connector User.
- 1071 a. From **ArcSight ESM Console**:
- 1072 i. Create a new group under custom user groups and name as follows: **FwdConnector**
- 1073 ii. Create a new user under that group and name as follows: **FwdConnectorUser**
- 1074 iii. Set the user type to: **Forwarding Connector**
- 1075 iv. For additional detail, see page 7-9 of FwdConn\_ConfigGuide\_7.0.7.7286.0.pdf
- 1076 2. Install **SuperConnector** (AKA, Forwarding Connector).
- 1077 a. From the **ArcSight ESM Manager command line**:
- 1078 i. Su to **arcsight** user
- 1079 ii. Find the install file **ArcSight-7.0.7.7286.0-Superconnector.bin** and run the following  
1080 command (in order to allow the install to execute):
- 1081 `chmod + x ArcSight-7.0.7.7286.0-Superconnector.bin`
- 1082 iii. Make a folder for the connector:
- 1083 e.g., `mkdir /opt/arcsight/superconnector`
- 1084 iv. As **arcsight** user execute the installation file:
- 1085 **`./ArcSight-7.0.7.7286.0-Superconnector.bin`**
- 1086 v. Choose to install to the folder that you just made:
- 1087 e.g., **`/opt/arcsight/superconnector`**
- 1088 vi. Accept defaults.
- 1089 vii. Choose **Don't Create Links**.
- 1090 viii. **Install**.
- 1091 ix. **Next**.
- 1092 x. Enter the ArcSight ESM Manager name: **[hostname]**
- 1093 xi. Enter the ArcSight ESM Manager port: **8443**
- 1094 xii. Enter the name of the user you just created: **FwdConnectorUser**
- 1095 xiii. Enter the ArcSight Manager password: \_\_\_\_\_

- 1096           xiv. Import the manager certificate.
- 1097           xv. Select **CEF Syslog**.
- 1098           xvi. Enter the IP address of the RSA Archer UCF IP, Port: **514, TCP** (not UDP)
- 1099           xvii. Select **Next** twice, **Exit, Done**.
- 1100           xviii. As user **root**, install the service as follows:
- ```
1101                 /opt/arcsight/superconnector/current/bin/arcsight agentsvc -i  
1102                 -u arcsight
```
- 1103           xix. Start the service as follows:
- ```
1104                 ./etc/init.d/arc_superagent_ng start
```

1105           **Note:** *If you need to add another forwarding destination, see page 32 of*  
1106           *FwdConn\_ConfigGuide\_7.0.7.7286.0.pdf.*

### 1107 2.12.7 Sample Use Case Demonstration

1108           For the use of the Security Incident Response use case and integration with ArcSight, the  
1109           following sample use case was simulated:

#### 1110 1. Event 1

1111           An individual enters a substation, and event that is detected by a door controller. This door  
1112           reader is able to log its data or a SIEM, such as ArcSight, including identifying information  
1113           (such as a Badge ID or user)

#### 1114 2. Event 2

1115           A new device appears on the substation network, detected by a tool (for example,  
1116           CyberLens). This data is reported via a log event to a SIEM such as ArcSight.

#### 1117 3. Action 1:

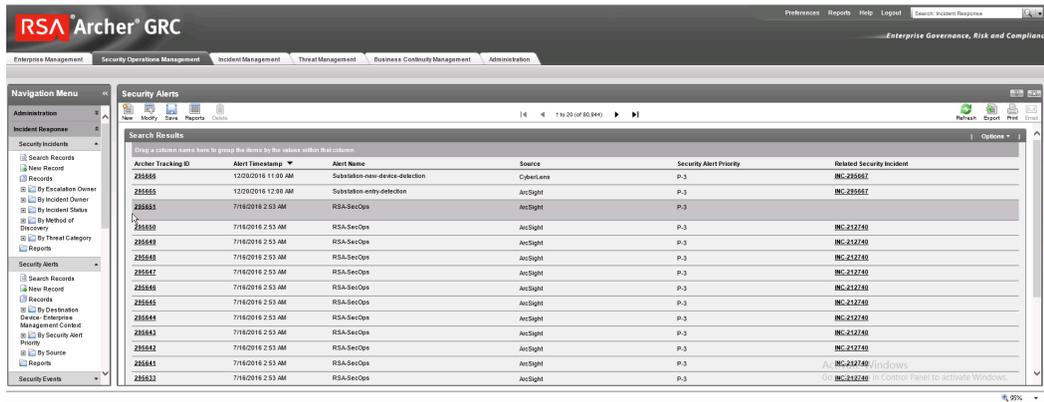
1118           An Alert/Correlation Rule appropriate for these events fires in ArcSight, triggering message  
1119           delivery to RSA Archer Security Incident Response for review and possible action.

1120           Below are screen shots and narratives of this sample use case within the RSA Archer  
1121           Security Operations Management Use Case.

- 1122           1. User is logged into the Archer Interface, and is examining the Security Alerts that have been  
1123           delivered for review.

1124

Figure 2.24 Multiple Security Alerts within the RSA Archer Console



1125

1126

1127

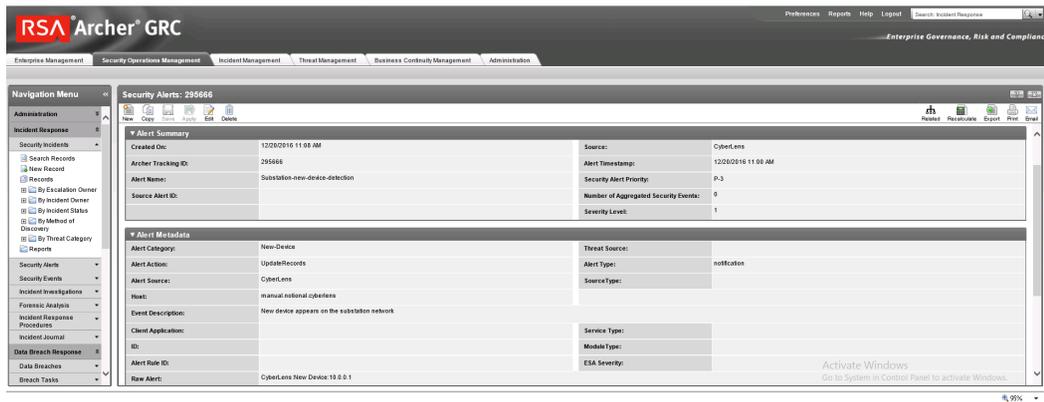
Figure 2.25 Sample Message from ArcSight, showing raw log message/alert and parsing with normalization



1128

1129

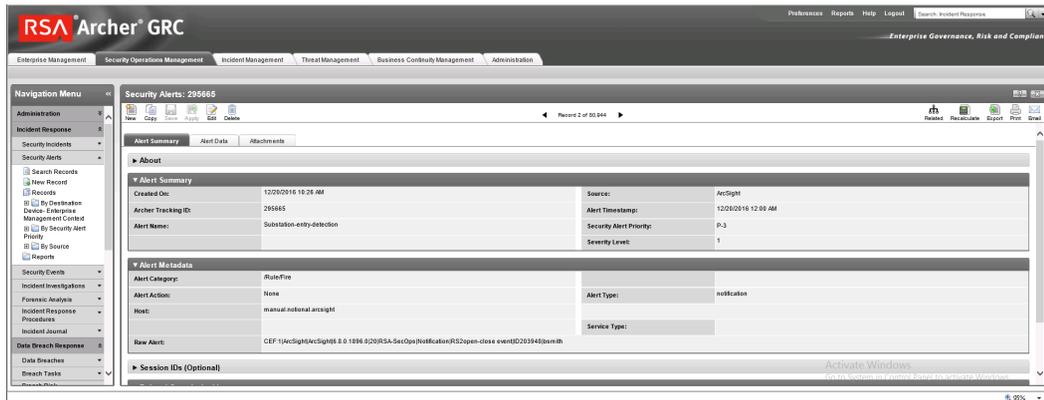
Figure 2.26 Sample message showing alert indicating new device detected at substation



1130

1131

Figure 2.27 Sample message showing an alert indicating badged entry detected at substation



1132

- Based on rule or physical examination, these alerts are deemed Incident Investigation material and instantiate a full Incident Response Workflow.

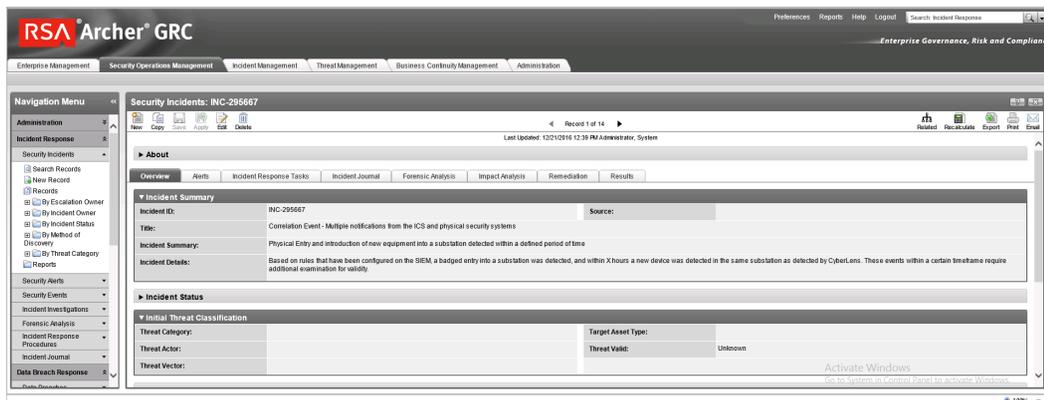
1133

1134

1135

1136

Figure 2.28 New incident response workflow record started, documented with Title, Summary, Details

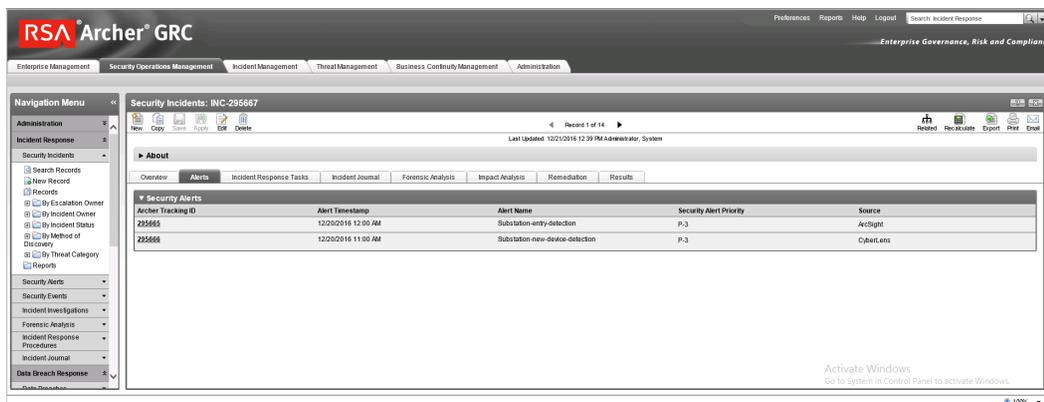


1137

1138

1139

Figure 2.29 Incident record alerts tab, showing the association of two events attached to this incident response investigation record



1140

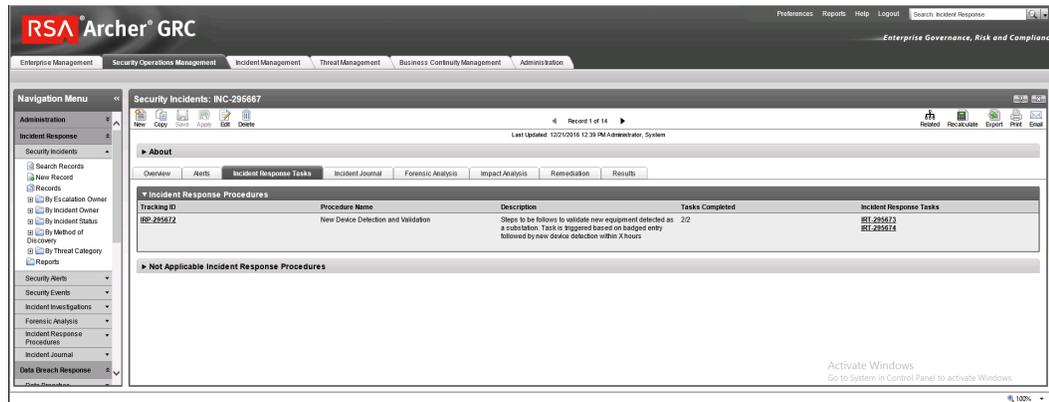
1141

1142

- Based on Incident type, Appropriate Incident Response Procedure(s) and related tasks are assigned to the Record for completion. This directly represents the defined policy and

1143 procedure(s) outlines and maintained by an organization's security policy program and  
1144 response.

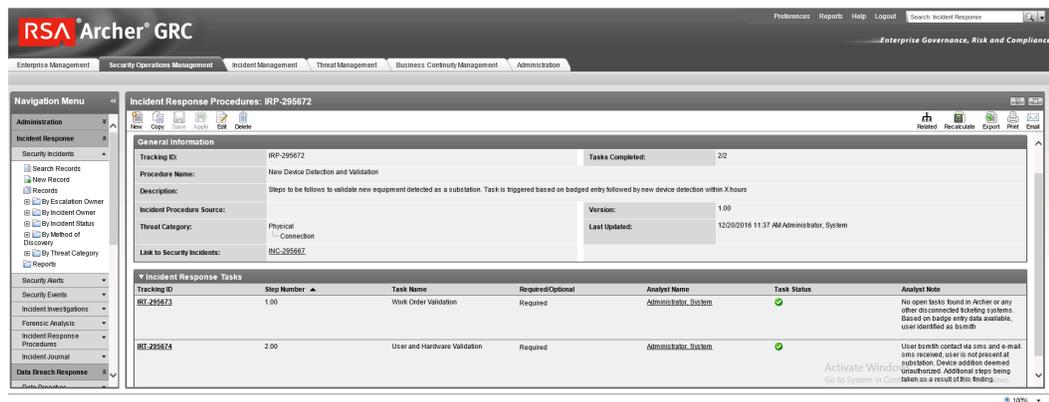
1145 **Figure 2.30 Incident response procedure with two related tasks assigned to the incident**  
1146 **response record**



1147

1148

**Figure 2.31 Incident response tasks with status, details, and completion status**



1149

## 1150 2.13 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O3, O18, O20)

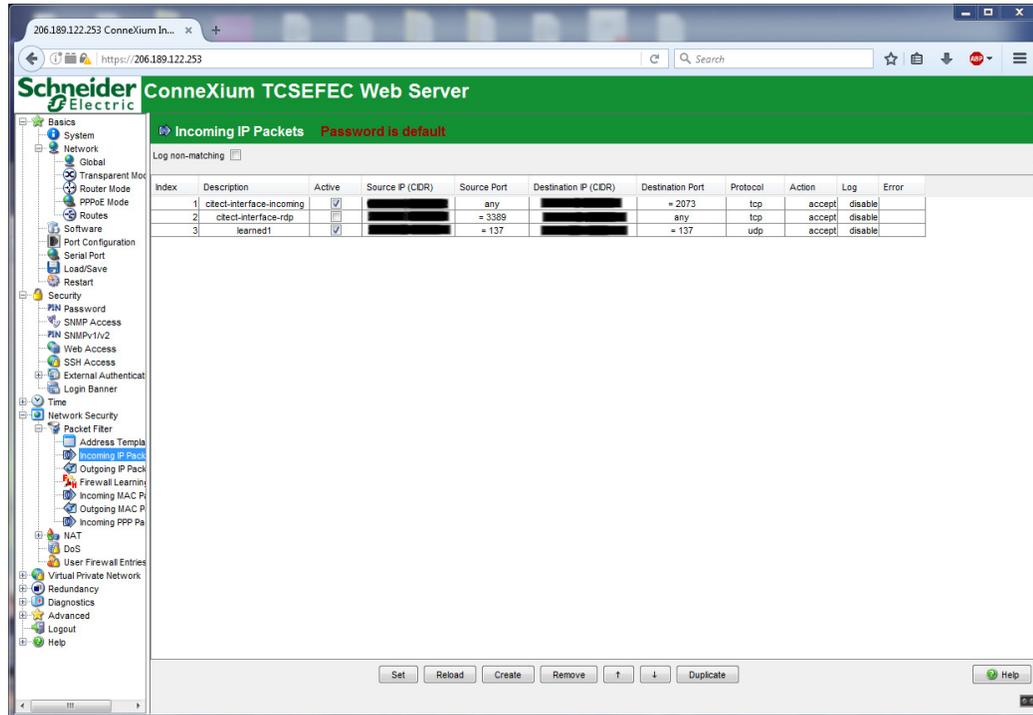
1151 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewalls are used in multiple points throughout the build, supplying  
1152 the necessary protection for network devices, including the door controller, the TDi  
1153 ConsoleWorks operations management instance, and the connection between the OSIsoft  
1154 Citect connector and the SCADA server.

### 1155 2.13.1 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O3) Installation Guide

- 1156 1. Log in to the web interface:
  - 1157 a. Open a browser and navigate to the IP address assigned to device.
  - 1158 b. Enter the username **admin** and password **private**.
- 1159 2. For Login-Type, select **Administration**, then select **OK**.

- 1160 3. From the menu on the left, select **Network Security -> Packet Filter -> Incoming IP Packets**.  
 1161 This is where the firewall rules will be created.
- 1162 4. Click the **Create** button on the bottom of the main window.
- 1163 5. Fill in the text fields for **Description, Source IP (CIDR), Source Port, Destination IP (CIDR),**  
 1164 **Destination Port, Protocol, Action Log, and Error** according to the rules needed for  
 1165 incoming packets.

1166 **Figure 2.32 Incoming Packet Configuration**

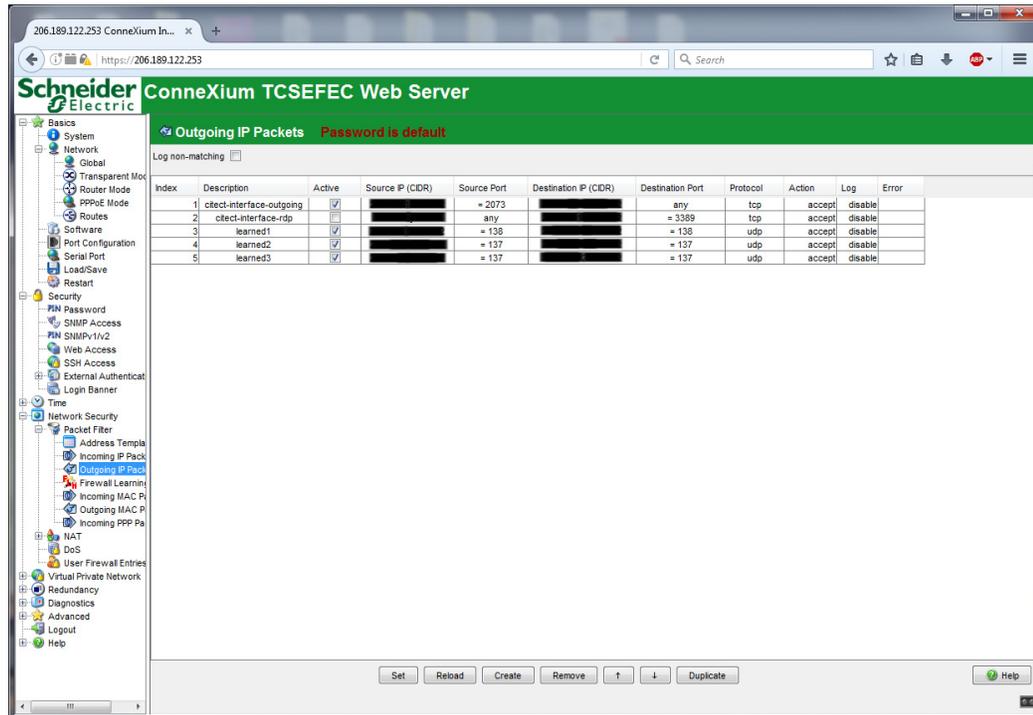


1167

- 1168 6. From the menu on the left, select **Network Security -> Packet Filter -> Outgoing IP Packets**.  
 1169 7. Follow the previous steps to create outgoing firewall rules.

1170

Figure 2.33 Outgoing Packet Configuration



1171

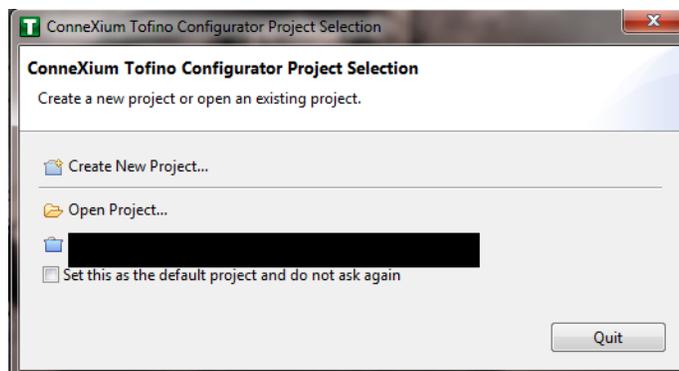
- 1172 8. If necessary, configure the interface IP addresses from the menu on the left by selecting  
1173 **Basics -> Network -> Transparent Mode.**

## 1174 2.13.2 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O18) Installation Guide

1175 Install and Configure the Schneider Tofino Firewall:

- 1176 1. Download the ConneXium software from the Schneider site as stated in the instructions  
1177 accompanying the firewall, then start the ConneXium Tofino Configurator.  
1178 2. In the startup screen, click **Create New Project...**

1179 **Figure 2.34 Create New Project**



1180

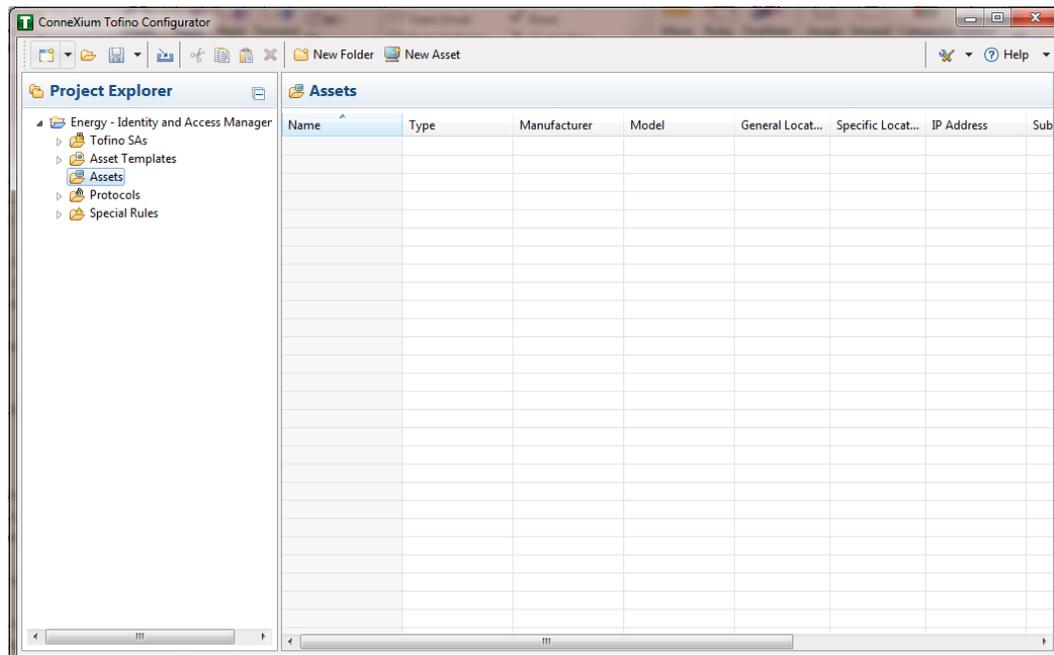


- 1191 7. In the **Tofino ID** field, enter the MAC address listed on the firewall hardware sticker. Fill out  
 1192 the rest of the fields as necessary, then click **Finish**.

1193 **Figure 2.37 Tofino SA/MAC Address**

1194

1195 **Figure 2.38 Project Explorer**



1196

- 1197 8. Right-click on the **Assets** icon in the Project Explorer frame, then click **New Asset**.  
 1198 9. In the New Asset window, set the name and type of the device, and all other fields as  
 1199 necessary, then click **Next**.

1200

Figure 2.39 New Asset

1201

1202

10. Fill in the **IP address** and/or the **MAC address** fields, then click **Finish**.

1203

11. Repeat for all devices on the network. When they are configured, click on the **Assets** icon in the Project Explorer frame (if it is not already selected). There should be a list of all configured assets.

1204

1205

1206

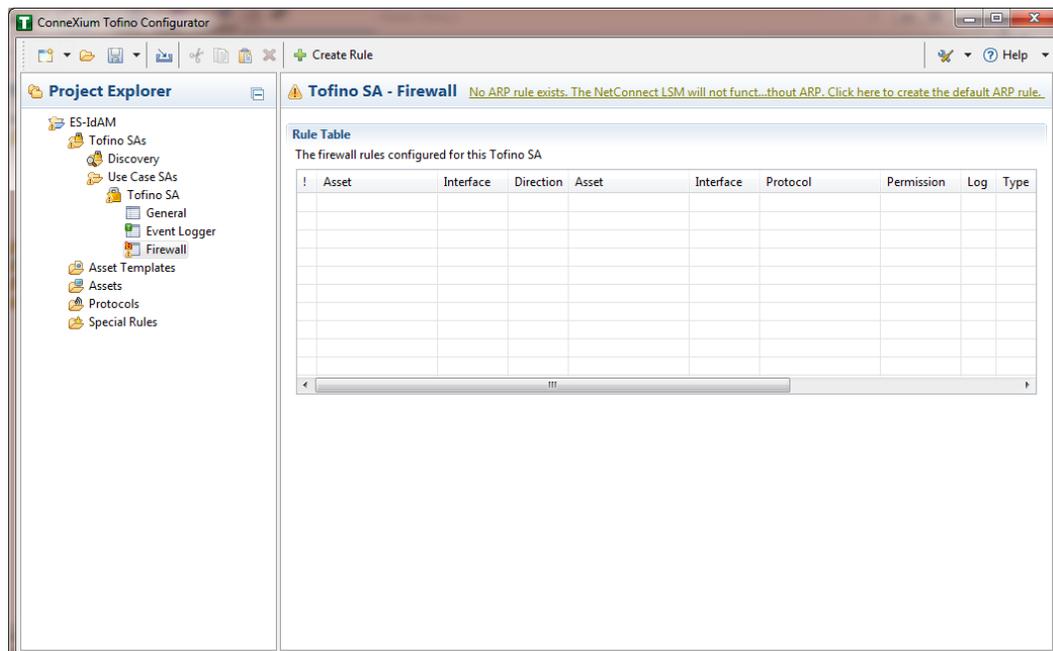
12. Under the Project Explorer frame, click the **dropdown arrow** next to Tofino SAs, then choose the SA created earlier. From there, click **Firewall** in the Project Explorer frame to display current firewall rules. This should currently be empty.

1207

1208

1209

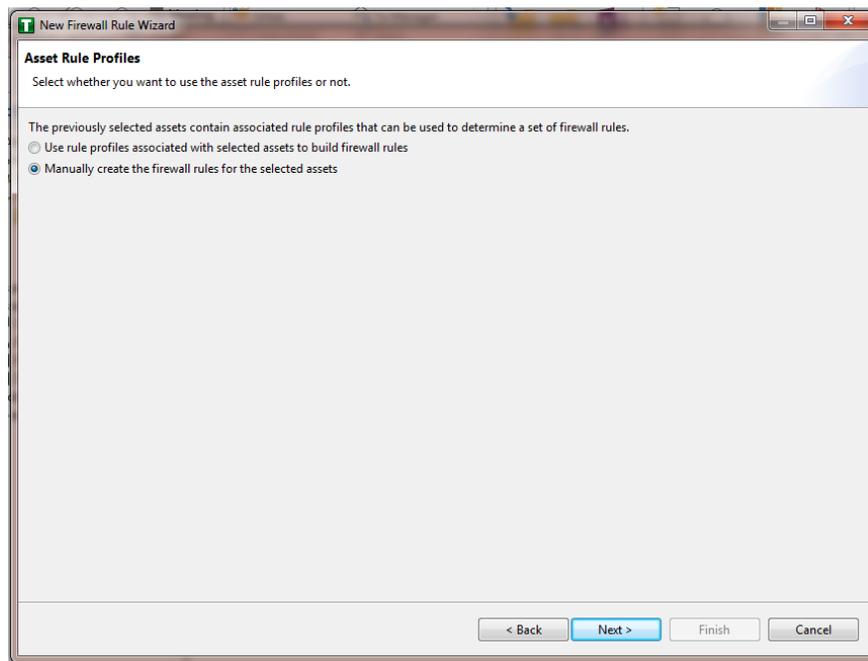
Figure 2.40 Project Explorer Tofino SA Icon



1210

- 1211 13. To create the first rule, click the **+ Create Rule** button above the Tofino SA-Firewall title.  
1212 Then, ensure the **Standard rule** radio button is selected and click **Next**.
- 1213 14. On the next screen, choose the interface for **Asset 1**. This is where traffic originates before  
1214 going into the device.
- 1215 a. Select a source asset and a destination asset from the radio buttons below. Set the  
1216 direction of the traffic using the arrow buttons in the middle. When finished, select  
1217 **Next**.
- 1218 15. In the Asset Rule Profiles window, select the **Manually create the firewall rules for the**  
1219 **selected assets** radio button, then click **Next**.

1220

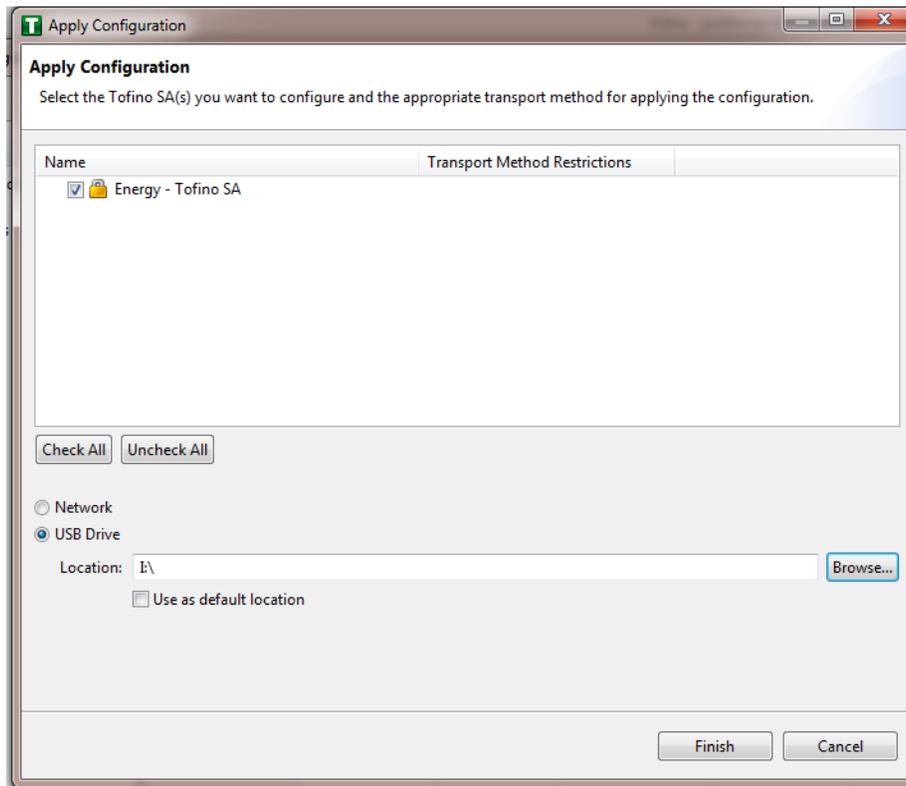
**Figure 2.41 Asset Rule Profiles**

1221

- 1222 16. On the Protocol screen, choose the protocol to be checked against. Then choose the  
1223 **Permission** on the right side of the screen, as well as whether or not to log, then click  
1224 **Finish**.
- 1225 17. After these steps are completed, the firewall rule should be listed in the **Rule Table**.
- 1226 18. Repeat steps for the remainder of the rules needed.
- 1227 19. Finally, click the **Save** button on the menu bar.
- 1228 20. Place a FAT/FAT32 formatted USB device into the computer running the ConneXium Tofino  
1229 Configurator, then right-click **Tofino SAs** in the Project Explorer pane and select **Apply**. If the  
1230 project asks you to save, click **OK**.

1231

Figure 2.42 Apply Configuration Pane



1232

- 1233 21. In the Apply Configuration pane, ensure that your SA is selected in the table at the top, and  
 1234 the **USB Drive** radio button is selected. Browse to the top-level directory of your USB drive,  
 1235 then click **Finish**.
- 1236 22. A popup will notify you of successful completion.
- 1237 23. Ensure the firewall has been powered on and has been running for at least one minute,  
 1238 then plug the USB device used to copy the Tofino configuration to into the USB port on the  
 1239 back of the firewall.
- 1240 24. Press the **Save/Load/Reset** button twice, setting it to the **Load** setting (Pressing once  
 1241 should turn the indicator light to green, pressing it again will change it from green to  
 1242 amber). After a few seconds, the device will begin displaying lights that move from right to  
 1243 left across the LEDs on the back, indicating the configuration is being loaded.
- 1244 25. Once the lights stop moving right to left, wait a few seconds to ensure that the **Fault LED**  
 1245 does not light up. Then remove the USB drive and place it back into the computer running  
 1246 the ConneXium Tofino Configurator software.
- 1247 26. Right-click **Tofino SAs** in the Project Explorer pane and select **Verify**.
- 1248 27. At the Verify Loaded Configuration window, select the **Tofino SA** in the table, and select the  
 1249 **USB Drive** radio button. Then select the USB drive using the **Browse** button. Finally, click  
 1250 **Finish**.
- 1251 28. A popup will notify you of successful verification, and configuration is complete.

### 1252 2.13.3 Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O20) Installation Guide

1253 Refer to the guide on installing the Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O18) in [Section 2.13.2](#).

## 1254 2.14 Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW (E9)

1255 Siemens RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW is a platform that allows remote connections and controls  
1256 from the enterprise side of the lab to the control systems network lab. The product does  
1257 require the Waterfall Secure Bypass to be in the closed position, however CROSSBOW also  
1258 monitors the IXIA Network TAP aggregator Cisco switch for any configuration changes, which  
1259 then prompts an alert to the centralized SIEM.

### 1260 2.14.1 Environment Setup

- 1261 ■ Microsoft Windows Server 2012 (64-bit)
- 1262 ■ 4GB RAM
- 1263 ■ 4 cores
- 1264 ■ 200GB HDD
- 1265 ■ Software:
  - 1266 ● Microsoft SQL Server 2012 (version 11.0.2100.60)

### 1267 2.14.2 Installation Procedure

1268 The following sections detail the installation procedure for the Siemens RUGGEDCOM  
1269 CROSSBOW used in the build.

#### 1270 2.14.2.1 Installing CROSSBOW Database

- 1271 1. On the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server, extract the contents of **SQLScripts.zip** to  
1272 RUGGEDCOMCROSSBOW install directory (e.g. **C:\ProgramFiles\RuggedCom\CrossBow**).
- 1273 2. On a Microsoft SQL server, launch **SQL Server Management Studio** and connect to the SQL  
1274 server as a System Administrator (SA) or administrator.
- 1275 3. In **Object Explorer**, expand the SQL server.
- 1276 4. Right-click **Databases**, and then click **New Database**. The New Database screen will appear.
- 1277 5. In the **Database name** field, type the name of the new database (e.g. **CROSSBOW**).
- 1278 6. Click .... The **Select Database Owner** dialog box will appear.
- 1279 7. Select a user to be the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW database owner in the SQL server. This  
1280 grants the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server full access to the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW  
1281 database.
- 1282 8. If the desired account is unavailable, add a Windows domain user account for  
1283 authenticating against the database. This account must be added to the database as an  
1284 authorized user.

- 1285 9. Click **OK**.
- 1286 10. [Optional] Further configure the database (such as the recovery model) as required based
- 1287 on the chosen database back-up strategy. For more information, contact the local Database
- 1288 Administrator (if available) or visit the Microsoft Developer Network website
- 1289 (<https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb545450>).
- 1290 11. Click **OK**.
- 1291 12. In Object Explorer, expand the **Security** folder, followed by **Logins**.
- 1292 13. Right-click the desired Windows domain account, and then click **Properties**. The **Login**
- 1293 **Properties** dialog box will appear.
- 1294 14. Under **Default database**, select the **CROSSBOW** database, then click **OK**.
- 1295 15. Execute the following scripts in order:
- 1296 a. Crossbow\_db\_create.sql
- 1297 b. Crossbow\_db\_functions.sql
- 1298 c. Crossbow\_db\_initial\_data.sql
- 1299 d. Crossbow\_db\_scripts.sql
- 1300 e. Crossbow\_db\_client\_queries.sql

#### 1301 2.14.2.2 Installing CROSSBOW Server and Services

- 1302 1. Contact Siemens Customer Support and obtain a compressed zip file containing the latest
- 1303 CROSSBOW Server installer for RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW v4.4.
- 1304 2. Open the compressed zip file and double-click **Server Strong Setup.msi**. The CROSSBOW
- 1305 Server with Strong Authentication Setup installation wizard will appear.
- 1306 3. Follow the on-screen instructions to install CROSSBOW Server.

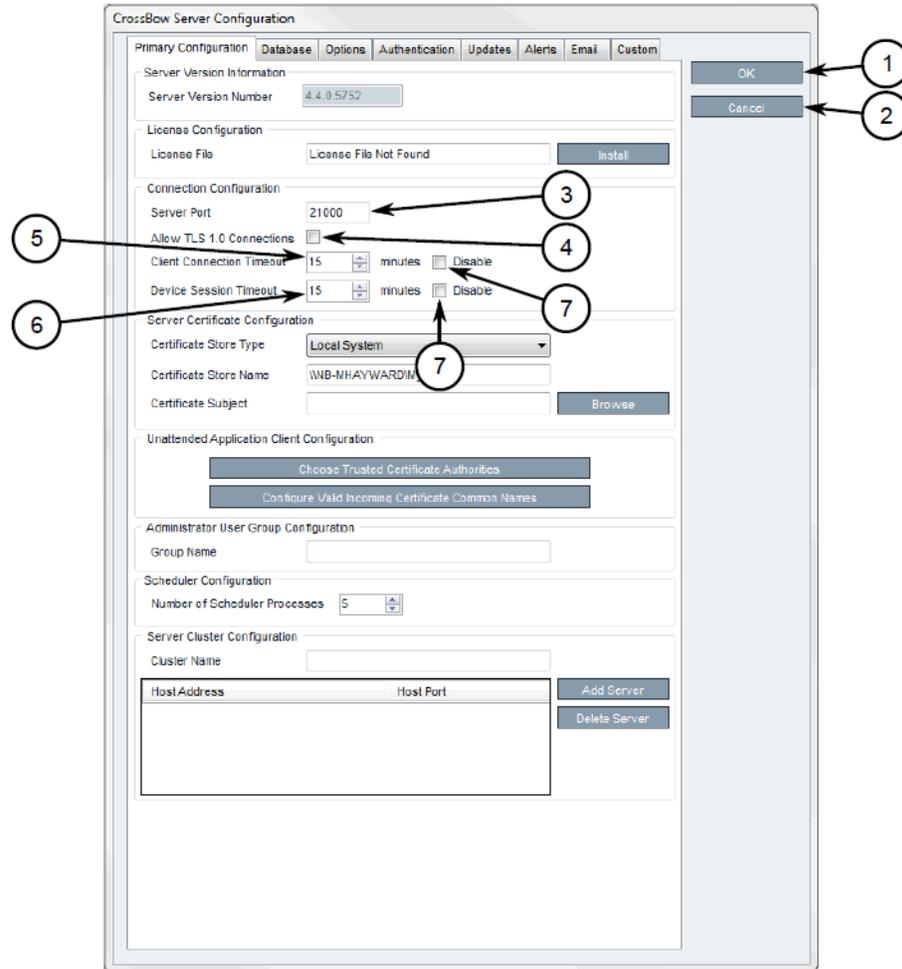
#### 1307 2.14.2.3 Configuring Server Host Connection

- 1308 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server and launch CROSSBOW Server.
- 1309 2. Make sure the **CROSSBOW Main Server** service is **stopped**.
- 1310 3. Under **CrossBow Main Server**, click **Configure**. The CROSSBOW Server Configuration dialog
- 1311 box will appear.

1312

Figure 2.43 CrossBow Server Configuration

1313



1314

1. OK Button

1315

2. Cancel Button

1316

3. Server Port Box

1317

4. Allow TLS 1.0 Connections Check Box

1318

5. Client Connection Timeout Box

1319

6. Device Session Timeout Box

1320

7. Disable Check Box

1321

4. On the Primary Configuration tab, under **Connection Configuration**, type the TCP port number the CROSSBOW Client application will use to connect to the CROSSBOW Server in the **Server Port** field. The default port number is 21000, but can be changed as needed.

1322

1323

1324

5. In the **Client Connection Timeout** field, type or select the maximum amount of time (in minutes) for the server to wait before disconnecting an inactive client. To disable this feature, select **Disable**.

1325

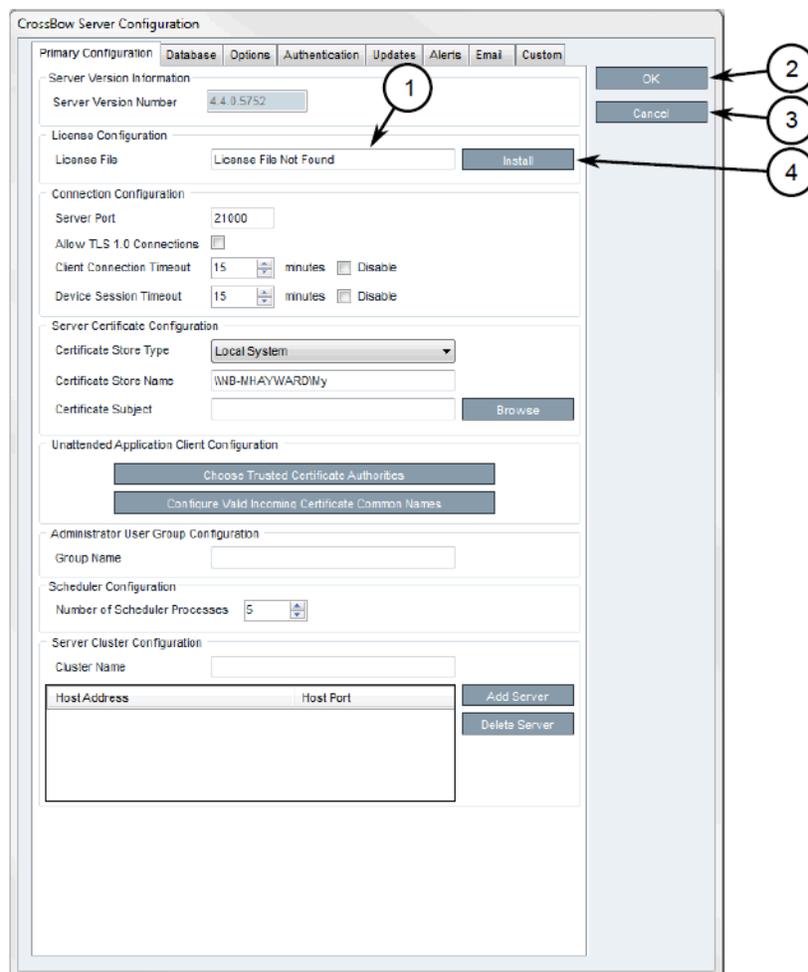
1326

- 1327 6. In the **Device Session Timeout** field, type or select the maximum amount of time (in  
 1328 minutes) for the server to wait before disconnecting an inactive remote device. To disable  
 1329 this feature, select **Disable**.
- 1330 7. Click **OK** to save changes.
- 1331 8. Start the CROSSBOW Main Server service

#### 1332 2.14.2.4 Installing a License File

- 1333 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server and launch CROSSBOW Server.
- 1334 2. Make sure the **CROSSBOW Main Server** service is **stopped**.
- 1335 3. Under **CrossBow Main Server**, click **Configure**. The CrossBow Server Configuration dialog  
 1336 box will appear.

1337 **Figure 2.44 CrossBow Server Configuration**



1338

1339 1. License File Box

1340 2. OK Button

1341

## 3. Cancel Button

1342

## 4. Install Button

1343

4. On the **Primary Configuration** tab, under **License Configuration**, either type the name of the license file (including the system path) or click **Install** and select the desired file.

1344

1345

5. Click **OK** to save changes.

1346

6. Start the CROSSBOW Main Server service.

## 1347 2.14.2.5 Selecting/Installing the CROSSBOW Server Certificate

1348

1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server and launch CROSSBOW Server.

1349

2. Make sure the **CROSSBOW Main Server** service is **stopped**.

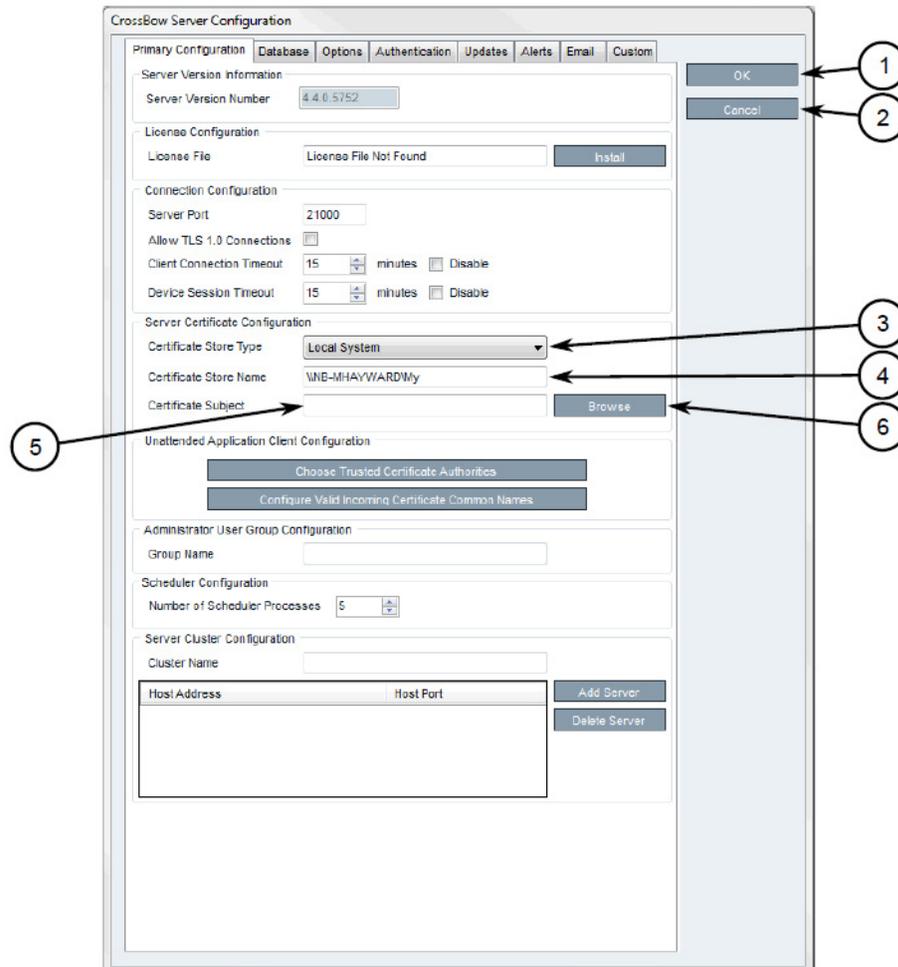
1350

3. Under **CrossBow Main Server**, click **Configure**. The CrossBow Server Configuration dialog box will appear.

1351

1352

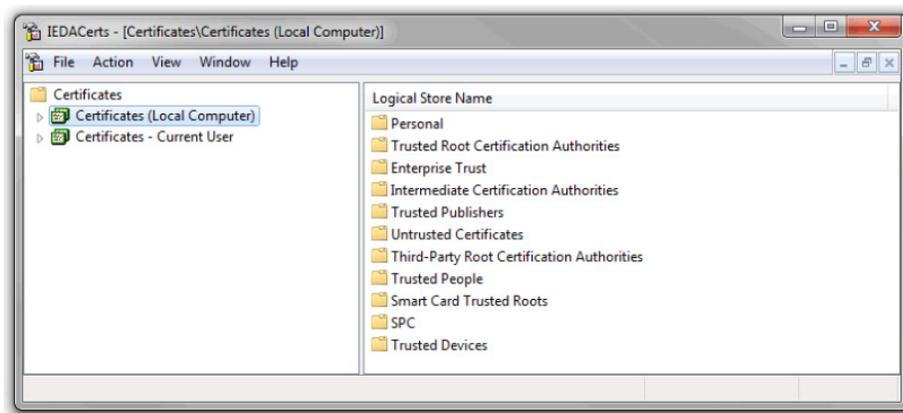
Figure 2.45 CrossBow Server Configuration



1353

- 1354                   1. *OK Button*
- 1355                   2. *Cancel Button*
- 1356                   3. *Certificate Store Type List*
- 1357                   4. *Certificate Store Name Box*
- 1358                   5. *Certificate Subject Box*
- 1359                   6. *Browse Button*
- 1360           4. On the Primary Configuration tab, under **Server Certificate Configuration**, click **Browse**. The
- 1361           Select Server Certificate dialog box will appear.
- 1362           5. Click **Import**. A confirmation dialog box will appear.
- 1363           6. Click **Yes**. A confirmation dialog box will appear, as well as the Microsoft Management
- 1364           Console snap-in.

1365           **Figure 2.46 MMC Snap-In**



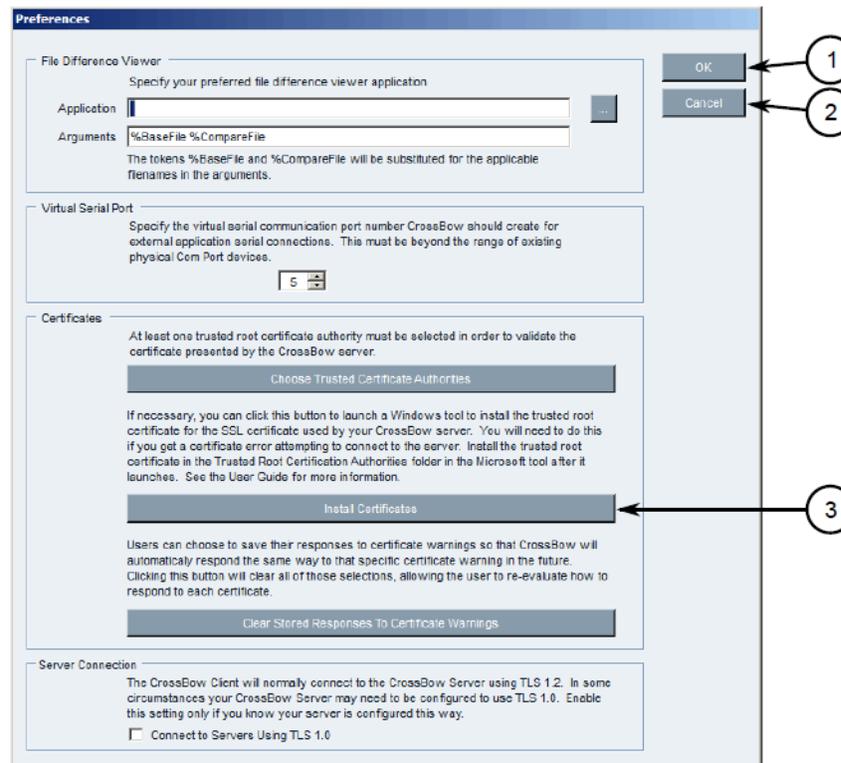
- 1366
- 1367           7. Expand **Certificates (Local Computer)**.
- 1368           8. Right-click either **Personal** or **Trusted Root Certification Authorities**, point to **All Tasks**, then
- 1369           click **Import**. The Certificate Import Wizard will appear.
- 1370           9. Follow the on-screen instructions to import the certificate.
- 1371           10. Close the Microsoft Management Console snap-in.
- 1372           11. Once the certificate is imported, Click **OK** to close the dialog box.
- 1373           12. On the Select Server Certificate dialog box, select the certificate from the list and click **OK**.
- 1374           The certificate name appears in the **Certificate Subject** field.
- 1375           13. Click **OK** to save changes.
- 1376           14. Start the CROSSBOW Main Server service.

#### 1377 2.14.2.6 Verifying/Installing the CROSSBOW Client CA Certificate

- 1378           1. Launch CROSSBOW Client, but do not connect to the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server.
- 1379           2. On the toolbar, click **File**, then click **Preferences**. The Preferences dialog box will appear.

1380

Figure 2.47 Preferences dialog box



1381

1. OK Button

1382

2. Cancel Button

1383

3. Install Certificates Button

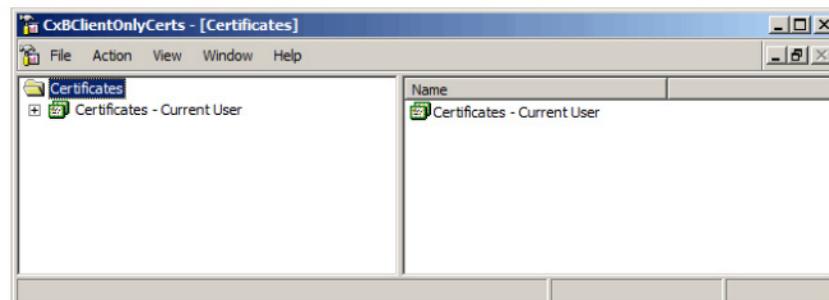
1384

3. Click **Install Certificates**. The CxBClientOnlyCerts snap-in will appear.

1385

1386

Figure 2.48 CxBClientOnlyCerts Snap-in



1387

4. In the left pane, navigate to **Certificates - Current User ->Trusted Root Certification Authorities -> Certificates**.
5. Verify the appropriate CA certificate is listed in the right pane.
6. If the certificate is not listed, proceed to the next step.

1388

1389

1390

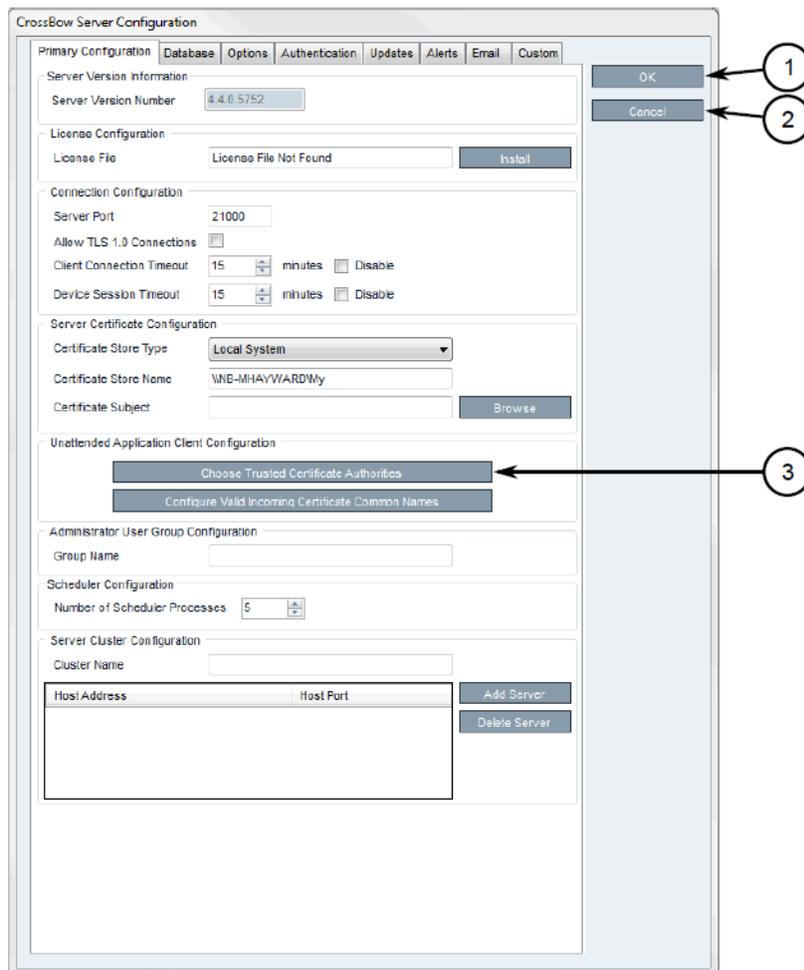
1391

- 1392 7. Right-click **Trusted Root Certification Authorities**, point to **All Tasks**, then click **Import**. The  
 1393 Certificate Import Wizard will appear.
- 1394 8. Follow the on-screen instructions to import a new CA certificate.
- 1395 9. Close the snap-in.

### 1396 2.14.2.7 Select a Trusted CA for the CROSSBOW Server

- 1397 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server and launch CROSSBOW Server.
- 1398 2. Make sure the **CROSSBOW Main Server** service is **stopped**.
- 1399 3. Under **CrossBow Main Server**, click **Configure**. The CrossBow Server Configuration dialog  
 1400 box will appear.

1401 **Figure 2.49 CrossBow Server Configuration**



1402

1. *OK Button*

1403

2. *Cancel Button*

1404

### 3. Choose Trusted Certificate Authorities Button

1405  
1406  
1407  
1408  
1409  
1410  
1411  
1412

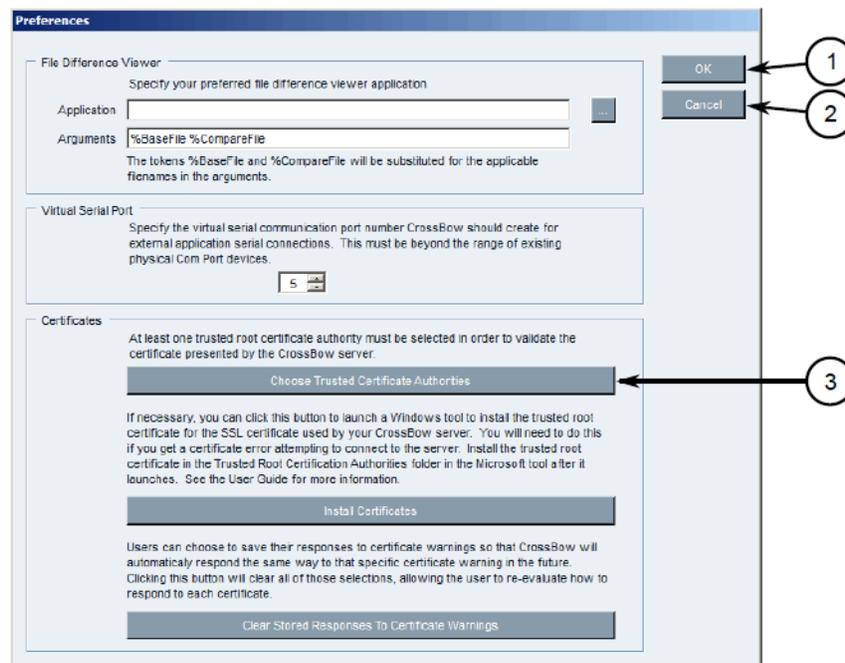
4. Click **Choose Trusted Certificate Authorities**. A dialog box will appear.
5. [Optional] Filter the list of CAs by selecting either **Show Root Certificate Authorities**, **Show Intermediate Certificate Authorities** and/or **Show Third Party Certificate Authorities**.
6. Select one or more CAs from the list or select **Specify a certificate authority** and define the CA in the box below.
7. Click **OK** to save changes.
8. Start the CROSSBOW Main Server service.

#### 2.14.2.8 Selecting a Trusted CA for a CROSSBOW Client

1413  
1414  
1415  
1416

1. Launch CROSSBOW Client, but do not connect to the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server.
2. On the toolbar, select **File**, then click **Preferences**. The Preferences dialog box will appear.

Figure 2.50 Preference dialog box



1417  
1418  
1419  
1420  
1421  
1422  
1423

1. **OK Button**

2. **Cancel Button**

3. **Choose Trusted Certificate Authorities Button**

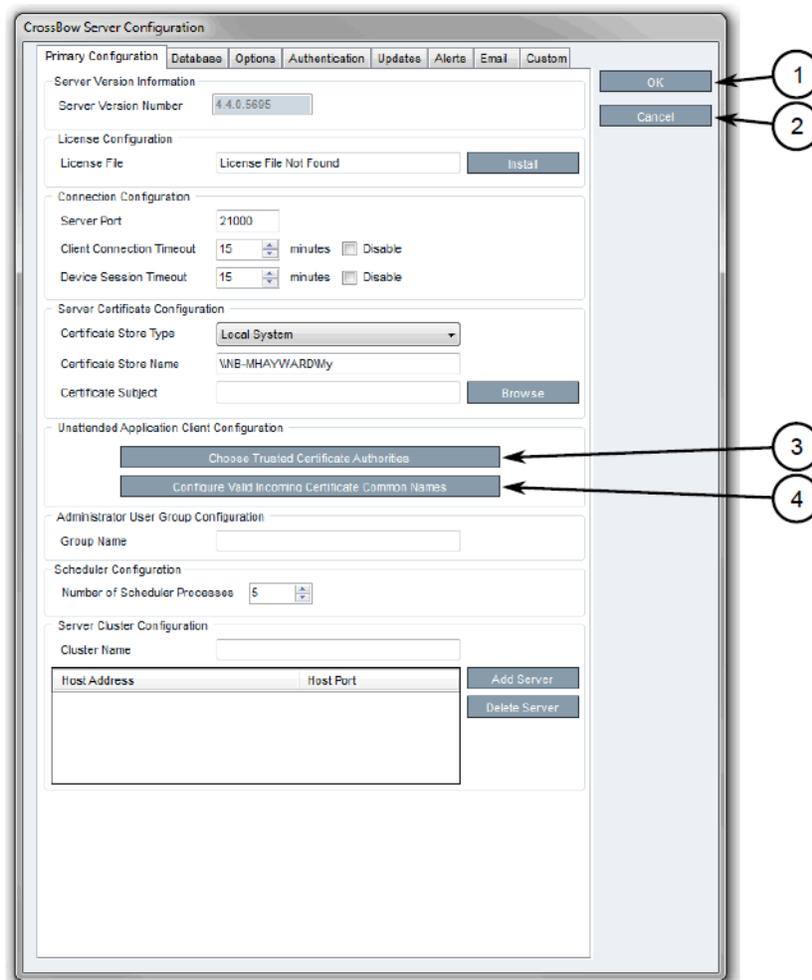
3. Click **Choose Trusted Certificate Authorities**. A dialog box will appear.
4. [Optional] Filter the list of CAs by selecting either **Show Root Certificate Authorities**, **Show Intermediate Certificate Authorities** and/or **Show Third Party Certificate Authorities**.

- 1424 5. Select one or more CAs from the list or select **Specify a certificate authority** and define the  
1425 CA in the box below.  
1426 6. Click **OK** to save changes.

### 1427 2.14.2.9 Adding a Common Name

- 1428 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server and launch CROSSBOW Server.  
1429 2. Make sure the **CROSSBOW Main Server** service is **stopped**.  
1430 3. Under **CROSSBOW Main Server**, click **Configure**. The CROSSBOW Server Configuration  
1431 dialog box will appear.

1432 **Figure 2.51 CROSSBOW Server Configuration**



1433

1434 1. *OK Button*

1435 2. *Cancel Button*

1436 3. *Choose Trusted Certificate Authorities Button*

#### 4. Configure Valid Incoming Certificate Common Names Button

- 1437
- 1438 4. On the **Primary Configuration** tab, under **Unattended Application Client Configuration**,
- 1439 click **Configure Valid Incoming Certificate Common Names**. The Incoming Certificate
- 1440 Common Name dialog box will appear.
- 1441 5. Click **Add Name**. The Common Name dialog box will appear.
- 1442 6. In the **Common Name** box, type the common name, then click **OK** to close the dialog box.
- 1443 7. Click **OK**.
- 1444 8. Start the CROSSBOW Main Server service.

#### 1445 2.14.2.10 Managing the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW Certificates and Keys

1446 The following references the RUGGEDCOM RX1400 and RX1511 web interface:

- 1447 1. Navigate to **security -> crypto -> ca** and click **<Add ca>**. The Key Settings form will appear.
- 1448 2. Configure the following parameter(s) as required:
- 1449 a. name
- 1450 3. Click **Add**. The CA form will appear.

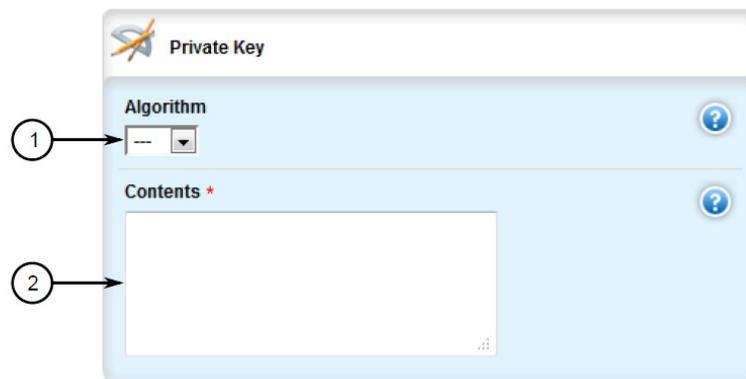
1451 **Figure 2.52 VPN Certificate Form**

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Certificate". It has a large text area labeled "Contents \*" with a question mark icon to its right. Below this are two dropdown menus: "Private Key Name" and "CA Name", each with a question mark icon to its right. Three numbered callouts (1, 2, and 3) are placed to the left of the form, with arrows pointing to the "Contents \*" area, the "Private Key Name" dropdown, and the "CA Name" dropdown respectively.

- 1452
- 1453 1. *Contents Box*
- 1454 2. *Private Key Name List*
- 1455 3. *CA Certificate Name List*
- 1456 4. Copy the contents of the CA certificate into the **Key Cert Sign Certificate** field.
- 1457 5. Add the associated Certificate Revocation List (CRL).

- 1458 6. Navigate to **security -> crypto -> private-key** and click **<Add private-key>**. The Key Settings  
1459 form will appear.
- 1460 7. In the Key Settings form, configure the following parameters as required:  
1461 a. name
- 1462 8. Click **Add** to create the new private key. The Private Key form will appear.

1463 **Figure 2.53 VPN Private Key Form**



1464

1. Algorithm List

1465

2. Contents Box

1466

- 1467 9. In the Private Key form, configure the following parameters as required:
- 1468 a. Algorithm
- 1469 b. Contents

#### 1470 2.14.2.11 Managing the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW Application on RX1501

- 1471 To enable or disable communication with a RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW system, do the following:
- 1472 1. Change the mode to **Edit Private** or **Edit Exclusive**.
- 1473 2. Navigate to **apps -> crossbow**. The CROSSBOW form will appear.
- 1474 3. Ensure that the **Enabled** checkbox is selected.
- 1475 4. Navigate to **apps -> crossbow -> client-connection**. The Client Connection Info form will  
1476 appear.

1477

Figure 2.54 Client Connection Info

1478

1. IP Address Box

1479

2. Port Box

1480

5. Configure the following parameter(s) as required:

1481

a. ipaddr

1482

b. port

1483

6. Navigate to **apps -> crossbow -> sac-connection**. The SAC Connection List will appear.

1484

1485

Figure 2.55 SAC Connection List

IP Address	SAM Common Name	Port		
10.200.20.172	crossbowsam	21000	Edit	Delete
10.200.22.232	crossbowserver	21000	Edit	Delete

Add

1486

1. Name Box

1487

2. IP Address Box

1488

3. Port Box

1489

7. Navigate to **apps -> crossbow -> sac-connection -> Add connection-list**. The Key Settings form will appear.

1490

1491

- 1492 8. Configure the following parameter(s) as required:
- 1493 a. sam-ipaddr
- 1494 9. Click Add. The Connection List form will appear.

1495 **Figure 2.56 Connection List**

The screenshot shows a web form for configuring a connection. The title bar reads '/apps/crossbow/sac-connection/connection-list'. Below the title bar, there are two main sections. The first section is labeled 'SAM Common Name \*' and contains a text input field with the value 'crossbowsam'. To the right of this field is a blue circular icon with a white question mark. A circled number '1' with an arrow points to this field. The second section is labeled 'Port \*' and contains a text input field with the value '21000'. Below this field, the text '(21000)' is displayed. To the right of this field is another blue circular icon with a white question mark. A circled number '2' with an arrow points to this field.

1496

1497 1. SAM Common Name Box

1498

1498 2. Port Box

1499

- 1499 10. Configure the following parameter(s) as required:

1500

a. sam-name

1501

b. sam-port

1502

- 1502 11. Navigate to **apps -> crossbow -> certificate**. The Certificates Info forms will appear.

1503 **Figure 2.57 Certificates Info**

The screenshot shows a web form titled 'Certificates Info'. Below the title bar, there is a dropdown menu labeled 'Certificate / Private Key'. The dropdown menu is currently open, showing the selected value 'Crossbow\_certificate / Crossbow\_privatekey'. To the right of the dropdown menu, there is a yellow bell icon and a blue circular icon with a white question mark. A circled number '1' with an arrow points to the dropdown menu.

1504

1505 1. Certificate/Private Key List

1506

- 1506 12. Configure the following parameters as required:

1507

a. cert

1508

b. cert-private-key

1509

- 1509 13. Navigate to **apps -> crossbow -> certificate -> ca-cert-list** and click **<Add ca-cert-list>**. The Key Settings form will appear.

1510

1511

- 1511 14. Configure the following parameter(s) as required:

- 1512 a. name
- 1513 15. Click **Commit** to save the changes or click **Revert All** to abort. A confirmation dialog box will
- 1514 appear. Click **OK** to proceed.
- 1515 16. Click **Exit Transaction** or continue making changes.

### 1516 2.14.2.12 Viewing the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW Log

- 1517 1. Navigate to **apps -> crossbow -> status** and click **log** in the menu. The Trigger Action form
- 1518 will appear.

1519 **Figure 2.58 Trigger Action**



1520

#### 1521 1. Perform Button

1521

- 1522 2. Click **Perform**. The Log form will appear.

1523 **Figure 2.59 Status Log**

```

Crossbow.log *
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:28 ruggedcom crossbow[23714]: ssl2tcp (ClientConn)[1208114224], elan_init_ctx():179: Unable to load
d cert chain file '/etc/certs/cxb_test_generated_cert.pem'.
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:28 ruggedcom crossbow[23714]: ssl2tcp (ClientConn)[1208114224], gethostbyname() failed using ip= -
> Resource temporarily unavailable
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:28 ruggedcom crossbow[23714]: ssl2tcp (ClientConn)[1208114224], Create socket error: :21000 ->Reso
urce temporarily unavailable
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:28 ruggedcom crossbow[23714]: ssl2tcp (ClientConn)[1208114224], main():193: Could not create SERVE
R Socket (errno 11: Resource temporarily unavailable): fd: -1, bailing.
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:29 ruggedcom crossbow[23715]: ssl2tcp (MutualAuth)[1208114224], Log Level set to 2
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:29 ruggedcom crossbow[23715]: ssl2tcp (MutualAuth)[1208114224], elan_init_security():100: Unable
to load random seed file.
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:29 ruggedcom crossbow[23715]: ssl2tcp (MutualAuth)[1208114224], elan_init_ctx():179: Unable to loa
d cert chain file '/etc/certs/cxb_test_generated_cert.pem'.
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:29 ruggedcom crossbow[23715]: ssl2tcp (MutualAuth)[1208114224], gethostbyname() failed using ip= -
> Resource temporarily unavailable
/var/log/syslog:Jan 31 15:06:29 ruggedcom crossbow[23715]: ssl2tcp (MutualAuth)[1208114224], Create socket error: :21000 ->Reso

```

1524

### 1525 2.14.2.13 Managing Station Access Controllers (SACs)

- 1526 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW client workstation, launch CROSSBOW Client, and
- 1527 login as a user with the necessary administrative privileges. The Field Layout tab appears by
- 1528 default.
- 1529 2. In the right pane, right-click the associated facility or gateway and click **Add Station Access**
- 1530 **Controller**. The Station Access Controller Properties dialog box will appear.

1531

**Figure 2.60 Station Access Controller Properties**

**Station Access Controller Properties**

Identification | Connection | Login | NERC CIP

This tab allows the setting of identification properties for this device

Name:

Description:

Status:

Custom Fields

Line #	
Test	
Voltage	

OK Cancel

1532

1533

*1. Name Box*

1534

*2. Description Box*

1535

*3. Status List*

1536

*4. Custom Fields*

1537

*5. OK Button*

1538

*6. Cancel Button*

1539

3. Configure the identification properties (e.g. name, description, etc.) for the SAC.

1540

**Figure 2.61 SAC Property Configuration - Identification**

**Station Access Controller Properties**

Identification | Connection | Login | NERC CIP

This tab allows the setting of identification properties for this device

Name:

Description:

Status:

Custom Fields

Line #	
Test	
Voltage	

OK Cancel

1541

*1. Name Box*

1542

*2. Description Box*

1543

*3. Status List*

1544

*4. Custom Fields*

1545

*5. OK Button*

1546

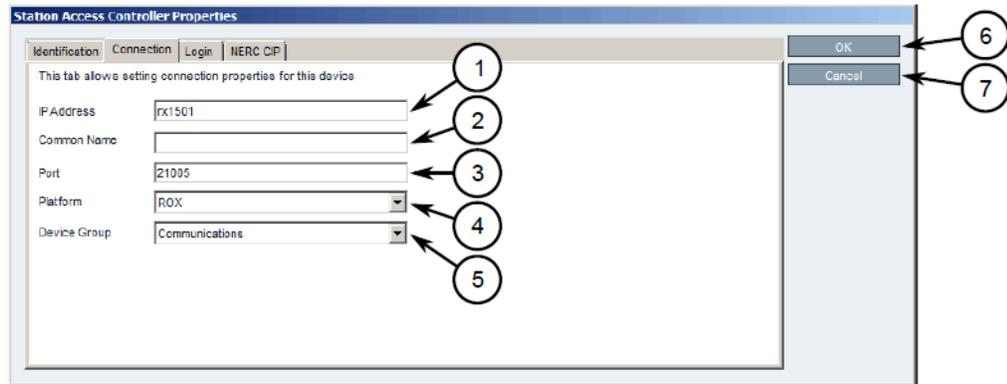
*6. Cancel Button*

1547

1548 4. Configure the connection properties (e.g. IP address, port, platform, etc.) for the SAC.

1549

**Figure 2.62 SAC Property Configuration - Connection**



1550

1. IP Address Box

1551

2. Common Name Box

1552

3. Port Box

1553

4. Platform List

1554

5. Device Group

1555

6. OK Button

1556

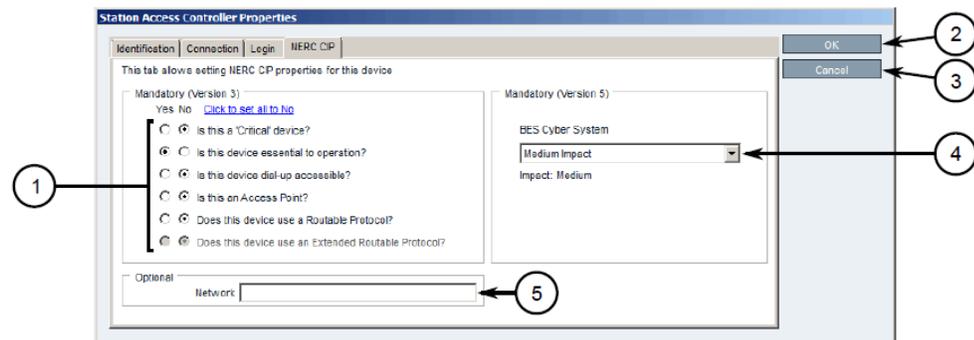
7. Cancel Button

1557

1558 5. Configure the NERC CIP properties for the SAC.

1559

**Figure 2.63 SAC Property Configuration - NERC CIP**



1560

1. Questions

1561

2. Network Box

1562

3. OK Button

1563

4. Cancel Button

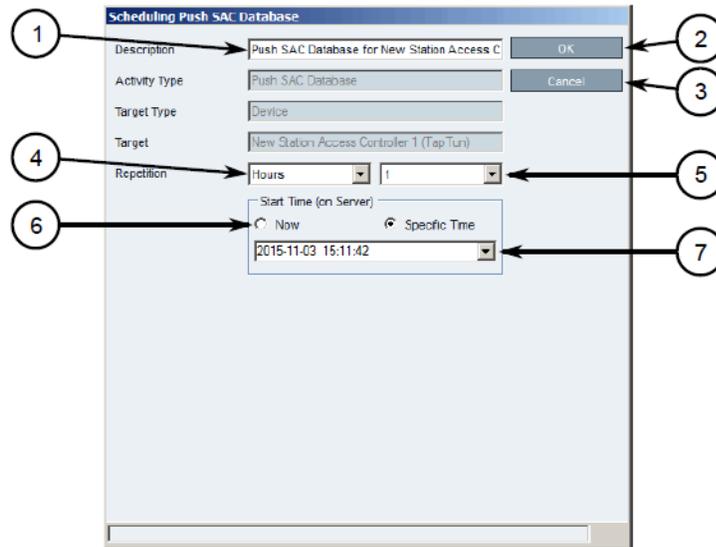
1564

5. BES Cyber System List

1565

## 1566 2.14.2.14 Updating the SAC Database

- 1567 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW client workstation, launch CROSSBOW Client, and  
 1568 login as a user with the necessary administrative privileges. Make sure to enter the host  
 1569 name and port number for the SAC during the login process.
- 1570 2. Search for the SAC's device family on the **Devices** tab.
- 1571 3. Right-click the **Station Access Controller** device family, point to **Special Operations**, then  
 1572 click **Push SAC Database**. The Scheduling Push SAC Database dialog box will appear.

1573 **Figure 2.64 Scheduling Push SAC Database**

1574

1575 1. *Description Box*1576 2. *OK Button*1577 3. *Cancel Button*1578 4. *Repetition Lists*1579 5. *Start Time Options*1580 6. *Start Time Box*

- 1581 4. [Optional] Under **Description**, type a description for the operation. Include such details as  
 1582 the affected target, the purpose of the operation, etc. This description will appear in the list  
 1583 of scheduled operations.
- 1584 5. Under **Repetition**, select the interval and value (if applicable).
- 1585 6. Under **Start Time (On Server)**, select **Now** or **Specific Time**.
- 1586 7. Click **OK** to save changes. The operation will commence at the selected time.

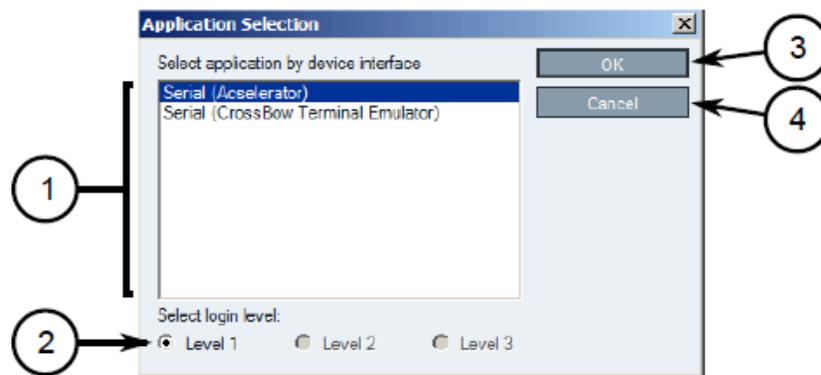
### 1587 2.14.2.15 Managing Devices and Gateways

- 1588 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW client workstation, launch CROSSBOW Client, and  
1589 login as a user with the necessary administrative privileges.
- 1590 2. On the **Field Layout** tab, right-click the desired facility or gateway and click either **Add**  
1591 **Device**, **Add Gateway**, or **Add Subordinate Gateway (gateways only)**. The Device  
1592 Properties or Gateway Properties dialog box will appear.
- 1593 3. Configure the identification properties (e.g. name, description, etc.) for the device/gateway.
- 1594 4. Configure the connection properties (e.g. host name, user names, passwords, etc.) for the  
1595 device/gateway.
- 1596 5. Configure the interfaces available for the device/gateway.
- 1597 6. Enable or disable the applications available for the device/gateway.
- 1598 7. Configure the NERC CIP properties for the device/gateway.
- 1599 8. Configure any advanced parameters associated with the device/gateway.
- 1600 9. Click **OK** to save changes.

### 1601 2.14.2.16 Connecting to a Device/Gateway

- 1602 1. Access the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW client workstation, launch CROSSBOW Client, and  
1603 login as a user with the necessary administrative privileges.
- 1604 2. If connecting to the device/gateway via a Station Access Controller, make sure to enter the  
1605 host name and port number for the SAC during the login process. Otherwise, provide the  
1606 host name and port number for the RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW server.
- 1607 3. Search for the desired device/gateway on the **Field Layout** or **Devices** tab by either facility  
1608 or device type.
- 1609 4. Right-click the device/gateway and then click either **Connect (devices)** or **Connect to**  
1610 **Gateway (gateways)**. The Application Selection dialog box will appear.

1611 **Figure 2.65 Application Selection dialog**



1612  
1613 *1. Available Applications*

- 1614                   2. *Select Login Level Options*
- 1615                   3. *OK Button*
- 1616                   4. *Cancel Button*
- 1617                   5. Select an application to connect to the device's interface.
- 1618                   6. Under **Select login level**, select the login level to use when connecting to the device.
- 1619                   7. Click **OK**. RUGGEDCOM CROSSBOW will attempt to connect to the device. Review the  
1620                   Messages pane for details.
- 1621                   8. Once connected, the device/gateway and the connection status are displayed in the **Device**  
1622                   **Connection History** pane.
- 1623                   9. When the application launches, if required, enter the localhost IP address or the real IP  
1624                   address of the end-device or gateway, followed by the port number.

## 1625 **2.15 Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400 (E1)**

1626                   The Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400 device is used on the enterprise side of the lab, and creates  
1627                   an always-on VPN connection to the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501, located on the boundary  
1628                   of the control network lab.

### 1629 **2.15.1 Environment Setup**

1630                   Requirements for installation:

- 1631                   ■ PC/laptop with Ethernet port
- 1632                   ■ CAT5 or higher Ethernet cables
- 1633                   ■ RUGGEDCOM VPN Device
- 1634                   ■ Any type of terminal emulator
- 1635                   ■ Web browser
- 1636                   ■ When connecting the device to the network, the NCCoE used switch.0001 as the WAN port  
1637                   and switch.0010 as the LAN port connected to the local network

### 1638 **2.15.2 Installation Procedure**

- 1639                   1. After powering on the device, connect to the IP address the device supplies itself via a web  
1640                   browser. The connection will most likely require an interim switch for connecting, but this  
1641                   varies between cases.
- 1642                   2. You should be presented with the following screen:

1643

Figure 2.66 RUGGEDCOM Web Login



1644

1645

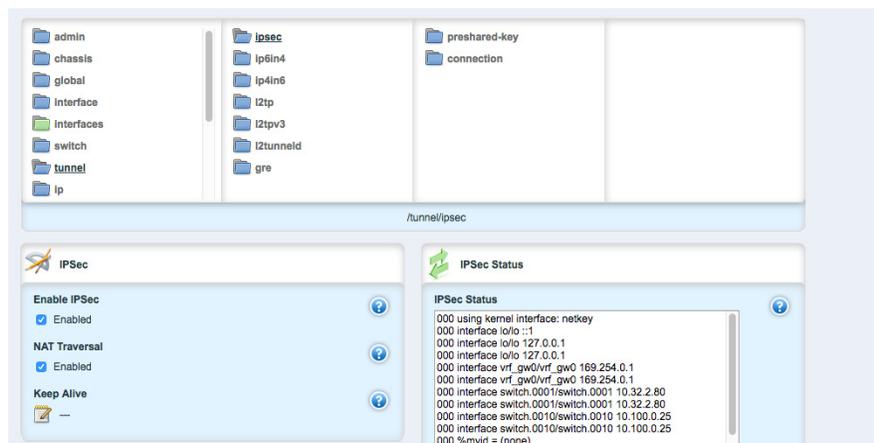
3. Once logged in, click the link for **Edit Private** to go into Edit mode.

1646

4. Navigate to **tunnel -> ipsec** and check the boxes for **Enable IPsec** and **NAT Traversal**.

1647

Figure 2.67 Enable IPsec and NAT Traversal



1648

1649

5. Click **preshared-key**, then **<Add preshared-key>**.

1650

6. In the **Remote Address** field, type the remote IP address (the cogeneration plant's IP address).

1651

1652

7. In the **Local Address** field, type the local IP address (the enterprise network).

1653

8. Click **Add**.

1654

9. Click the newly created entry under the preshared-key folder.

1655

10. Under **Secret Key**, create a new secret key that will be shared between devices.

1656

11. Under **ipsec->connection**, click **<Add connection>** to create a new connection

1657

12. Fill in a name for **Connection Name**, then click **Add**.

- 1658 13. Click on the new connection, and click the **Enable** checkbox for **Dead Peer Detect**.
- 1659 14. Ensure that the settings under **Dead Peer Detect** are:
- 1660 a. Interval: **30**
  - 1661 b. Timeout: **120**
  - 1662 c. Action: **Restart**
- 1663 15. Under **Connection**, set the following parameters:
- 1664 a. Startup Operation: **start**
  - 1665 b. Authenticate By: **secret**
  - 1666 c. Connection Type: **tunnel**
  - 1667 d. Address-family: **ipv4**
  - 1668 e. Perfect Forward Secrecy: **yes**
  - 1669 f. SA Lifetime: **default**
  - 1670 g. IKE Lifetime: **default**
  - 1671 h. L2TP: **Unchecked (disabled)**
  - 1672 i. Monitor Interface: **switch.0001**
- 1673 16. In the top window row, select the folder **ike** and click **<Add algorithm>**.
- 1674 17. Under **Key settings**, ensure the following parameters and click **Add**:
- 1675 a. Cipher Algorithm: **aes256**
  - 1676 b. Hash Method: **sha1**
  - 1677 c. Modpgroup: **modp8192**
- 1678 18. Going back to the top window row, select the **esp** folder directly underneath **ike**, then
- 1679 select **algorithm** and click **<Add algorithm>**.
- 1680 19. Under **Key settings**, ensure the following parameters and click **Add**:
- 1681 a. Cipher Algorithm: **aes256**
  - 1682 b. Hash Method: **sha1**
- 1683 20. Going back to the top window row, select **left** under **esp**.
- 1684 21. Under **Public IP Address**, ensure **Type** is **address**, then type the IP address into the
- 1685 **Hostname** or **IP Address** field.
- 1686 22. Going back to the top window row, select **subnet** and click **<Add subnet>**.
- 1687 23. Under **Key Settings**, in the **Subnet Address** field, type the local subnet on the inside of the
- 1688 RX1400 in the box (lab used 10.100.0.0/16) and click **Add**.
- 1689 24. Going back to the top window row, select **right** under **left**.
- 1690 25. Under **Public IP Address**, ensure **Type** is **address**, then type the remote VPN IP Address into
- 1691 the **Hostname** or **IP Address** field.
- 1692 26. Under the **Right** heading, for **NAT Traversal Negotiation Method**, select **rfc-3947**.

- 1693 27. Going back to the top window row, select **subnet**, then click **<Add subnet>**.
- 1694 28. Under **Key Settings**, in the **Subnet Address** field, type the remote subnet on the inside of
- 1695 the remote VPN in the box (lab used 172.19.0.0/16) and click **Add**.
- 1696 29. Going back to the beginning of the top row, ensure that **interfaces->ip->switch.0001->ipv4**
- 1697 contains a folder named after the externally facing network IP address.
- 1698 30. Ensure that **interface->ip->switch.0010->ipv4** contains a folder named after the internal
- 1699 network (lab used 10.100.0.0/16).

## 1700 2.16 Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1)

1701 The Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 device is used on the boundary of the control network lab,

1702 and creates an always-on VPN connection to the Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1400, located on the

1703 inside the enterprise network lab.

### 1704 2.16.1 Siemens RUGGEDCOM RX1501 (O1) Installation Guide

1705 The instructions for the installation of the RUGGEDCOM RX1501 are very similar to those in

1706 [Section 2.15](#), with the following additional information:

- 1707 1. Ensure that the shared key used in this installation is the same as the one used in the
- 1708 previous installation.
- 1709 2. The remote IPs and local IPs will be different for this installation, as they are relative to the
- 1710 device.
- 1711 3. **NAT Traversal Negotiation Method** will be on the **left** menu option (as opposed to the **right**
- 1712 listed earlier), and must be the same value (e.g., rfc-3947).

## 1713 2.17 TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (E6, O5, O9)

1714 TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks creates multiple consoles (both GUI- and terminal-based) that

1715 allow connections through a web interface to internal devices, utilizing a protocol break to

1716 separate connections. ConsoleWorks is also utilized to normalize syslogs from the control

1717 network before sending them to the SIEM.

1718 For further information, see <https://www.tditechnologies.com/products/consoleworks-server>.

### 1719 2.17.1 System Environment

1720 The system that was set up to run this application was a fully updated (as of 4/20/2016) CentOS

1721 7 Operating System with the following hardware specifications:

- 1722 ■ 4GB RAM
- 1723 ■ 500GB HDD
- 1724 ■ 2 NICs

- 1725 ■ This install required a preconfigured network where one NIC was located on the WAN side  
1726 (connected to the Waterfall Secure Bypass) and the other was connected to the Dell R620  
1727 ESXi server

1728 Other requirements:

- 1729 ■ ConsoleWorks install media (a CD was used in the build)
- 1730 • ConsoleWorksSSL-<version>.rpm
  - 1731 • ConsoleWorks\_gui\_gateway-<version>.rpm
- 1732 ■ ConsoleWorks license keys (TDI\_Licenses.tar.gz)
- 1733 ■ Software installation command:
- 1734 `yum install uuid libbpng12 libvncserver`

## 1735 2.17.2 Installation

1736 As Root:

- 1737 1. Place ConsoleWorks Media into the system (assuming from here on that the media is in the  
1738 form of a CD).
- 1739 2. `mount /dev/sr0 /mnt/cdrom`
- 1740 3. `mkdir /tmp/consoleworks`
- 1741 4. `cp /mnt/cdrom/consolew.rpm /tmp/consoleworks/consolew.rpm`
- 1742 5. `rpm -ivh /tmp/consoleworks/ConsoleWorksSSL-<version>.rpm`
- 1743 6. `mkdir /tmp/consoleworkskeys/`
- 1744 7. Copy ConsoleWorks keys to /tmp/consoleworkskeys/
- 1745 8. `cd /tmp/consoleworkskeys/`
- 1746 9. `tar xzf TDI_Licenses.tar.gz`
- 1747 10. `cp /tmp/consoleworkskeys* /etc/TDI_licenses/`
- 1748 11. `/opt/ConsoleWorks/bin/cw_add_invo`
- 1749 12. **Accept** the License Terms.
- 1750 13. Press **Enter** to continue.
- 1751 14. Name the instance of ConsoleWorks.
- 1752 15. Press **Enter** to accept default port (5176).
- 1753 16. Press **N** to deny SYSLOG listening.
- 1754 17. Press **Enter** to accept parameters entered.
- 1755 18. Press **Enter** to return to /opt/ConsoleWorks/bin/cw\_add\_invo.
- 1756 19. `rpm -ivh /tmp/consoleworks/ConsoleWorks_gui_gateway-version>.rpm`
- 1757 20. `/opt/gui_gateway/install_local.sh`
- 1758 21. `/opt/ConsoleWorks/bin/cw_start <invocation name created early>`
- 1759 22. `service gui_gatewayd start`

### 1760 2.17.3 Usage

- 1761 1. Open a browser and navigate to `https://<ConsoleWorksIP>:5176`.
- 1762 2. Log in with Username: **console\_manager**, Password: **Setup**.
- 1763 3. Change the default password.
- 1764 4. Choose **Register Now**.

#### 1765 2.17.3.1 Initial Configuration

1766 All instructions below start with a menu on the sidebar.

- 1767 1. Tags
  - 1768 a. **Security->Tags->Add**
    - 1769 i. Set **Name**.
    - 1770 ii. Click **Save**.
  - 1771 2. Profiles
    - 1772 a. **Users->Profiles->Add**
      - 1773 i. Set **Name**.
      - 1774 ii. Select **Tag**.
      - 1775 iii. Click **Save**.
  - 1776 3. Users
    - 1777 a. **Users->Add**
      - 1778 i. Set **Name**.
      - 1779 ii. Set **Password**.
      - 1780 iii. Set **Profile**.
      - 1781 iv. Set **Tag**.
      - 1782 v. Click **Save**.

#### 1783 2.17.3.2 Graphical Connections

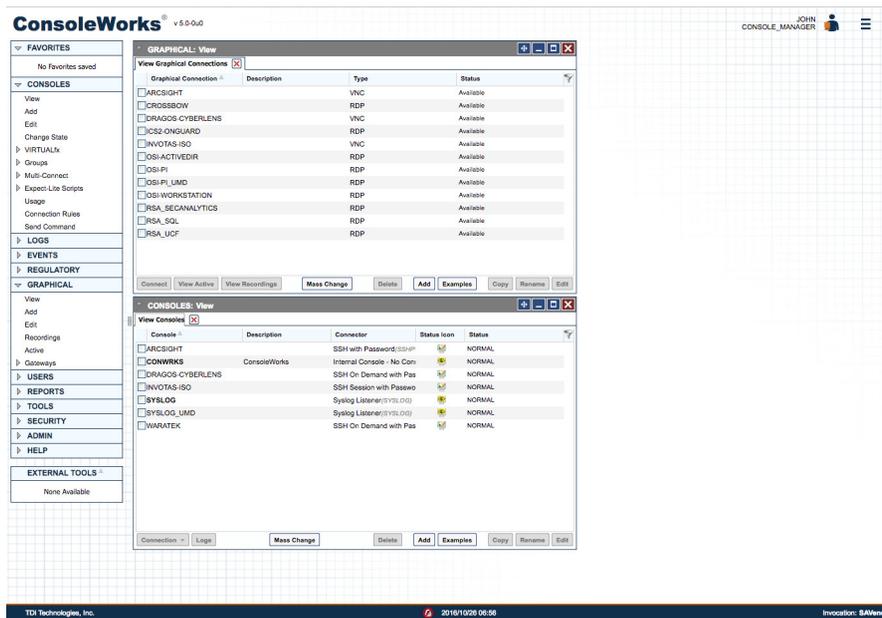
1784 Use the following steps to set up graphical connections (specifically VNC):

- 1785 1. Graphical Gateway:
  - 1786 a. **Graphical->Gateways->Add**
  - 1787 b. Set a name, then set Host as **Localhost** and port as **5172**.
  - 1788 c. Check the **Enabled** checkbox and click **Save**.
  - 1789 d. Verify that it works by clicking **Test** in the top-left corner.
- 1790 2. Add a graphical connection (We'll use VNC):
  - 1791 a. **Graphical->Add**

- 1792 b. Set **Name**.
- 1793 c. Set the **Type** (VNC/RDP).
- 1794 d. Set the **Hostname/IP**.
- 1795 e. If you want recordings, set **Directory** and **Recordings**.
- 1796 f. Set the **Authentication**.
- 1797 g. Add **Graphical Gateway**.
- 1798 h. Add **Tags**.
- 1799 3. Access Controls
  - 1800 a. **Security->Access Control->Add**
  - 1801 b. Set **Name**.
  - 1802 c. Check **Enabled**.
  - 1803 d. Set **Priority**.
  - 1804 e. Set **ALLOW**.
  - 1805 f. Set **Component Type** to **Graphical Connection**.
  - 1806 g. Under **Profile Selection**, you should see the following:
    - 1807 i. Property Profile Equals \*Profile Name\* <join>
    - 1808 ii. Correct Profile should appear in the box on right.
  - 1809 h. Under Resource Selection, you should see the following:
    - 1810 i. -Associate With a Tag that
    - 1811 ii. Property Tag Equals \*Tag name\* <join>
    - 1812 iii. Correct Graphical Console should appear in the box on right.
  - 1813 i. Under **Privileges**, check:
    - 1814 i. **Aware**
    - 1815 ii. **View**
    - 1816 iii. **Connect**
    - 1817 iv. **Enable**
    - 1818 v. **Monitor**
  - 1819 j. Click **Save**.

1820

Figure 2.68 Binding to Syslog



1821

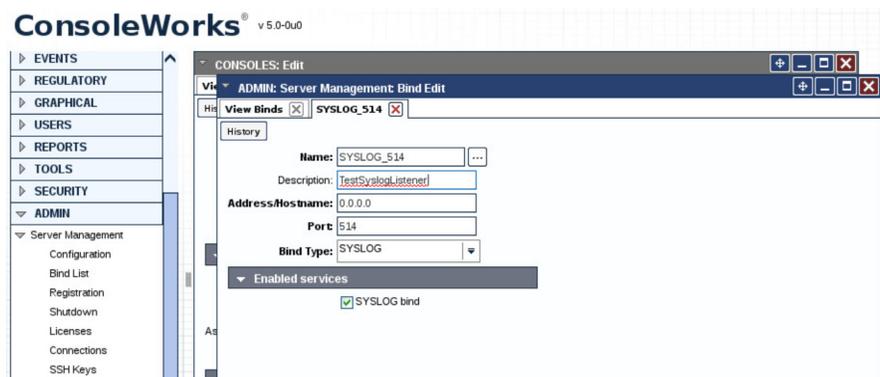
## 1822 2.17.4 TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (E6) Installation Guide

1823 Follow the guide above on installing ConsoleWorks instance (O5), however, do not follow \

1824 Section 2.17.3.1, Initial Configuration or Section 2.17.3.2, Graphical Connections.

- 1825 1. Navigate to **Server Management > Bind List > Add**.
- 1826 2. Enter a name for **Binding** (e.g. SYSLOG\_514).
- 1827 3. Leave **Address** as default (0.0.0.0).
- 1828 4. Set **Port** to **514**.
- 1829 5. Set **Bind type** to **SYSLOG** and **Enable**.

1830 **Figure 2.69 Server Management Bind Edit**

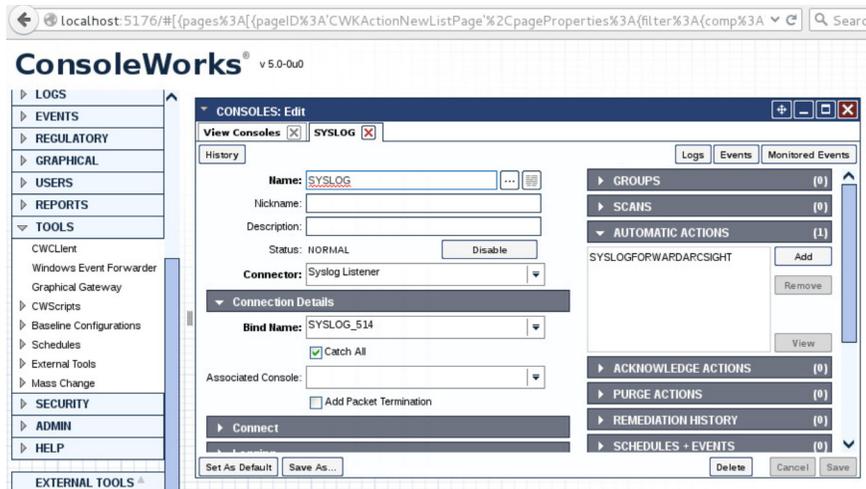


1831

- 1832 6. Navigate to **Consoles > Add**.
- 1833 7. Add **Console** and set a name (e.g. SYSLOG).

- 1834 8. In the **Connector** field, click the dropdown menu and select **Syslog Listener**.
- 1835 9. Under **Connection Details**, click the dropdown menu and select the **Binding** that you
- 1836 created above (e.g. SYSLOG\_514).
- 1837 10. Check the **Catch All** checkbox.

1838 **Figure 2.70 Adding SYSLOG Console**



- 1839
- 1840 11. Copy the socket plugin to the **cwscript** directory under your ConsoleWorks instance
- 1841 directory.

1842 **Figure 2.71 Copying Plugin to CWScript Directory**

```

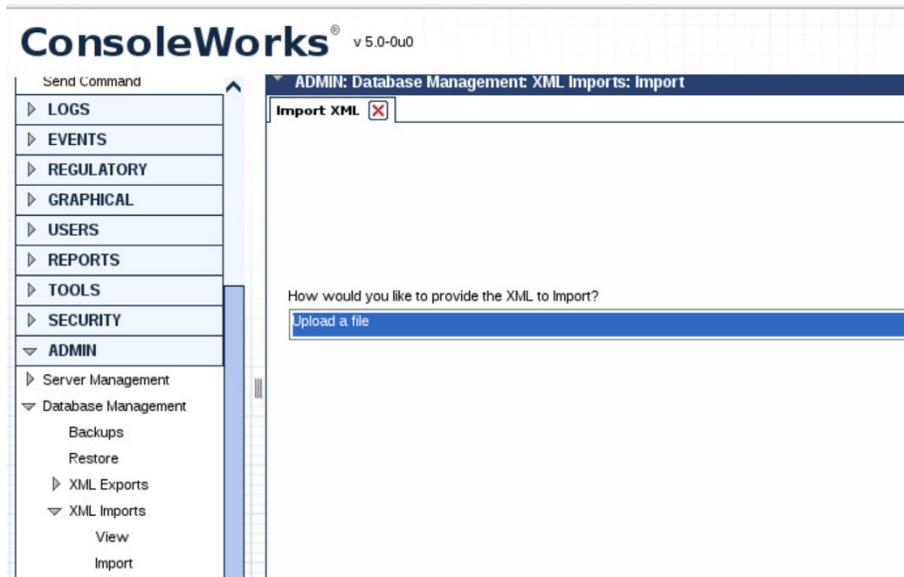
[user@localhost bin]$ pwd
/opt/ConsoleWorks/bin
[user@localhost bin]$ sudo cp ./libPISocket.so /opt/ConsoleWorks/SAVendor/cwscript/

```

- 1843
- 1844 12. Navigate to **Admin > Database Management > XML Imports > Import > Upload a file**, then
- 1845 click **Next**.

1846

Figure 2.72 CWScript Upload



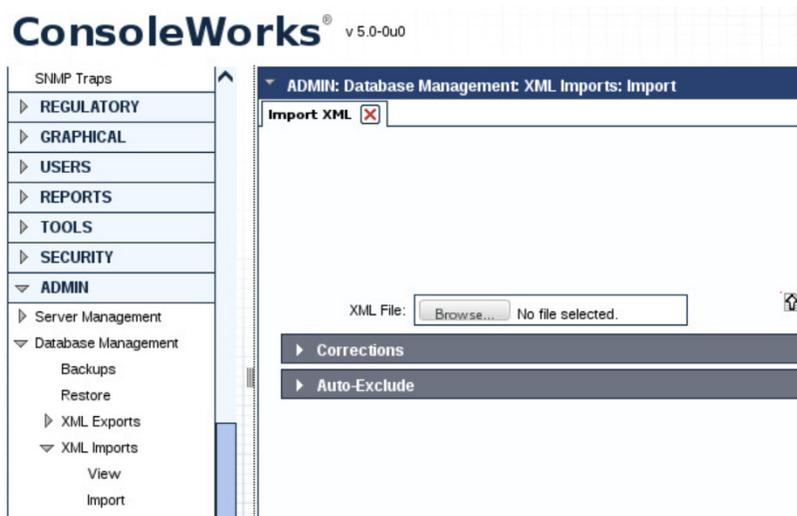
1847

1848

13. Click **Browse**.

1849

Figure 2.73 Browse for CWScript



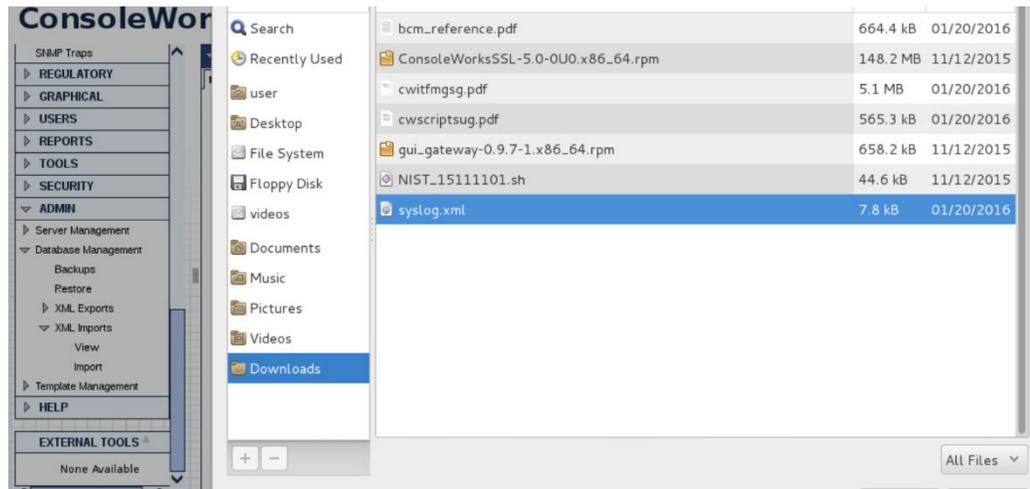
1850

1851

14. Select the **syslog.xml** file, then click **Next**.

1852

Figure 2.74 Select CWScript XML



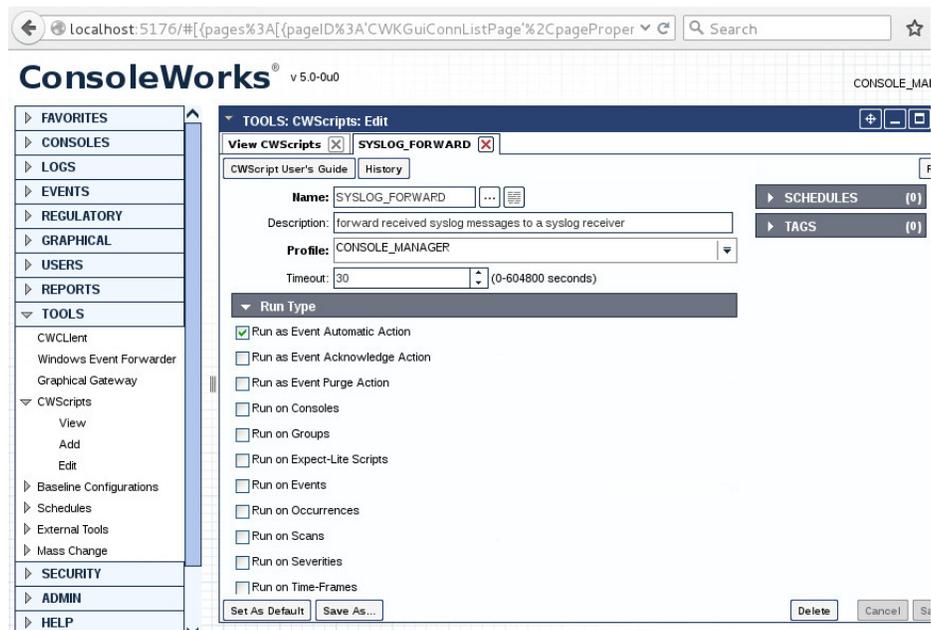
1853

1854

15. Navigate to **Tools > CWScripts > Select SYSLOG\_FORWARD > Review Settings.**

1855

Figure 2.75 Review CWScript Settings



1856

1857

16. Navigate to **Actions > Automatic > Add.**

1858

17. Set **Name.**

1859

18. Set **Type** to **CWScript.**

1860

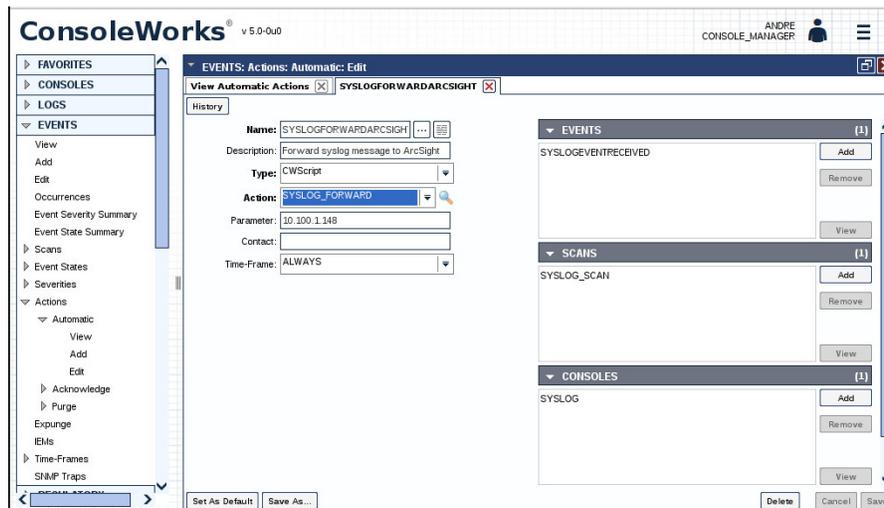
19. In the **Action** field, click the dropdown menu and select **SYSLOG\_FORWARD.**

1861

20. In the **Parameter** field enter the IP address (or FQDN) of the Syslog target.

1862

Figure 2.76 Modify Action and Parameter for CWScript



1863

1864

21. Navigate to **Scans**, then select **Add**.

1865

22. Set **Name**.

1866

23. In the **Consoles** field, add/select the Console defined in the previous steps.

1867

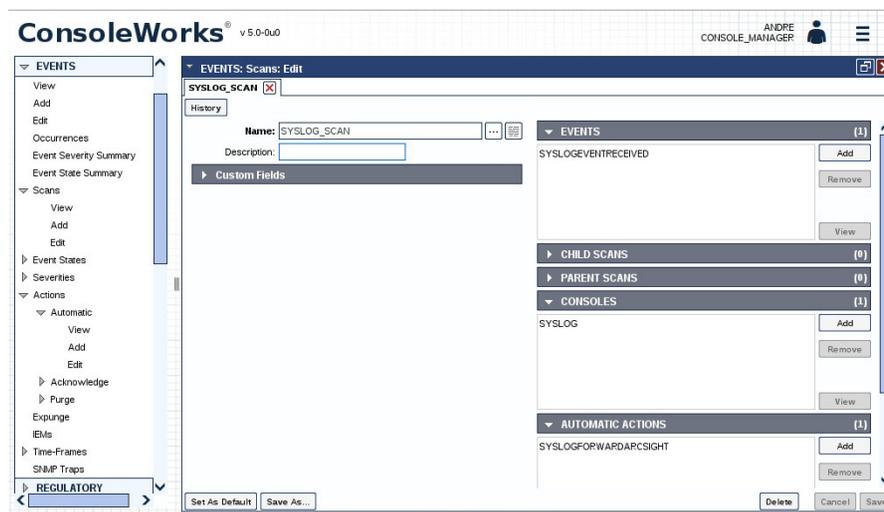
24. In the **Automatic Action** field, add/select the Action defined in the previous steps.

1868

25. *Note: The Events field will be updated later.*

1869

Figure 2.77 Add New Scan



1870

1871

26. Navigate to **Events**, then select **Add**.

1872

27. **Name** the Event.

1873

28. Set the **Severity** level.

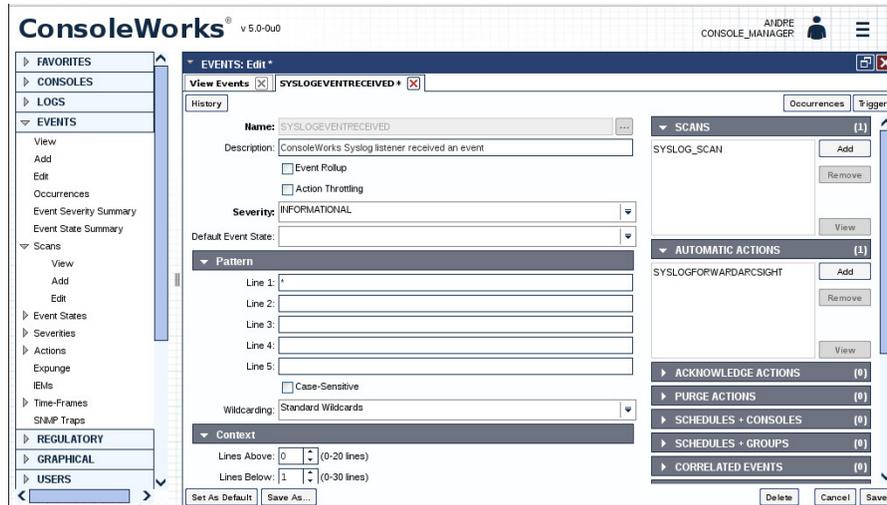
1874

29. In the **Pattern** fields, Line 1, type in a character pattern that matches the syslog data. Set **Wildcarding** to **Standard Wildcards**.

1875

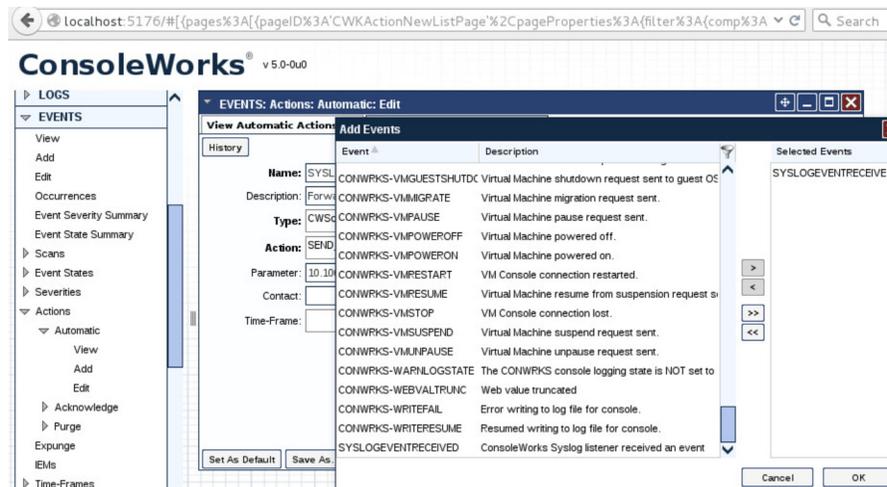
- 1876 30. In the context **Lines Below** field, enter **1**.
- 1877 31. In the **Scans** field, click **Add**, then select the name of the Scan that was defined in the
- 1878 previous steps.
- 1879 32. In the **Automatic Actions** field, click **Add**, then select the name of the Action that was
- 1880 defined in the previous steps.

1881 **Figure 2.78 Add New Event**



- 1882
- 1883 33. Navigate back to **Actions > Automatic**, then edit the Action defined in the previous steps.
- 1884 34. In the **Event** field, confirm that the Event that you just created is selected.

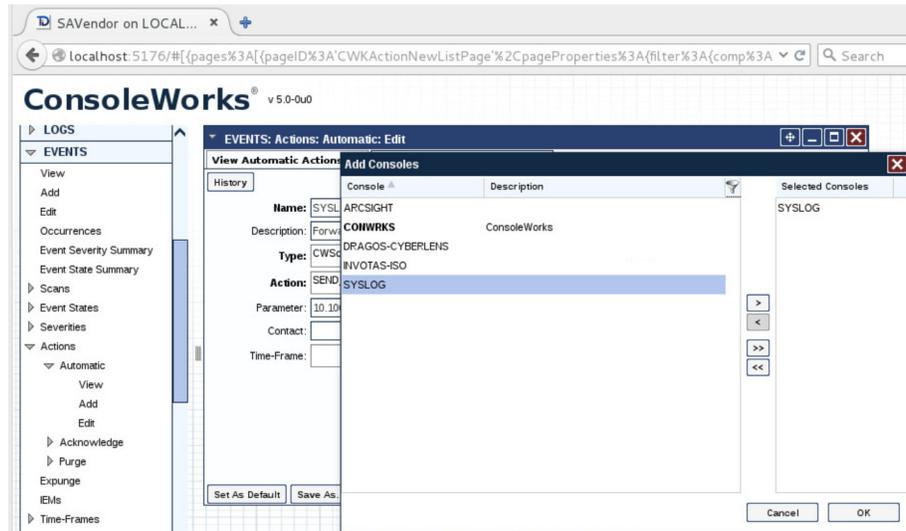
1885 **Figure 2.79 Syslog Forwarding Action Config**



- 1886
- 1887 35. In the **Console** field, select the Syslog Console that was defined in previous steps.

1888

Figure 2.80 Add Console to Syslog Forwarding Action Config



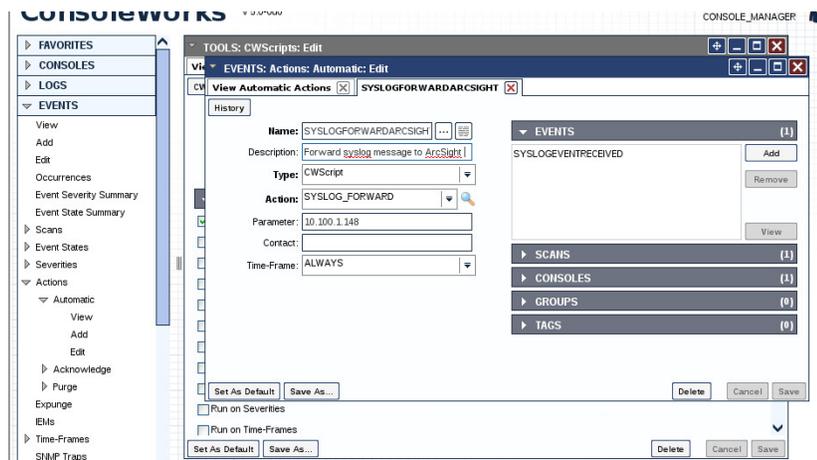
1889

36. Review settings.

1890

1891

Figure 2.81 Review Event Settings



1892

37. Add rules to ConsoleWorks host OS firewall:

1893

```
iptables -I INPUT -p udp --dport 514 -s 0.0.0.0/0 -j ACCEPT
iptables -I OUTPUT -p udp -s 0.0.0.0/0 --dport 514 -j ACCEPT
```

1894

1895

1896

38. Save the rules:

1897

```
/sbin/service iptables save
```

## 1898 2.17.5 TDi Technologies ConsoleWorks (O9) Installation Guide

1899

Follow the guide for ConsoleWorks (E6) in Section 2.17.4.

## 1900 2.18 Waterfall Technologies Unidirectional Security Gateway (O2)

1901 Waterfall's Unidirectional Security Gateway delivers a security gateway solution for replicating  
1902 servers and emulating devices from the control system lab to the enterprise system lab. The  
1903 replication occurs through hardware that is physically able to transmit information in only one  
1904 direction, and physically unable to transmit any information or attack in the reverse connection.  
1905 The Unidirectional Gateway's combination of hardware and software supports many kinds of  
1906 replications, including process historians, many OPC variants, syslog, FTP, and others.

### 1907 2.18.1 Waterfall Technologies Unidirectional Security Gateway (O2) Installation 1908 Guide

1909 The Unidirectional Security Gateway was shipped to the NCCoE as an appliance in a 1U server  
1910 chassis. The chassis contains two Host Modules, each running Microsoft Windows 8. The  
1911 chassis also contains a Transmit (TX) Module and a Receive (RX) Module, linked by a short  
1912 fiber-optic cable. The TX Module is physically able to send information/light to the fiber, but is  
1913 unable to receive any signal from the fiber. Conversely, the RX Module is able to receive  
1914 information from the fiber, but has no transmitter and so is physically unable to send any  
1915 information to the fiber. In this guide, we will refer to the Windows Host Module connected to  
1916 the TX Module as the Tx host, and the Windows Host Module connected to the RX Module as  
1917 the Rx host.

#### 1918 2.18.1.1 Rx Configuration

1919 Open the **Waterfall RX Configuration** utility located in the **Start** menu.

##### 1920 2.18.1.1.1 FTP Stream

- 1921 1. Expand **wfStreamRx** from the left sidebar.
- 1922 2. Expand **Files**.
- 1923 3. From the sidebar, select **Local Folder**.
- 1924 4. Under **Channels**, select **Add**. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 1925 5. Fill out the **Channel Name** field and make a note of the **Channel ID** in parenthesis.
- 1926 6. From the sidebar, select **NCFTP**.
- 1927 7. Under **Channels**, select **Add**. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 1928 8. Select the **Automatically Bind to Local Folder with ID** radio button. Ensure that you select  
1929 the ID for the Local Folder using the same ID that was automatically generated for the Local  
1930 Folder you just created.
- 1931 9. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
  - 1932 a. FTP folder: **/file\_link**
  - 1933 b. FTP host: **10.100.1.250**
  - 1934 c. FTP port: **21**
  - 1935 d. Username: **waterfall**

- 1936 e. Password: **<insert password here>**
- 1937 10. For **Transfer mode**, select the **Passive** radio button.
- 1938 11. For **Transfer type**, select the **Binary** radio button.
- 1939 12. Ensure that the **Enable recursive transfer** checkbox is checked.
- 1940 13. Ensure that the **File pattern** checkbox is checked, and the form field contains the value: **\***.

#### 1941 2.18.1.1.2 OSI Pi Streams

- 1942 1. Digital
- 1943 a. Expand **wfStreamRxPI\_D** from the left sidebar.
- 1944 b. Expand **SME** from the left sidebar.
- 1945 c. Expand **PiPoint** from the left sidebar.
- 1946 d. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 1947 e. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
- 1948 i. Channel name: **PiPt Digital**
- 1949 ii. Server IP: **10.100.1.76**
- 1950 iii. Points type: **Digital**
- 1951 iv. Snapshots/Sec limit: **5000**
- 1952 v. Snapshots/Sec warning: **500**
- 1953 2. Numeric
- 1954 a. Expand **wfStreamRxPI\_N** from the left sidebar.
- 1955 b. Expand **SME** from the left sidebar.
- 1956 c. Expand **PiPoint** from the left sidebar.
- 1957 d. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 1958 e. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
- 1959 i. Channel name: **PiPt Numeric**
- 1960 ii. Server IP: **10.100.1.76**
- 1961 iii. Points type: **Numeric**
- 1962 iv. Snapshots/Sec limit: **5000**
- 1963 v. Snapshots/Sec warning: **5000**
- 1964 3. String
- 1965 a. Expand **wfStreamRxPI\_S** from the left sidebar.
- 1966 b. Expand **SME** from the left sidebar.
- 1967 c. Expand **PiPoint** from the left sidebar.
- 1968 d. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.

- 1969 e. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
- 1970 i. Channel name: **PiPt String**
- 1971 ii. Server IP: **10.100.1.76**
- 1972 iii. Points type: **String**
- 1973 iv. Snapshots/Sec limit: **5000**
- 1974 v. Snapshots/Sec warning: **5000**

### 1975 2.18.1.1.3 Syslog Streams

- 1976 1. Expand **wfStreamRx** from the left sidebar.
- 1977 2. Expand **IT Monitoring** from the left sidebar.
- 1978 3. Select **Syslog UDP** from the left sidebar.
- 1979 4. Under **Channels**, select **Add**. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 1980 5. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
- 1981 a. Channel name: **Syslog 1**
- 1982 b. Send report every: **500**
- 1983 6. Under **Target Addresses**, select **Add** and set the IP address to **10.100.0.50**, and port to **514**.

### 1984 2.18.1.2 TX Configuration

1985 Open the **Waterfall TX Configuration** utility located in the **Start** menu.

#### 1986 2.18.1.2.1 FTP Stream

- 1987 1. Expand **wfStreamTx** from the left sidebar.
- 1988 2. Expand **Files**.
- 1989 3. From the sidebar, select **Local Folder**.
- 1990 4. Under **Channels**, select **Add**. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 1991 5. Fill out the **Channel name** field and make a note of the **Channel ID** in parenthesis.
- 1992 6. From the sidebar, select **NCFTP**.
- 1993 7. Under **Channels**, select **Add**. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 1994 8. Select the **Automatically Bind to Local Folder with ID** radio button. Select the ID that was
- 1995 automatically generated for the Local Folder created in the previous steps.
- 1996 9. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
- 1997 a. FTP folder: **/file\_link**
- 1998 b. FTP host: **172.18.1.250**
- 1999 c. FTP port: **21**
- 2000 d. Username: **root**

- 2001 e. Password: <insert password here>
- 2002 10. For **Transfer mode**, select the **Passive** radio button.
- 2003 11. For **Transfer type**, select the **Binary** radio button.
- 2004 12. Ensure that the **Enable recursive transfer** checkbox is checked.
- 2005 13. Ensure that the **File pattern** checkbox is checked, and the field contains the value: \*.

#### 2006 2.18.1.2.2 OSI Pi Streams

- 2007 1. Digital
- 2008 a. Expand **wfStreamTxPI\_D** from the left sidebar.
- 2009 b. Expand **SME** from the left sidebar.
- 2010 c. Expand **PiPoint** from the left sidebar.
- 2011 d. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 2012 e. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
- 2013 i. Channel name: **PiPt Digital**
- 2014 ii. Server IP: **172.18.2.150**
- 2015 iii. Points type: **Digital**
- 2016 iv. Snapshots/Sec limit: **5000**
- 2017 v. Snapshots/Sec warning: **5000**
- 2018 vi. APS port: **3010**
- 2019 2. Numeric
- 2020 a. Expand **wfStreamTxPI\_N** from the left sidebar.
- 2021 b. Expand **SME** from the left sidebar.
- 2022 c. Expand **PiPoint** from the left sidebar.
- 2023 d. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 2024 e. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
- 2025 i. Channel name: **PiPt Numeric**
- 2026 ii. Server IP: **172.18.2.150**
- 2027 iii. Points type: **Numeric**
- 2028 iv. Snapshots/Sec limit: **5000**
- 2029 v. Snapshots/Sec warning: **5000**
- 2030 vi. APS port: **3000**
- 2031 3. String
- 2032 a. Expand **wfStreamTxPI\_S** from the left sidebar.
- 2033 b. Expand **SME** from the left sidebar.

- 2034 c. Expand **PiPoint** from the left sidebar.
- 2035 d. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 2036 e. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
  - 2037 i. Channel name: **PiPt String**
  - 2038 ii. Server IP: **172.18.2.150**
  - 2039 iii. Points type: **String**
  - 2040 iv. Snapshots/Sec limit: **5000**
  - 2041 v. Snapshots/Sec warning: **5000**
  - 2042 vi. APS port: **3020**

### 2043 2.18.1.2.3 Syslog Streams

- 2044 1. Expand **wfStreamTx** from the left sidebar.
- 2045 2. Expand **IT Monitoring** from the left sidebar.
- 2046 3. Select **Syslog UDP** from the left sidebar.
- 2047 4. Under **Channels**, select **Add**. Ensure the **Active** checkbox is checked.
- 2048 5. Fill out the correct values for the following form fields:
  - 2049 a. Channel name: **Syslog 1**
  - 2050 b. Send report every: **500**
  - 2051 c. Port: **514**
  - 2052 d. IP (Listening): **0.0.0.0**
- 2053 6. Under **target addresses**, select **Add**. Set the IP address to **10.100.0.50**, and port to **514**.

## 2054 2.19 Waterfall Secure Bypass (O17)

2055 Waterfall Secure Bypass is used as a secure connection solution that allows bidirectional  
2056 communication into the product lab at the control system. It is solely dependent on a person  
2057 turning a physical key, and has an automated timeout of two hours.

### 2058 2.19.1 Waterfall Secure Bypass (O17) Installation Guide

- 2059 The Waterfall Secure Bypass Solution is installed directly between the Siemens RUGGEDCOM  
2060 RX1501 (O1) and a Schneider Electric Tofino Firewall (O18).
- 2061 1. Connect an Ethernet cable from the RX1501 to the **Ext** interface of the Secure Bypass.
  - 2062 2. Connect an Ethernet cable from the WAN interface of the Tofino to the **Int** interface of the  
2063 Secure Bypass.
  - 2064 3. When the key is fully turned clockwise, the Secure Bypass will allow bi-directional traffic  
2065 between the Tofino and the RX1501.

- 2066 4. When the key is fully turned counter-clockwise, the Secure Bypass will block all traffic  
2067 between the Tofino and the RX1501.
- 2068 5. If the key is left fully turned clockwise for over 2 hours (time was configured at Waterfall  
2069 location prior to receiving the device) the Secure Bypass will block all traffic between the  
2070 Tofino and the RX1501. To allow for traffic to pass again, the user must fully turn the key  
2071 counter-clockwise and then clockwise again.

2072 **Figure 2.82 Waterfall Secure Bypass Interface**



2073

## 2074 2.20 Waratek Runtime Application Protection (E10)

2075 Waratek Runtime Application Protection is a software agent plugin for monitoring and  
2076 protecting user interactions with enterprise applications. In the build, Waratek is  
2077 monitoring a database application for any attempts the user may undertake to pull  
2078 unauthorized data from the database (mainly through the use of SQL Injection).

2079 For further information, see <http://www.waratek.com/solutions/> or  
2080 <http://www.waratek.com/runtime-application-self-protection-rasp/>.

### 2081 2.20.1 System Environment

2082 A CentOS 7 Operating System (fully updated as of 4/20/2016) was set up to run this application.  
2083 Other Requirements:

2084 Web application that demonstrates protection capabilities (this build used Spiracle, Waratek's  
2085 demo application: <https://github.com/waratek/spiracle>)

- 2086 ■ Web application server (this build used Apache Tomcat 9)
- 2087 ■ SQL database (can be MSSQL, MySQL, or Oracle. In the build, we used MySQL)

### 2088 2.20.2 Waratek Runtime Application Protection (E10) for Java Installation

- 2089 1. Download JDK 8 from Oracle site and unzip in **/opt** directory (e.g. `/opt/jdk1.8.0_121`)
- 2090 2. To configure for apache tomcat (or other web server), in  
2091 `$(CATALINA_HOME)/bin/Catalina.sh`, point `JAVA_HOME` to `/opt/<jdk version>`
- 2092 3. Add the following line to `Catalina.sh`:  
2093 `JAVA_OPTS="-javaagent:/opt/waratek/waratek.jar`  
2094 `-Dcom.waratekContainerHome=/opt/<jdk version>"`
- 2095 4. Change directories to **/opt** and untar the **waratek\_home.tar.gz** package
- 2096 5. `cd waratek_home`

- 2097 6. Create the **Rules** directory in the current directory.
- 2098 7. Move the provided **LICENSE\_KEY** file from Waratek to **/var/lib/javad/**.
- 2099 8. Create a rules file: **/opt/waratek-home/Rules/global.rules**

```
2100 VERSION 1.0
2101 # SQL Injection Blocking
2102 sqli:database:mysql:deny:warn
2103 file:read:/opt/tomcat/*:allow:trace
```

- 2104 9. Create a logging XML file: **/opt/waratek/mylogProps.xml**

```
2105 <logProps-array>
2106     <logProps>
2107         <logMode>BOTH</logMode>
2108         <logFile>SECURITYLOG</logFile>
2109         <fileName>/opt/waratek/alerts.log</fileName>
2110         <remoteHost>**INSERT REMOTE SYSLOG HERE (i.e.
2111             10.100.100.10:514)**</remoteHost>
2112         <patternLayout>%m</patternLayout>
2113         <priorityLevel>WARN</priorityLevel>
2114     </logProps>
2115 </logProps-array>
```

- 2116 10. Edit the **/opt/waratek\_home/setenv.sh** file as follows:

```
2117 export WARATEK_OPTS="-Dcom.waratek.jvm.name=tomcat7
2118 -Dcom.waratek.rules.local=/opt/waratek_home/Rules/jvc.rules
2119 -Dcom.waratek.log.properties=/opt/waratek_home/logProps.xml
2120 -Dcom.waratek.jmxh
```

### 2121 2.20.3 Usage

2122 To utilize the Runtime Protection for Java product, start up the web application mentioned in  
2123 2.20.1, System Environment. The web application server (Tomcat 9 in our case) should load the  
2124 Runtime Protection JDK that was configured.

## 2125 2.21 ArcSight Connector Guides

2126 The following detail the custom configuration for the ArcSight connectors to individual  
2127 monitoring and alerting products.

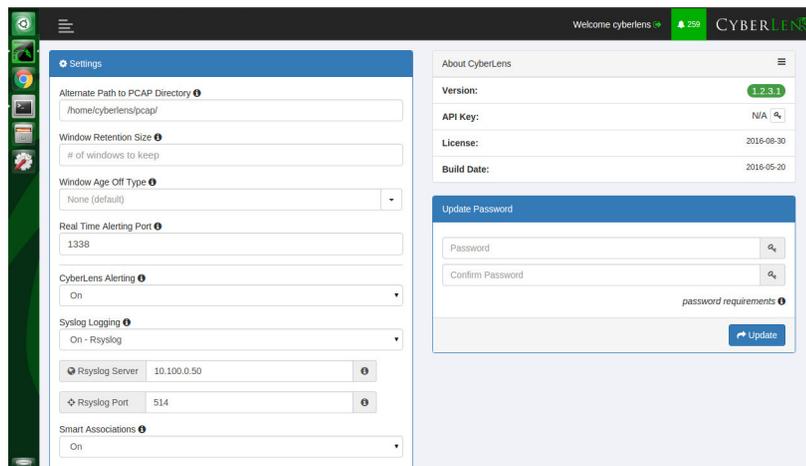
### 2128 2.21.1 Dragos CyberLens Connector

#### 2129 2.21.1.1 Configure Source Product

- 2130 1. Connect to the CyberLens console.

- 2131 2. In the CyberLens app, go to **Settings**.
- 2132 3. In the **CyberLens Alerting** dropdown, select **On**.
- 2133 4. In the **Syslog Logging** section:
- 2134 a. select the dropdown for **On - Rsyslog**.
- 2135 b. Enter the **IP address** of the syslog server, e.g.:
- 2136 172.18.0.50
- 2137 c. Enter the **port** of the syslog server, e.g.:
- 2138 514

2139 **Figure 2.83 Set Up Syslog on Cyberlens**



- 2140
- 2141 5. From the command line, using the **cybersudo** account, check the OS firewall to see if it
- 2142 allows the syslog traffic by running **sudo ufw status**. **Add** and **save** the rule if needed.
- 2143 6. *Note: upon upgrading Cyberlens software, the rsyslog settings may be lost. Be sure to check*
- 2144 *and update these settings as needed after any upgrades.*

### 2145 2.21.1.2 Install/Configure Custom ArcSight FlexConnector

- 2146 1. Follow ArcSight's instructions for installing a Linux-based syslog SmartConnector<sup>1</sup>.
- 2147 2. Copy the custom FlexConnector configuration files to the appropriate locations.
- 2148 3. Start the Connector service:
- 2149 `/etc/init.d/arc_<connectorName> start`

1.HPE ArcSight SmartConnector User Guide - <https://www.protect724.hpe.com/docs/DOC-2279>

2150 **2.21.1.3 Custom Parser - ArcSight FlexConnector Parser**

2151 Create a file containing the text below and copy this file to:

2152 **/opt/arcsight/connectors/<connector**2153 **directory>/current/user/agent/flexagent/cyberlens.subagent.sdkrfilereader.properties**

2154

2155 #:::~::~:

2156 # Syslog custom subagent regex properties file: for CyberLens rsyslog

2157 #

2158 # raw syslog example:

2159 # "Sep 6 16:04:48 ubuntu CyberLensApp: I, [2016-09-06T16:04:48.839937

2160 #65401] INFO -- : Cyberlens generated the following alert: A Sensor

2161 saw 'S7COMM' for the first time"

2162 #

2163 #:::~::~:

2164

2165 # without double slashes

2166 # regex=(CyberLensApp):\sI, (\[\\d+-\\d\\d-\\d\\d\\S\\d\\d:\\d\\d:\\d\\d.\\d+

2167 #\\d+]) (\\D+) -- : (.\*\\n?Source IP: (\\d+\\.\\d+\\.\\d+\\.\\d+)\\n?(.\*)

2168 # with double slashes and newline

2169 regex=(CyberLensApp):\\sI,

2170 (\\[\\d+-\\d\\d-\\d\\d\\S\\d\\d:\\d\\d:\\d\\d.\\d+ #\\d+]) (\\D+) -- :

2171 (.\*\\n?Source IP: (\\d+\\.\\d+\\.\\d+\\.\\d+)\\n?(.\*)

2172

2173 token.count=6

2174 token[0].name=Application

2175 token[1].name=Message

2176 token[2].name=Severity

2177 token[3].name=Name

2178 token[4].name=SourceIP

2179 token[4].type=IPAddress

2180 token[5].name=CatchAnyDoubledLines

2181

2182 event.name=Name

2183 event.deviceProduct=\_\_stringConstant("CyberLens")

2184 event.deviceVendor=\_\_stringConstant("DragosSecurity")

2185 event.deviceSeverity=Severity

2186 event.message=Message

2187 event.deviceProcessName=Application

2188 event.deviceAddress=SourceIP

2189 event.deviceCustomString1=CatchAnyDoubledLines

2190

2191 severity.map.veryhigh.if.deviceSeverity=1,2

2192 severity.map.high.if.deviceSeverity=3,4

2193 severity.map.medium.if.deviceSeverity=5,6

2194 severity.map.low.if.deviceSeverity=INFO

#### 2195 2.21.1.4 ArcSight agent.properties File

- 2196 1. Modify the agent.properties file settings as needed based on the example below:
- 2197 **/opt/arcsight/connectors/<connector directory>/current/user/agent/agent.properties**
- 2198 2. Modify the **customsubagent** list as needed for your environment.
- 2199 3. Replace the **IP address** to suit your environment.

```

2200 #ArcSight Properties File
2201 #Fri Mar 18 17:37:10 GMT 2016
2202 agents.maxAgents=1
2203 agents[0].aggregationcachesize=1000
2204 agents[0].customsubagentlist=cyberlens.subagent.sdkrfilereader.properties_syslog|
2205 sourcefire_syslog|cyberlensPREFIX.subagent.sdkrfilereader.properties_syslog|s
2206 ourcefire_syslog|ciscovpnios_syslog|apache_syslog|ciscovpnoios_syslog
2207 |ciscorouter_syslog|pf_syslog|nagios_syslog|cef_syslog|ciscorouter_non
2208 ios_syslog|catos_syslog|symantecnetworksecurity_syslog|snare_syslog|mc
2209 afeesig_syslog|symantecendpointprotection_syslog|citrix_syslog|linux_a
2210 uditd_syslog|vmwareesx_syslog|citrixnetscaler_syslog|vmwareesx_4_1_sys
2211 log|pulseconnectsecure_syslog|pulseconnectsecure_keyvalue_syslog|flex
2212 agent_syslog|generic_syslog
2213 #agents[0].customsubagentlist=sourcefire_syslog|ciscorouter_syslog|pf_
2214 syslog|cef_syslog|ciscorouter_nonios_syslog|catos_syslog|symantecnetwo
2215 rksecurity_syslog|symantecendpointprotection_syslog|linux_auditd_syslo
2216 g|vmwareesx_syslog|vmwareesx_4_1_syslog|flexagent_syslog|generic_syslo
2217 g
2218 agents[0].destination.count=1
2219 agents[0].destination[0].agentid=3R9bQilMBABCIy6NStvvvaDA\=\=
2220 agents[0].destination[0].failover.count=0
2221 agents[0].destination[0].params=<?xml version\="1.0"
2222 encoding\="UTF-8"?>\n<ParameterValues>\n    <Parameter
2223 Name\="aupmaster" Value\="false"/>\n    <Parameter Name\="port"
2224 Value\="8443"/>\n    <Parameter Name\="fipsciphers"
2225 Value\="fipsDefault"/>\n    <Parameter Name\="host"
2226 Value\="arcsight.es-sa-bl.test"/>\n    <Parameter Name\="filterevents"
2227 Value\="false"/>\n</ParameterValues>\n
2228 agents[0].destination[0].type=http
2229 agents[0].deviceconnectionalertinterval=60000
2230 agents[0].enabled=true
2231 agents[0].entityid=0WbNilMBABCAAoBJrJmUOw\=\=
2232 agents[0].fcp.version=0
2233 agents[0].filequeuemaxfilecount=100
2234 agents[0].filequeuemaxfilesize=10000000
2235 agents[0].forwarder=false
2236 agents[0].forwardmode=true
2237 agents[0].id=3R9bQilMBABCIy6NStvvvaDA\=\=

```

```

2238     agents[0].ipaddress=10.100.1.148
2239     agents[0].overwriterawevent=false
2240     agents[0].persistenceinterval=0
2241     agents[0].port=514
2242     agents[0].protocol=UDP
2243     agents[0].rawloginterval=-1
2244     agents[0].rawlogmaxsize=-1
2245     agents[0].tcpbindretrytime=5000
2246     agents[0].tcpbuffersize=10240
2247     agents[0].tcpcleanupdelay=-1
2248     agents[0].tcpmaxbuffersize=1048576
2249     agents[0].tcpmaxidletime=-1
2250     agents[0].tcpmaxsockets=1000
2251     agents[0].tcppeerclosedchecktimeout=-1
2252     agents[0].tcpsetsocketlinger=false
2253     agents[0].tcpsleeptime=50
2254     agents[0].type=syslog
2255     agents[0].unparsedevents.log.enabled=true
2256     agents[0].usecustomsubagentlist=true
2257     agents[0].usefilequeue=true
2258     remote.management.ssl.organizational.unit=HzjHilMBABCAAWiR1ATijw

```

### 2.21.1.5 Map File

- 2260 1. Create a file containing the text below and copy this file to: **/opt/arcSight/<connector**
- 2261 **directory>/current/user/agent/map/map.1.properties**
- 2262 2. *Note: if an existing map.1.properties file exists, increment the suffix as needed (e.g.*
- 2263 *map.2.properties)*

```

2264 !Flags,CaseSens-,Overwrite
2265 regex.event.name,set.event.deviceVendor,set.event.deviceProduct
2266 .*Cyberlens.*,DragosSecurity,CyberLens

```

### 2.21.1.6 Categorization File

2268 Create a .csv file containing the text below and copy this file to: **/opt/arcSight/<connector**

2269 **directory>/current/user/agent/acp/categorizer/current/<deviceproduct>/deviceproduct.csv**

```

2270
event.      set.event.  set.event.  set.event.  set.event.  set.event.  set.event.
device      category    category    category    category    category    category
Product     Object      Behavior    Technique   DeviceGroup  Significance Outcome
CyberLens  /Host       /Found     /Traffic    /IDS/Network /Informational /attempt
              Anomaly

```

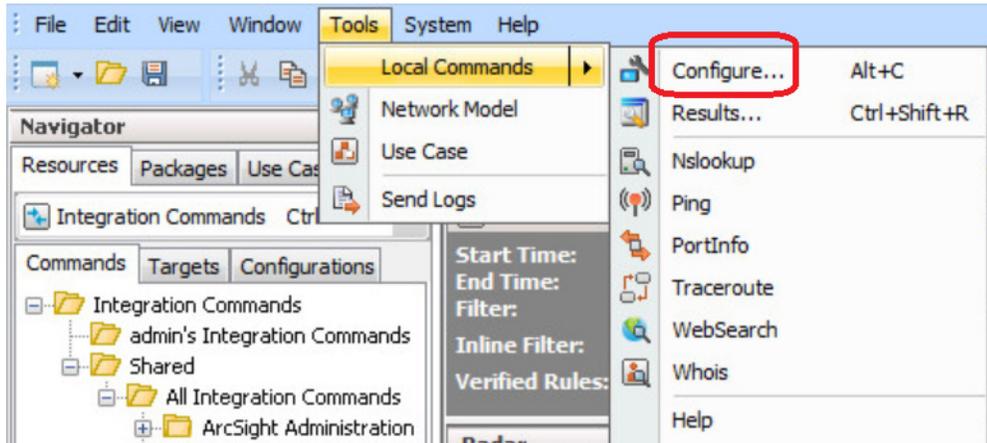
2271 2.21.2 ICS<sup>2</sup> OnGuard

## 2272 2.21.2.1 Integration Setup

2273 This will allow a user to right click on a URL in an event in order to spawn OnGuard with the URL  
 2274 passed as a parameter.

- 2275 1. Select **Tools > Local Commands > Configure**.

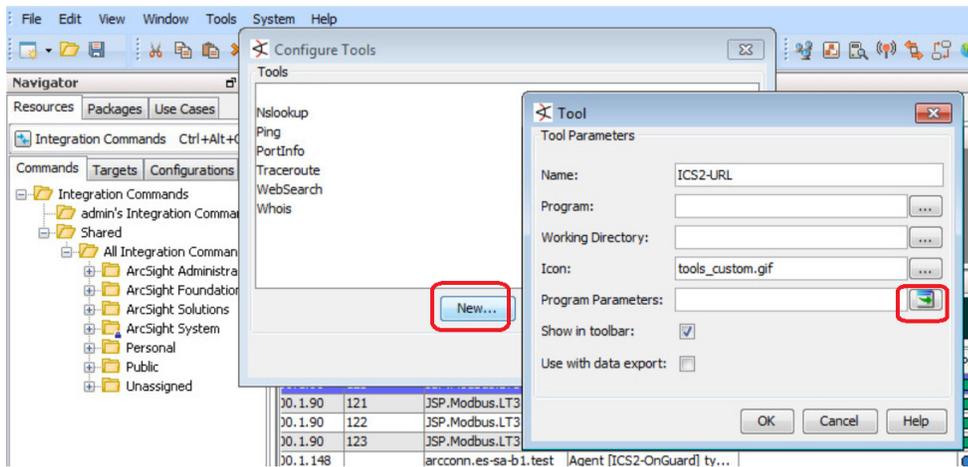
2276 **Figure 2.84 ArcSight Configure**



2277

- 2278 2. In the **name** field, type **ICS2-URL**, then select the **Program Parameters** browse button.

2279 **Figure 2.85 Program Parameters Setup**

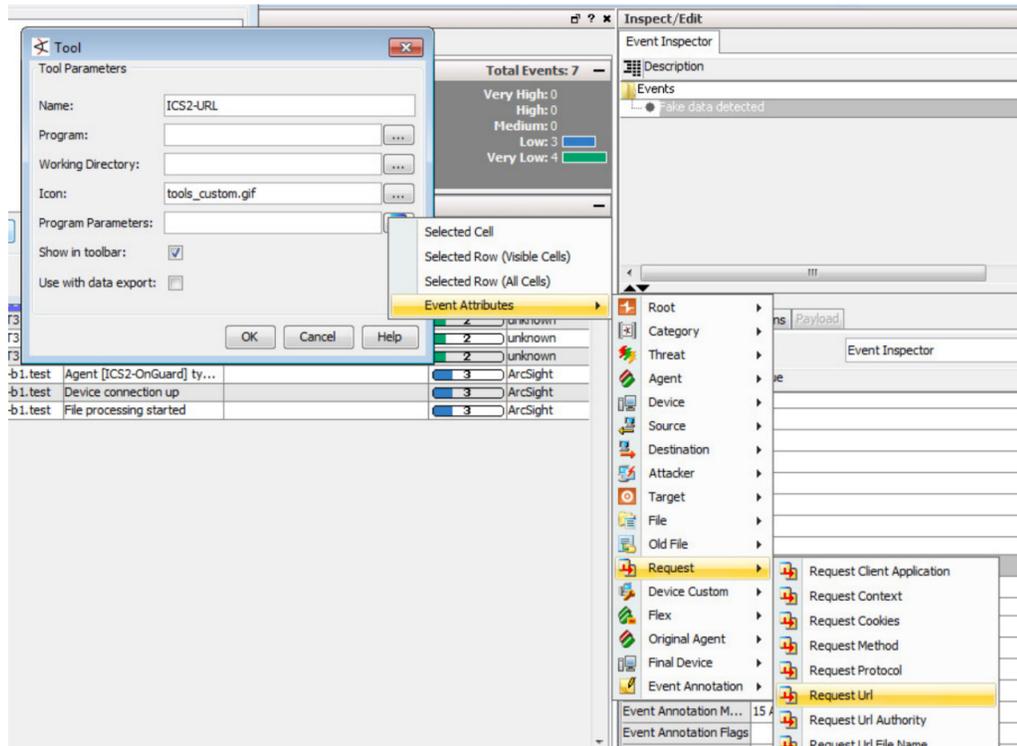


2280

- 2281 3. Select **Event Attributes > Request > Request URL**.

2282

Figure 2.86 Request URL Configuration



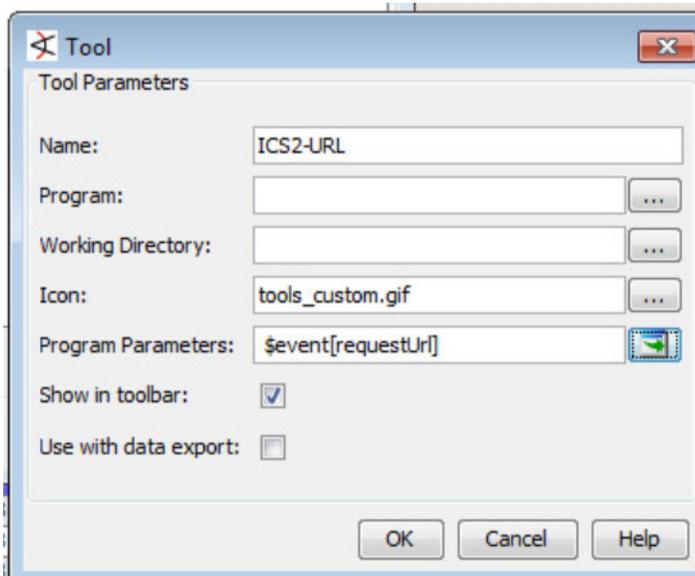
2283

2284

4. Select **OK**.

2285

Figure 2.87 Tool URL Verification



2286

2287

2288

5. Right click on a **URL** in an event, select **Tools**, and verify that the **ICS2-URL tool** appears in the menu.

### 2289 2.21.2.2 Install/Configure Custom ArcSight FlexConnector

- 2290 1. Follow ArcSight's instructions for installing a Linux-based syslog SmartConnector.
- 2291 2. Copy the custom FlexConnector configuration files to the appropriate locations.
  - 2292 a. See sections 6-8 of cyberlens-syslog-configuration-v2\_3.docx
- 2293 3. Start the Connector service:
 

```
2294 /etc/init.d/arc_[connectorName] start
```

### 2295 2.21.2.3 Custom Parser - ArcSight FlexConnector Parser

- 2296 1. Create a file containing the text below, and copy the file to:
 

```
2297 /opt/arcsight/connectors/[connector-directory]/current/user/agent/flexagent/onguard.s
2298 dkrfilereader.properties
```
- 2299 #::
 

```
2300 # Syslog custom regex properties file
2301 # for ICS^2 OnGuard CEF syslog
```
- 2302
 

```
2303 delimiter=|
2304 text.qualifier="
2305 comments.start.with=#
2306 trim.tokens=true
2307 contains.empty.tokens=true
```
- 2308
 

```
2309 token.count=8
```
- 2310
 

```
2311 token[0].name=Token0
2312 token[0].type=String
2313 token[1].name=Token1
2314 token[1].type=String
2315 token[2].name=Token2
2316 token[2].type=Integer
2317 token[3].name=Token3
2318 token[3].type=String
2319 token[4].name=Token4
2320 token[4].type=String
2321 token[5].name=Token5
2322 token[5].type=TimeStamp
2323 token[5].format=yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ssz
2324 token[6].name=Token6
2325 token[6].type=TimeStamp
2326 token[6].format=yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ssz
2327 token[7].name=Token7
2328 token[7].type=String
```

```
2329
2330     # mappings
2331     event.deviceCustomString1=Token0
2332     event.deviceHostName=Token1
2333     event.externalId=Token2
2334     event.name=Token3
2335     event.message=Token4
2336     event.startTime=Token5
2337     event.endTime=Token6
2338     event.requestUrl=Token7
2339     event.deviceVendor=__stringConstant("ICS2")
2340     event.deviceProduct=__stringConstant("OnGuard")
2341
2342     #severity.map.veryhigh.if.deviceSeverity=1,2
2343     severity.map.high.if.deviceSeverity=HIGH
2344     severity.map.medium.if.deviceSeverity=MEDIUM
2345     severity.map.low.if.deviceSeverity=LOW
2346     severity.map.verylow.if.deviceSeverity=INFO
```

#### 2347 2.21.2.4 ArcSight agent.properties File

```
2348     1. Example, from the following directory: /opt/arcsight/connectors/[connector
2349         directory]/current/user/agent/agent.properties
2350     #ArcSight Properties File
2351     #Fri Apr 08 22:28:12 BST 2016
2352     agents.maxAgents=1
2353     agents[0].AgentSequenceNumber=0
2354     agents[0].configfile=onguard
2355     agents[0].destination.count=1
2356     agents[0].destination[0].agentid=3dfzD91MBABDtvfjvZeFjZw\=\=
2357     agents[0].destination[0].failover.count=0
2358     agents[0].destination[0].params=<?xml version\="1.0"
2359     encoding\="UTF-8"?>\n<ParameterValues>\n    <Parameter Name\="host"
2360     Value\="arcsight.es-sa-bl.test"/>\n    <Parameter Name\="aupmaster"
2361     Value\="false"/>\n    <Parameter Name\="filterevents"
2362     Value\="false"/>\n    <Parameter Name\="port" Value\="8443"/>\n
2363     <Parameter Name\="fipsciphers"
2364     Value\="fipsDefault"/>\n</ParameterValues>\n
2365     agents[0].destination[0].type=http
2366     agents[0].deviceconnectionalertinterval=60000
2367     agents[0].enabled=true
2368     agents[0].entityid=3dfzD91MBABDtvfjvZeFjZw\=\=
2369     agents[0].extractfieldnames=
2370     agents[0].extractregex=
```

```
2371     agents[0].extractsource=File Name
2372     agents[0].fcp.version=0
2373     agents[0].fixedlinelength=-1
2374     agents[0].followexternalrotation=true
2375     agents[0].id=3dfzD91MBABDtvfjvZeFjZw\=\=
2376     agents[0].internalevent.filecount.duration=-1
2377     agents[0].internalevent.filecount.enable=false
2378     agents[0].internalevent.filecount.minfilecount=-1
2379     agents[0].internalevent.filecount.timer.delay=60
2380     agents[0].internalevent.fileend.enable=true
2381     agents[0].internalevent.filestart.enable=true
2382     agents[0].logfile=/opt/arcsight/connectors/syslogfiledata/OnGuardS
2383     yslogExample.txt
2384     agents[0].maxfilesize=-1
2385     agents[0].onrotation=RenameFileInTheSameDirectory
2386     agents[0].onrotationoptions=processed
2387     agents[0].persistenceinterval=0
2388     agents[0].preservedstatecount=10
2389     agents[0].preservedstateinterval=30000
2390     agents[0].preservestate=false
2391     agents[0].rotationonlywheneventexists=false
2392     agents[0].rotationdelay=30
2393     agents[0].rotationscheme=None
2394     agents[0].rotationsleeptime=10
2395     agents[0].startatend=false
2396     agents[0].type=sdkfilereader
2397     agents[0].unparsedevents.log.enabled=true
2398     agents[0].usealternaterotationdetection=false
2399     agents[0].usefieldextractor=false
2400     agents[0].usenonlockingwindowsfilereader=false
2401     remote.management.second.listener.port=10051
2402     remote.management.ssl.organizational.unit=vRTB91MBABCAASNGV81kQQ
2403     server.base.url=https://arcsight.es-sa-b1.test:8443
2404     server.registration.host=arcsight.es-sa-b1.test
```

## 2405 2.21.2.5 Additional Configuration Files

### 2406 2.21.2.5.1 Map File

- 2407 1. Create a file containing the text below and copy this file to: **/opt/arcsight/connector**  
2408 **directory]/current/user/agent/map/map.1.properties**
- 2409 2. Note: if an existing map.1.properties file exists, increment the suffix as needed (e.g.  
2410 map.2.properties)

```

2411 !Flags, CaseSens-, Overwrite
2412 regex.event.name, set.event.deviceVendor, set.event.deviceProduct
2413 .*On-Guard.*, ICS2, OnGuard
2414 .*OnGuard.*, ICS2, OnGuard
    
```

2415 **2.21.2.5.2 Categorization File**

- 2416 1. Create a csv file containing the text below and copy this file to: **/opt/arcSight/connector**  
 2417 **directory]/current/user/agent/acp/categorizer/current/[deviceproduct]/**  
 2418 **deviceproduct.csv**

2419

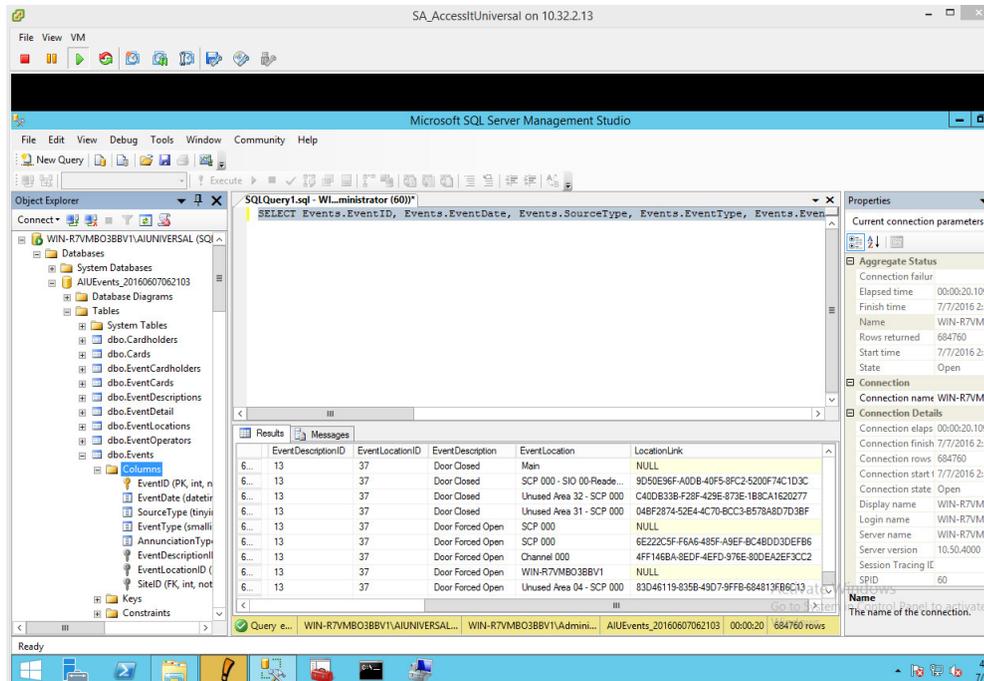
event. device Product	set.event. category Object	set.event. category Behavior	set.event. category Technique	set.event. category DeviceGroup	set.event. category Significance	set.event. category Outcome
OnGuard	/Host	/Found	/Traffic Anomaly	/IDS/Network	/Informational	/Attempt

2420 **2.21.3 RS2 Access It! Universal.NET**

2421 **2.21.3.1 Review Data Source**

- 2422 1. Review the relevant fields in Access It's Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.

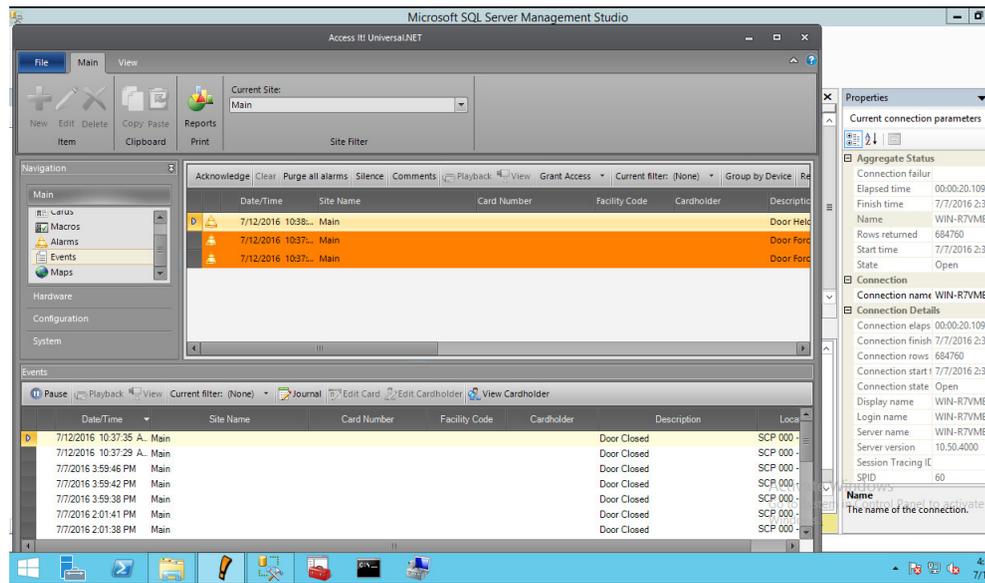
2423 **Figure 2.88**



- 2424
- 2425 2. Review the data in RS2's Access It application.

2426

Figure 2.89



2427

### 2428 2.21.3.2 Install/Configure custom ArcSight FlexConnector

- 2429 1. On the Access It! server, follow ArcSight's instructions for installing a Microsoft  
2430 Windows-based Flex Connector and specify the **Time Based Database** option.<sup>1</sup>
- 2431 2. Copy the custom FlexConnector configuration files to the appropriate locations
- 2432 a. See sections 6-8 of cyberlens-syslog-configuration-v2\_3.docx
- 2433 3. Start the Connector service via the **Windows Administrative Tools > Services** control panel  
2434 item.

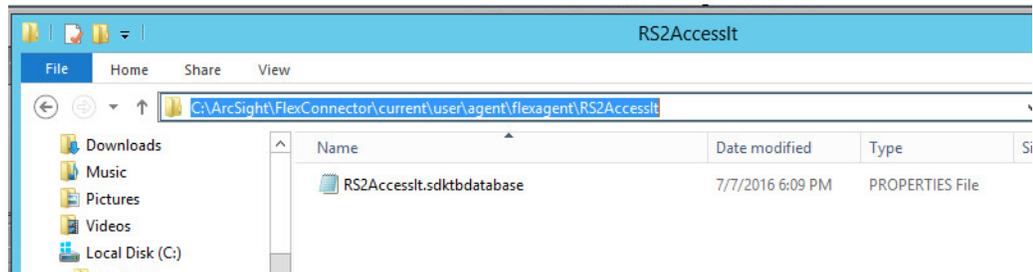
### 2435 2.21.3.3 Custom Parser - ArcSight FlexConnector Parser

2436 This parser will allow ArcSight to query the RS2 Access It SQL database for door controller event  
2437 data.

- 2438 1. Create a file containing the text below and copy this file to the connector installation  
2439 directory.
- 2440 2. Example location: **C:\ArcSight\FlexConnector\user\agent\flexagent\RS2AccessIt**

1.HPE ArcSight SmartConnector User Guide - <https://www.protect724.hpe.com/docs/DOC-2279>

2441

**Figure 2.90 Example Location**

2442

```

2443 # Flex Connector for RS2 AccessIt Door Controller MS SQL Database
2444 version.id=1.0
2445 version.order=0
2446 version.query=SELECT Max(EventDate) FROM Events
2447
2448 # Pull events from which time period
2449 lastdate.query=SELECT Max(EventDate) FROM Events
2450
2451 additionaldata.enabled=true
2452
2453 # Database Query
2454 query= SELECT Events.EventID, Events.EventDate, Events.SourceType,
2455 Events.EventType, Events.EventDescriptionID, Events.EventLocationID,
2456 EventDescriptions.EventDescription \
2457 FROM Events \
2458 LEFT OUTER JOIN EventDescriptions ON Events.EventDescriptionID =
2459 EventDescriptions.EventDescriptionID \
2460 WHERE Events.EventDate > ? \
2461 ORDER BY Events.EventDate
2462
2463 # gets all the day's events once, and no new events
2464 #timestamp.field=Events.EventDate
2465 # gets events every time a new event occurs
2466 timestamp.field=EventDate
2467 uniqueid.fields=EventDescription,EventLocation,LocationLink
2468
2469 # DB Column Mapping
2470 event.deviceEventClassId=__concatenate(EventDescription,":",EventID)
2471 event.externalId=EventID
2472 event.endTime=EventDate
2473 event.name=EventDescription
2474 #event.message=EventLocation
2475 event.deviceCustomString1=SourceType
2476 event.deviceCustomString2=EventType
2477 event.deviceCustomString3=EventDescriptionID

```

```

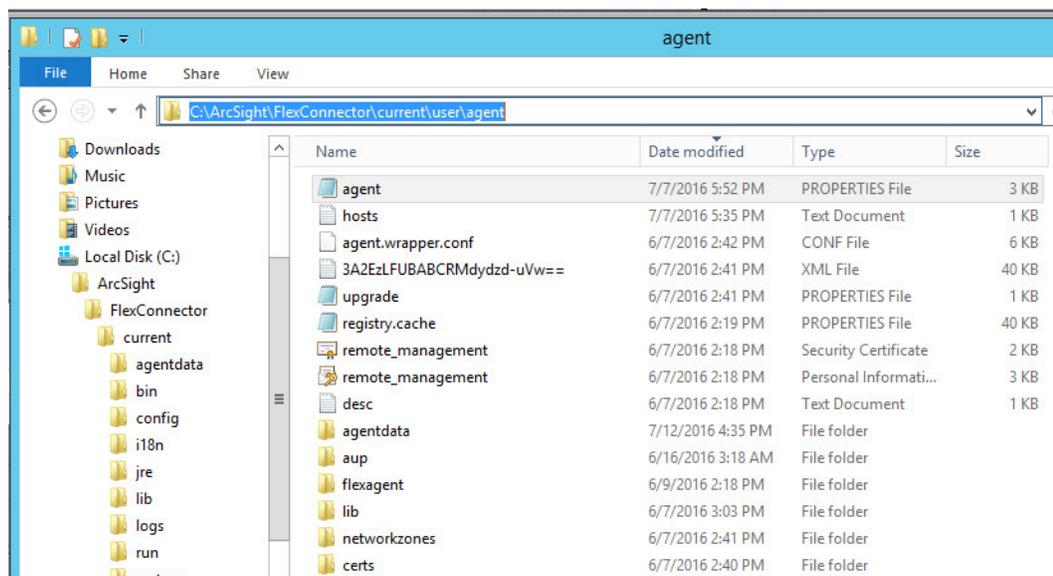
2478 event.deviceCustomString4=EventLocationID
2479 #event.deviceCustomString5=LocationLink
2480
2481 # Constants Mapping
2482 event.deviceVendor=__stringConstant (RS2)
2483 event.deviceProduct=__stringConstant (AccessIt)
2484 event.deviceCustomString1Label=__stringConstant (SourceType)
2485 event.deviceCustomString2Label=__stringConstant (EventType)
2486 event.deviceCustomString3Label=__stringConstant (EventDescriptionID)
2487 event.deviceCustomString4Label=__stringConstant (EventLocationID)
2488 #event.deviceCustomString5Label=__stringConstant (LocationLink)
2489
2490 # Severity Mapping
2491 event.deviceSeverity=EventDescription
2492 severity.map.veryhigh.if.deviceSeverity=Door Forced Open,Door Held
2493 Open
2494 severity.map.high.if.deviceSeverity=Power Loss,Comm Fail,Shutdown
2495 severity.map.medium.if.deviceSeverity=Door Closed,Door Open,Startup
2496 #severity.map.low.if.deviceSeverity=Low

```

#### 2497 2.21.3.4 ArcSight agent.properties File

- 2498 1. Modify the **agent.properties** file settings as needed based on the example below.
- 2499 2. Replace the Database connection **string/url** (in bold below) to suit your environment (refer
- 2500 to section above).

2501 **Figure 2.91 Example string/url**



2502

2503 #ArcSight Properties File

```

2504 #Thu Jul 28 17:02:44 EDT 2016
2505 agents.maxAgents=1
2506 agents[0].AgentSequenceNumber=0
2507 agents[0].JDBCdriver=com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerDriver
2508 agents[0].configfolder=RS2AccessIt
2509 agents[0].database=Default
2510 agents[0].dbcpcachestatements=false
2511 agents[0].dbcpcheckouttimeout=600
2512 agents[0].dbcpidletimeout=300
2513 agents[0].dbcpmaxcheckout=-1
2514 agents[0].dbcpmaxconn=5
2515 agents[0].dbcpreap=300
2516 agents[0].dbcprowprefetch=-1
2517 agents[0].destination.count=1
2518 agents[0].destination[0].agentid=3B+tGM1YBABDj2XjY9XWuyg\=\=
2519 agents[0].destination[0].failover.count=0
2520 agents[0].destination[0].params=<?xml version\="1.0"
2521 encoding\="UTF-8"?>\n<ParameterValues>\n  <Parameter
2522 Name\="aupmaster" Value\="false"/>\n  <Parameter Name\="port"
2523 Value\="8443"/>\n  <Parameter Name\="fipsciphers"
2524 Value\="fipsDefault"/>\n  <Parameter Name\="host"
2525 Value\="arcsight.es-sa-b1.test"/>\n  <Parameter Name\="filterevents"
2526 Value\="false"/>\n</ParameterValues>\n
2527 agents[0].destination[0].type=http
2528 agents[0].deviceconnectionalertinterval=60000
2529 agents[0].enabled=true
2530 agents[0].entityid=YdZKM1YBABCaAwkPuy5kNg\=\=
2531 agents[0].fcp.version=0
2532 agents[0].frequency=45
2533 agents[0].id=3B+tGM1YBABDj2XjY9XWuyg\=\=
2534 agents[0].initretrysleeptime=60000
2535 agents[0].jdbcquerytimeout=-1
2536 agents[0].jdbctimeout=240000
2537 agents[0].loopingenabled=false
2538 agents[0].password=OBFUSCATE.4.8.1\:tN7+FHjYvO5qkdFrnyHeng\=\=
2539 agents[0].passwordchangeingcharactersets=UPPERCASE\=ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ,
2540 LOWERCASE\=abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz,NUMBER\=01234567890,SPE
2541 CIAL\=+-\!@\$%&* ()
2542 agents[0].passwordchangingcharacterdelimiter=,
2543 agents[0].passwordchangingenabled=false
2544 agents[0].passwordchanginginterval=86400
2545 agents[0].passwordchanginglength=16
2546 agents[0].passwordchangingtemplate=UPPERCASE,NUMBER,SPECIAL,UPPERCASE|
2547 LOWERCASE|NUMBER,UPPERCASE|LOWERCASE|NUMBER|SPECIAL
2548 agents[0].persistenceinterval=1

```

```

2549 agents[0].preservedstatecount=10
2550 agents[0].preservedstateinterval=30000
2551 agents[0].preservestate=true
2552 agents[0].rotationtimeout=30000
2553 agents[0].startatend=true
2554 agents[0].type=sdktdatabase
2555 agents[0].unparsedevents.log.enabled=false
2556 agents[0].url=jdbc\:sqlserver\://10.100.2.102\:1433;databasename\=AIUE
2557 vents_20160607062103
2558 agents[0].useconnectionpool=true
2559 agents[0].user=OBFUSCATE.4.8.1\:LkwoJdKuWx8CDMiRZv4Qpg\=\=
2560 remote.management.second.listener.port=10050
2561 remote.management.ssl.organizational.unit=rE09M1YBABCAAQkPuy5kNg

```

### 2562 2.21.3.5 Categorization File

2563 Create a .csv file containing the fields below and copy this file to the appropriate folder:  
 2564 **C:\ArcSight\\current\user\agent\acp\categorizer\current\rs2accessit\  
 2565 rs2accessit.csv**

2566 **Figure 2.92 Categorization File Fields**

	A	B	C	D	E
1	event.name	set.event.categoryBehavior	set.event.categoryOutcome	set.event.categoryTechnique	set.event.categoryDeviceGroup
2	Door Forced Open	/Access	/Success	/Brute Force	/PhysicalAccessSystem
3	Door Held Open	/Access	/Success	/Policy/Breach	/PhysicalAccessSystem
4					

### 2568 2.21.4 Additional References

- 2569 1. HPE ArcSight SmartConnector User Guide  
 2570 <https://www.protect724.hpe.com/docs/DOC-2279>
- 2571 2. Syslog Guide  
 2572 <https://www.protect724.hpe.com/docs/DOC-2583>
- 2573 3. SmartConnector Quick Reference  
 2574 <https://www.protect724.hpe.com/docs/DOC-12938>
- 2575 4. HPE ArcSight FlexConnector Developer's Guide  
 2576 <https://www.protect724.hpe.com/docs/DOC-2280>
- 2577 5. FlexConnector Quick Reference  
 2578 <https://www.protect724.hpe.com/docs/DOC-13759>

# 3 Test Cases/Alert Configurations

2	3.1 ArcSight Filters.....	119
3	3.2 Test Cases .....	134
4		

This section shows filters used in ArcSight for the test cases as well as descriptions of test case alerts.

## 3.1 ArcSight Filters

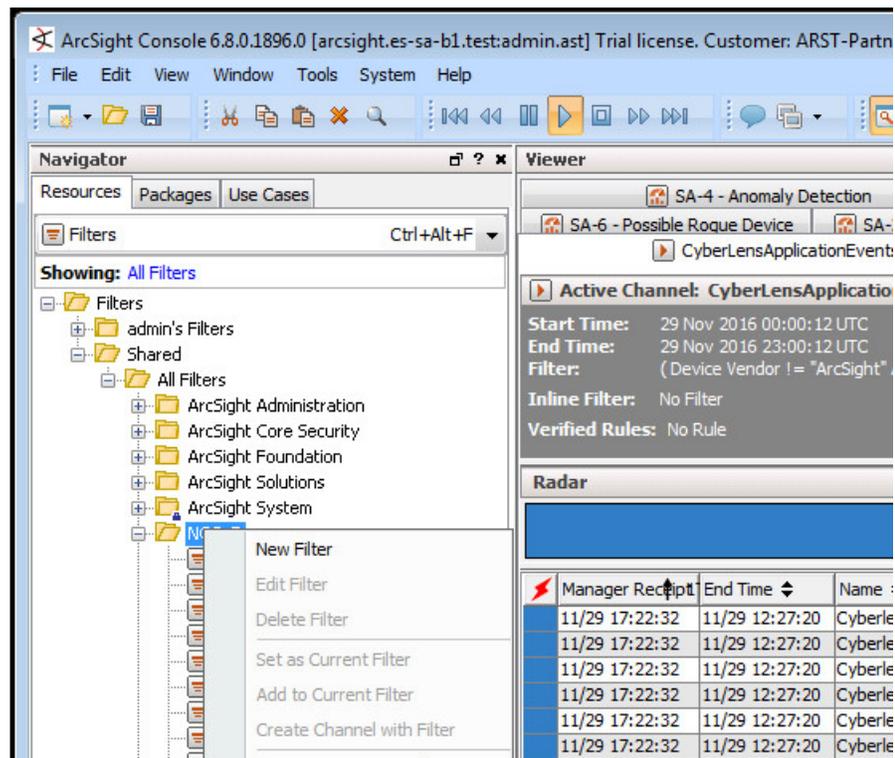
The following sections describe the creation of filters and what filters were used in the build.

### 3.1.1 Filter Creation

ArcSight content is comprised of many parts. A primary component in all content is the ArcSight filter. Use the following steps to create a filter:

1. Go to the ArcSight navigation pane on the left.
2. Select **Filters** from the drop down menu.
3. Right-click on a folder location.
4. Select **New Filter** from the popup menu.

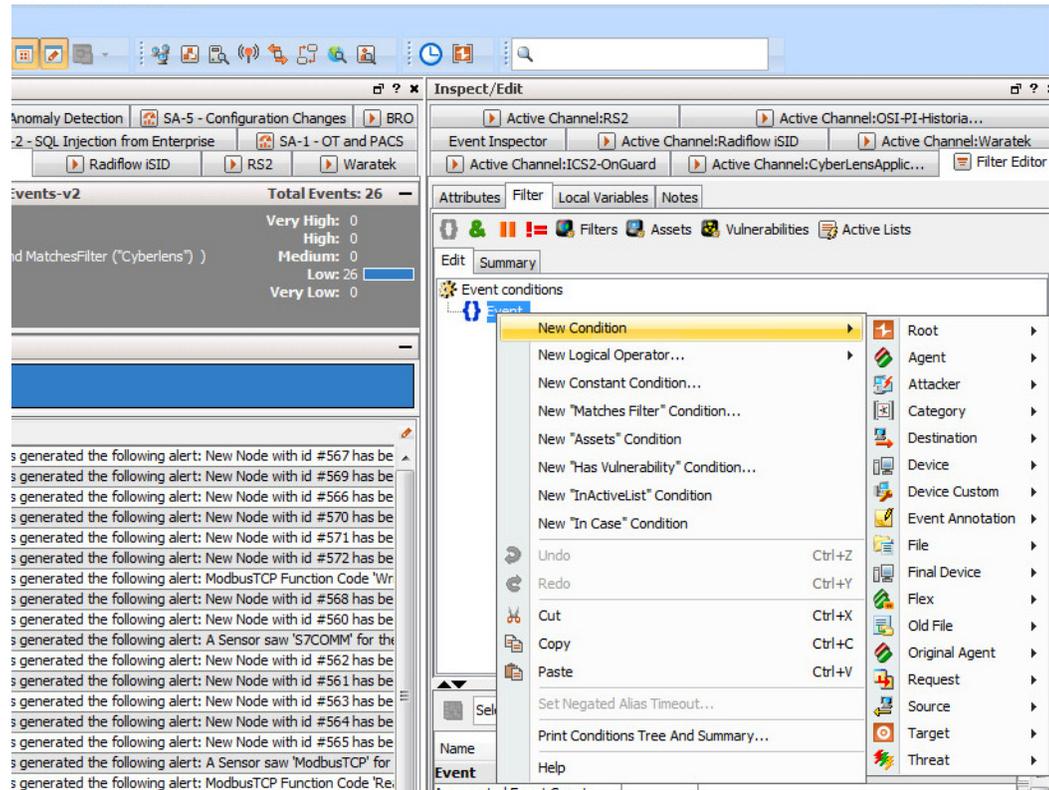
Figure 3.1 Create New Filter



5. Right-click **Event** in the right pane of the Edit Window.
6. Select **New Condition** from the popup menu.

20

Figure 3.2 Create Conditions (Logic)



21

7. Next, begin constructing the conditions that you wish to query the ArcSight database for.

22

*Note: It is customary to create a central folder to house ArcSight content and allow it to be shared by groups of users. Once content (such as filters) have been tested the content can then be copied or moved to the group (shared) folder. Permissions can be set on the folder to control access as needed.*

23

24

25

26

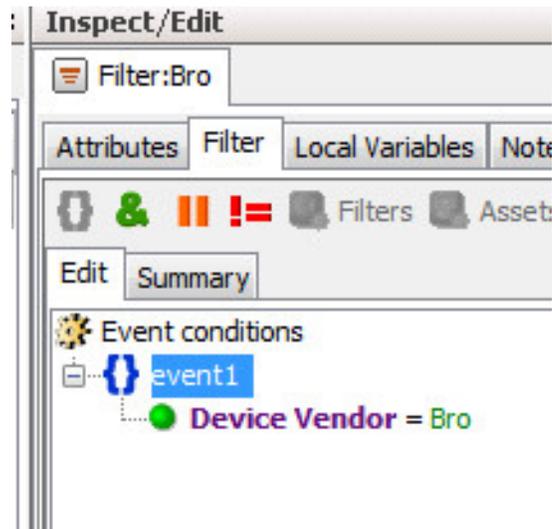
Shown below are ArcSight Filters that were created to support the Situational Awareness Test Cases.

27

28

29

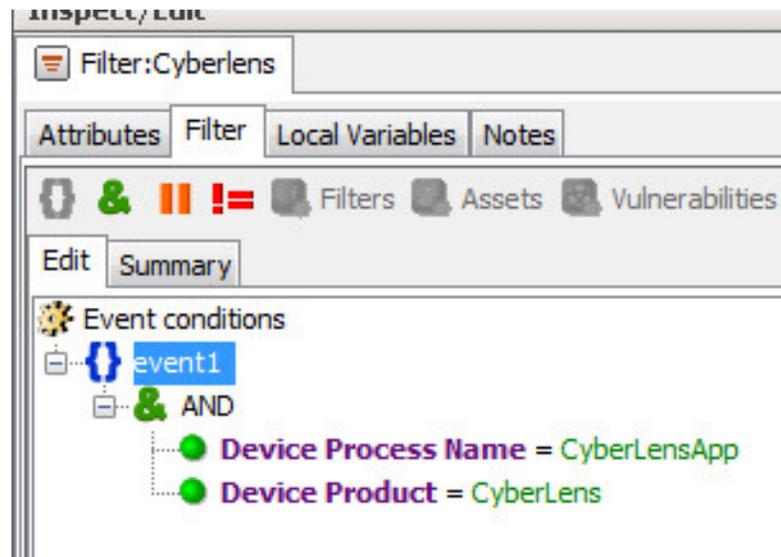
Figure 3.3 Bro Filter



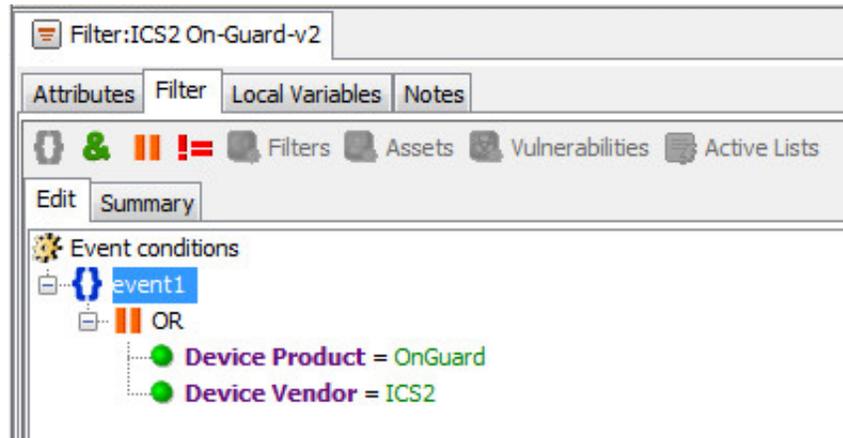
30

31

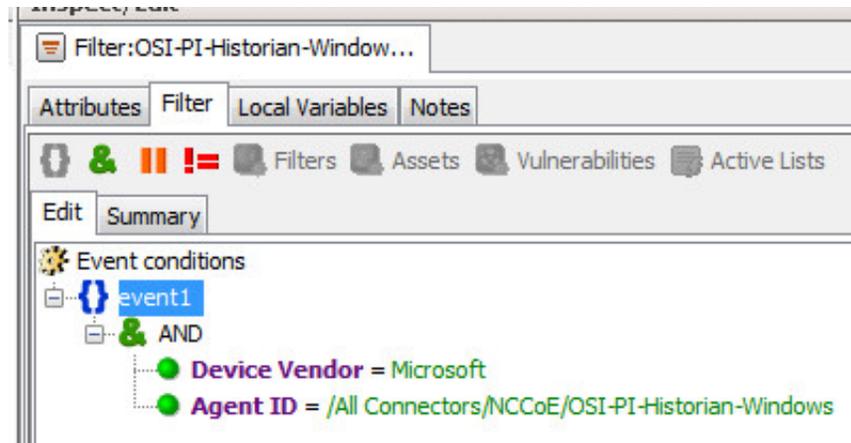
Figure 3.4 Dragos CyberLens Filter



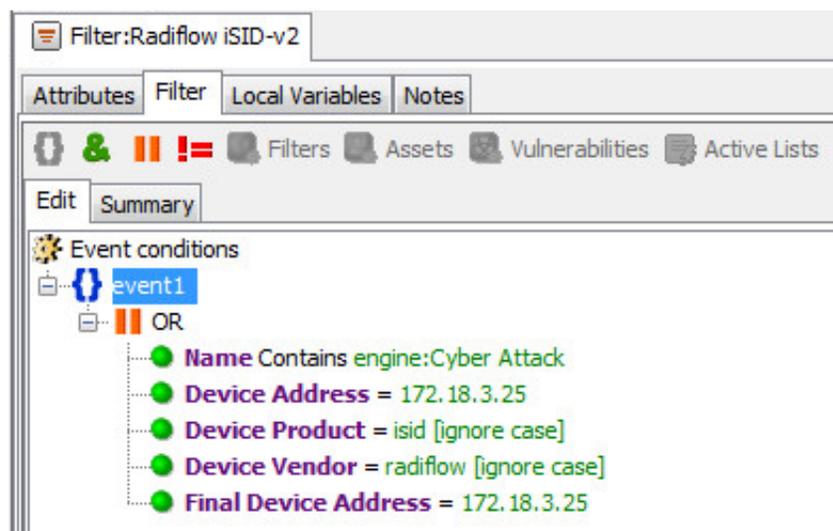
32

33 **Figure 3.5** ICS2 On-Guard Filter

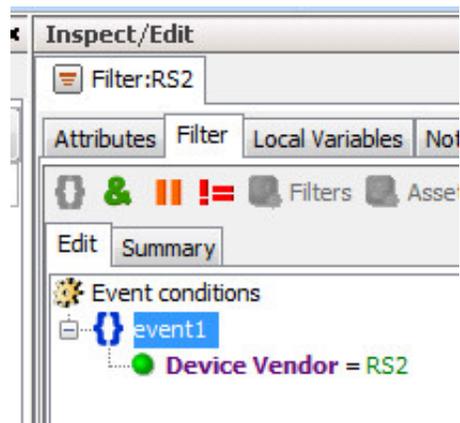
34

35 **Figure 3.6** Windows log filter for OSI PI Historian

36

37 **Figure 3.7** Radiflow iSID Filter

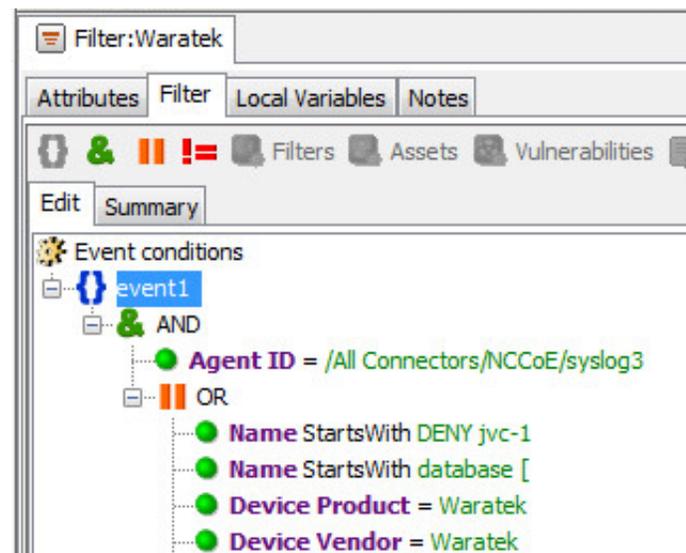
38

39 **Figure 3.8 RS2 AccessIT Filter**

40

41 **Figure 3.9 RSA Archer Filter**

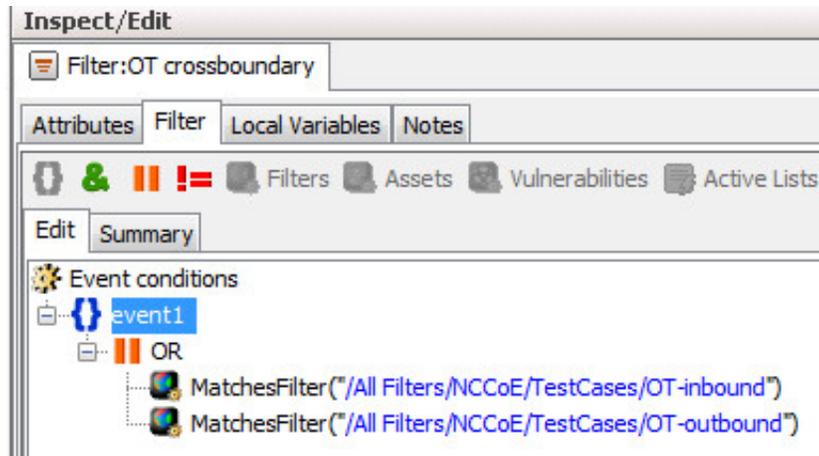
42

43 **Figure 3.10 Waratek Filter**

44

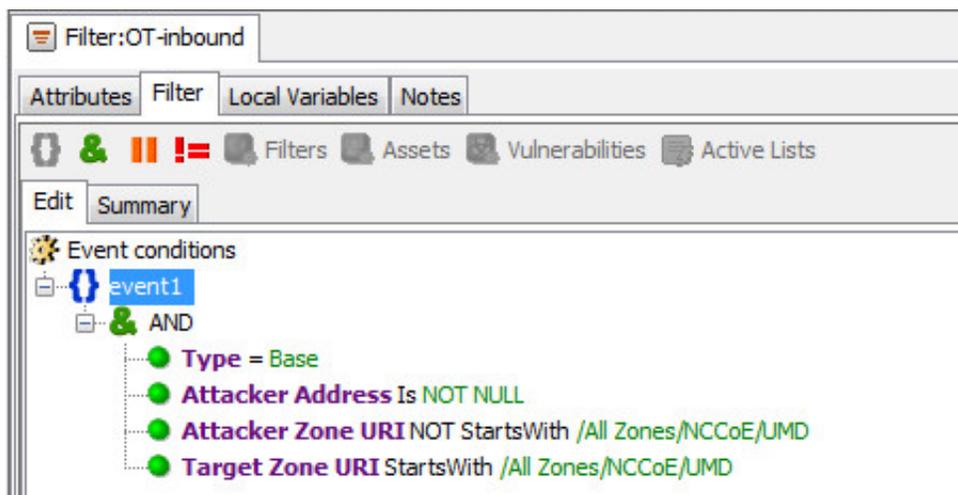
- 45 Below are Filters that were created to match against conditions based on:
- 46 ■ direction of network activity
- 47 ■ awareness of Security Zones (OT vs non OT)

48 **Figure 3.11 OT Cross-Boundary Filter**

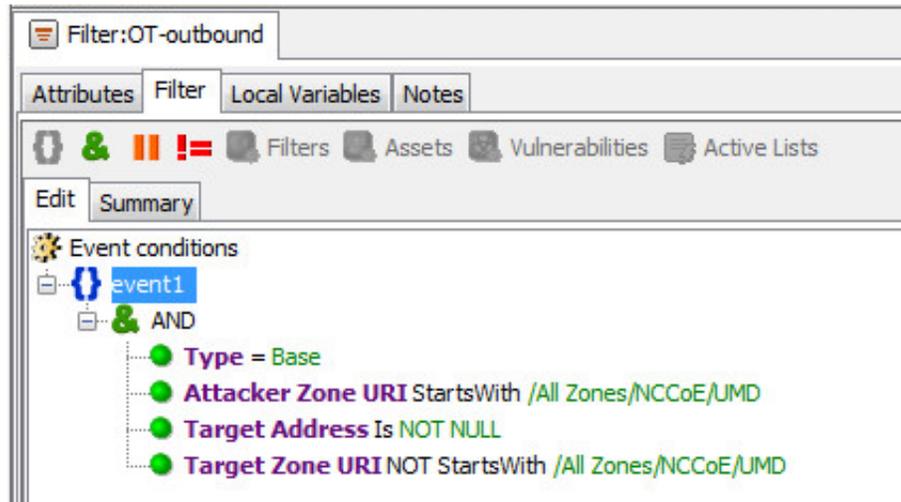


49

50 **Figure 3.12 OT Inbound Filter**



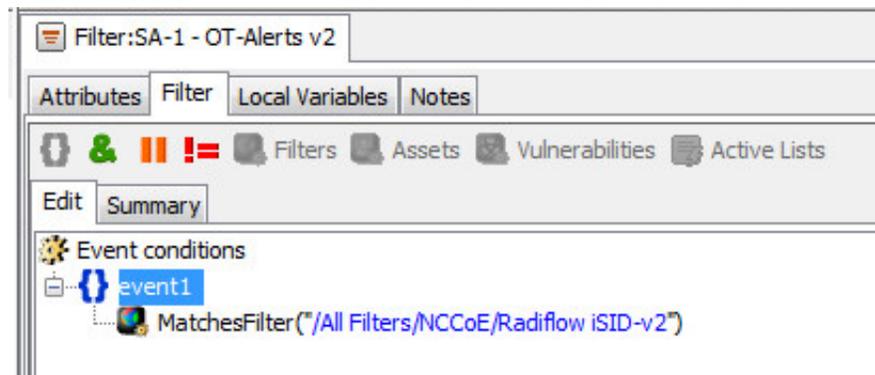
51

52 **Figure 3.13 OT Outbound Filter**

53

54 **3.1.2 ArcSight Test Cases**

55 Shown below are additional Filters that were built to support the SA Test Cases. Also shown are  
 56 examples of Dashboards and Data Monitors that use these Filters.

57 **Figure 3.14 SA-1 - OT-Alerts Filter**

58

59

Figure 3.15 SA-1 - OT and PACS Dashboard

The screenshot shows the SA-1 - OT and PACS dashboard. It features a navigation bar with tabs for various security alerts. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'SA-1 - PACS Events - R52 - last 15' and 'SA-1 - OT alerts - last 15'.

**SA-1 - PACS Events - R52 - last 15**

End Time	Name	Category	Device Group	Device Vendor	Agent Zone Name	Priority
15 Dec 2016 03:18:00 UTC	Cleared Alarm			RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	2
15 Dec 2016 03:17:00 UTC	Cleared Alarm			RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	2
14 Dec 2016 22:57:00 UTC	Cleared Alarm			RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	2
14 Dec 2016 21:29:00 UTC	Cleared Alarm			RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	2
14 Dec 2016 21:28:00 UTC	Cleared Alarm			RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	2
14 Dec 2016 17:30:07 UTC	Door Held Open	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	8
14 Dec 2016 17:29:37 UTC	Door Forced Open	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	8
14 Dec 2016 17:29:36 UTC	Door Closed	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	5
14 Dec 2016 17:29:35 UTC	Door Forced Open	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	8
14 Dec 2016 17:29:34 UTC	Door Closed	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	5
14 Dec 2016 17:29:30 UTC	Door Forced Open	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	8
14 Dec 2016 17:29:29 UTC	Door Closed	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	5
14 Dec 2016 17:29:28 UTC	Door Forced Open	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	8
14 Dec 2016 17:29:28 UTC	Door Closed	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	5
13 Dec 2016 21:17:24 UTC	Door Held Open	/PhysicalAccessSystem		RS2	LAB Analysis Zone - Level5	8

**SA-1 - OT alerts - last 15**

End Time	Name	Device Vendor	Device Product	Priority
12/15 17:54:09 - 12/15 17:54:10				

60

61

Figure 3.16 SA-1 OT and PACS Active Channel

The screenshot shows the ArcSight Console interface. The 'Active Channels' section is expanded to show 'SA-1 - OT and PACS'. The 'Inspector' pane on the right shows the configuration for this channel, including filters and rules. The main pane displays a detailed log of events for this channel.

**Active Channel: SA-1 - OT and PACS**

Start Time: 13 Dec 2016 08:18:41 UTC  
End Time: 13 Dec 2016 23:18:41 UTC  
Filters: (MatchHeader (RS2) Or MatchHeader (Radflow:SID-v2))  
Inplace Filters: No Filter  
Verified Rules: No Rule

**Event Log:**

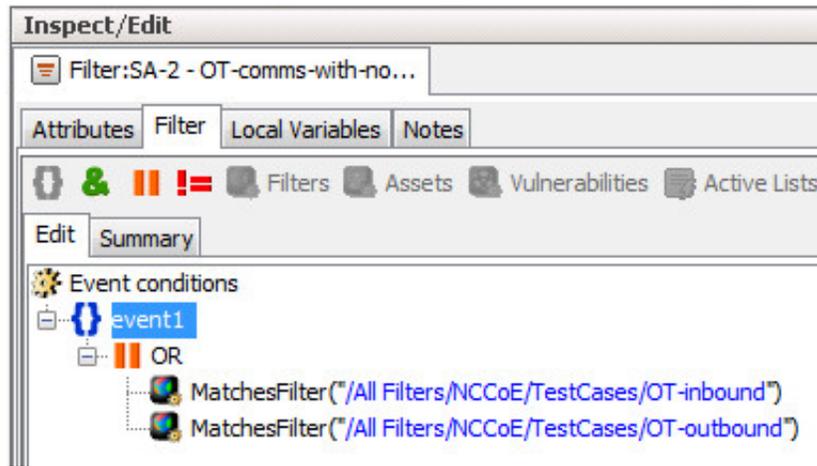
End Time	Name	Category	Behavior	Category Technique	Category Device Group	Priority	Device Vendor	Device Product
13 Dec 2016 21:17:24 UTC	Door Held Open	Access	Policy Breach	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	8	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 21:16:34 UTC	Door Forced Open	Access	Brute Force	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	8	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 21:16:33 UTC	Door Closed	Access	Policy	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	5	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 21:16:31 UTC	Door Forced Open	Access	Brute Force	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	8	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 21:16:31 UTC	Door Closed	Access	Policy	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	5	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 20:38:40 UTC	link got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 20:38:40 UTC	link got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 20:38:40 UTC	link got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 20:37:30 UTC	link got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 20:04:10 UTC	New link detected				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 20:04:10 UTC	device re-detected				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 20:04:10 UTC	New device detected				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 20:04:10 UTC	New device detected				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 16:59:53 UTC	Conn Normal				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 16:59:09 UTC	Conn Fail				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 15:27:44 UTC	Door Forced Open	Access	Policy Breach	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	8	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 15:27:44 UTC	Door Forced Open	Access	Brute Force	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	8	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 15:27:44 UTC	Door Closed	Access	Policy	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	5	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 15:27:39 UTC	Door Closed	Access	Policy	PhysicalAccessSystem	RS2	5	Accessit	Accessit
13 Dec 2016 14:25:40 UTC	link got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 14:25:40 UTC	device got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 14:25:40 UTC	link got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 14:25:40 UTC	device got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 14:25:34 UTC	link got inactive				radflow	5	isd	isd
13 Dec 2016 13:51:08 UTC	New device detected				radflow	5	isd	isd

62

63 Figure 3.17 SA-2 - IT to OT AppAttack Filter



64  
65 Figure 3.18 SA-2 OT-comms-with-non-OT Filter



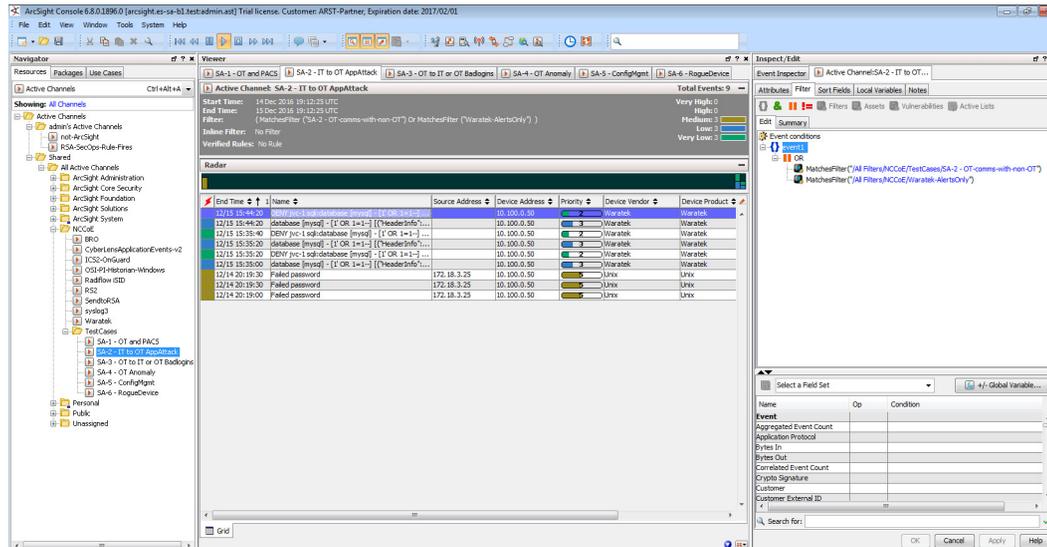
66  
67 Figure 3.19 108. SA-2 SQL Injection Dashboard

SA-2 - IT to OT AppAttack		SA-2 - SQL Injection from Enterprise		SA-3 - OT-to-IT or FailedLogins	
SA-2 - IT to OT AppAttack - last 15					
End Time	Name	Device ...	Priority		
8 Dec 2016 20:50:18 UTC	DENY jvc-1 sql:database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPat...	Waratek	2		
8 Dec 2016 20:50:08 UTC	database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPath":"/MySql_Get_...	Waratek	3		
25 Oct 2016 18:00:57 UTC	DENY jvc-1 sql:database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPat...	Waratek	2		
25 Oct 2016 18:00:57 UTC	database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPath":"/MySql_Get_...	Waratek	3		
25 Oct 2016 17:56:27 UTC	DENY jvc-1 sql:database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPat...	waratek	2		
25 Oct 2016 17:55:57 UTC	database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPath":"/MySql_Get_...	waratek	3		
25 Oct 2016 17:46:07 UTC	DENY jvc-1 sql:database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPat...	waratek	2		
25 Oct 2016 17:46:07 UTC	database [mysql] - [! OR 1=1-] [{"HeaderInfo":{"remoteAddr":"127.0.0.1","servletPath":"/MySql_Get_...	waratek	3		

68

69

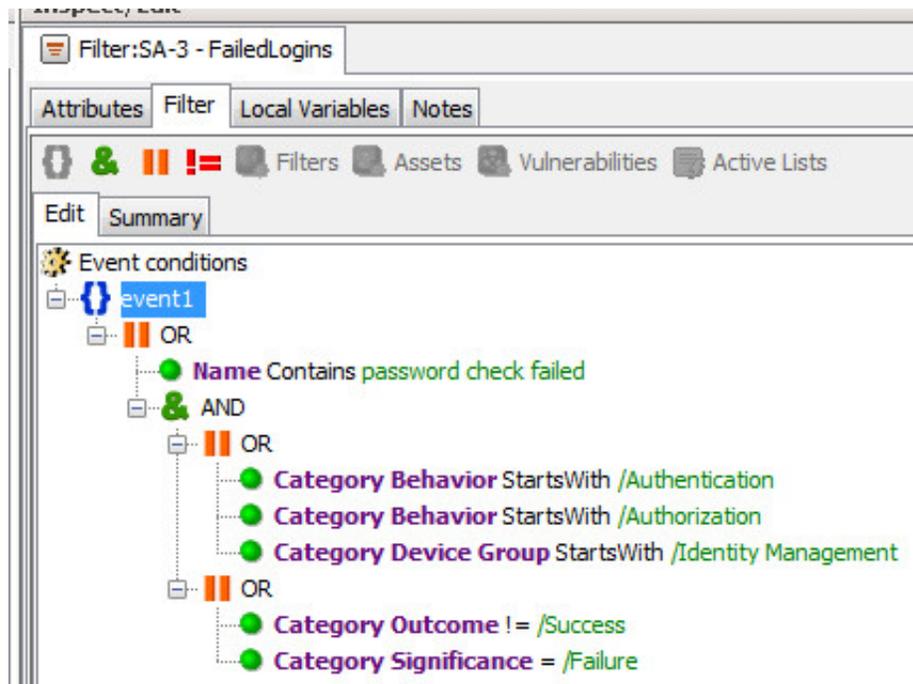
Figure 3.20 SA-2 SQL Injection Active Channel



70

71

Figure 3.21 SA-3 - FailedLogins Filter



72

73

Figure 3.22 SA-3 OT to IT or OT BadLogins Filter

74

75

Figure 3.23 SA-3 OT-to-IT or FailedLogins Dashboard

End Time	Name	Category Behavior	Category Object	Device Vendor	Priority
15 Dec 2016 12:04:41 UTC	unix_chkpwd[27074]: passwor...				2
15 Dec 2016 17:06:20 UTC	41 ubuntu unix_chkpwd[27074]...	/Communicate/Query	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	7
14 Dec 2016 20:19:40 UTC	more authentication failures	/Authentication/Verify	/Host/Operating System	Unix	5
14 Dec 2016 20:19:30 UTC	Failed password	/Authentication/Verify	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	5
14 Dec 2016 20:19:30 UTC	Failed password	/Authentication/Verify	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	5
14 Dec 2016 20:19:20 UTC	more authentication failures	/Authentication/Verify	/Host/Operating System	Unix	5
14 Dec 2016 20:19:00 UTC	Failed password	/Authentication/Verify	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	5
14 Dec 2016 03:19:56 UTC	unix_chkpwd[8925]: password ...				2
14 Dec 2016 03:19:43 UTC	unix_chkpwd[8923]: password ...				2
14 Dec 2016 03:19:43 UTC	unix_chkpwd[8923]: password ...				2
14 Dec 2016 16:33:00 UTC	56 ubuntu unix_chkpwd[8925]:...	/Communicate/Query	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	7
14 Dec 2016 16:33:00 UTC	56 ubuntu unix_chkpwd[8925]:...	/Communicate/Query	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	7
14 Dec 2016 16:33:00 UTC	43 ubuntu unix_chkpwd[8923]:...	/Communicate/Query	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	7
14 Dec 2016 16:33:00 UTC	43 ubuntu unix_chkpwd[8923]:...	/Communicate/Query	/Host/Application/Service	Unix	7
14 Dec 2016 03:19:24 UTC	NetworkManager[991]: <warn...				2

End Time	Name	Device Address	Device Host Name	Device Zone Name	Priority
----------	------	----------------	------------------	------------------	----------

Data last refreshed: 12/15 20:00:06

76

Figure 3.24 SA-3 OT-to-IT or FailedLogins Active Channel

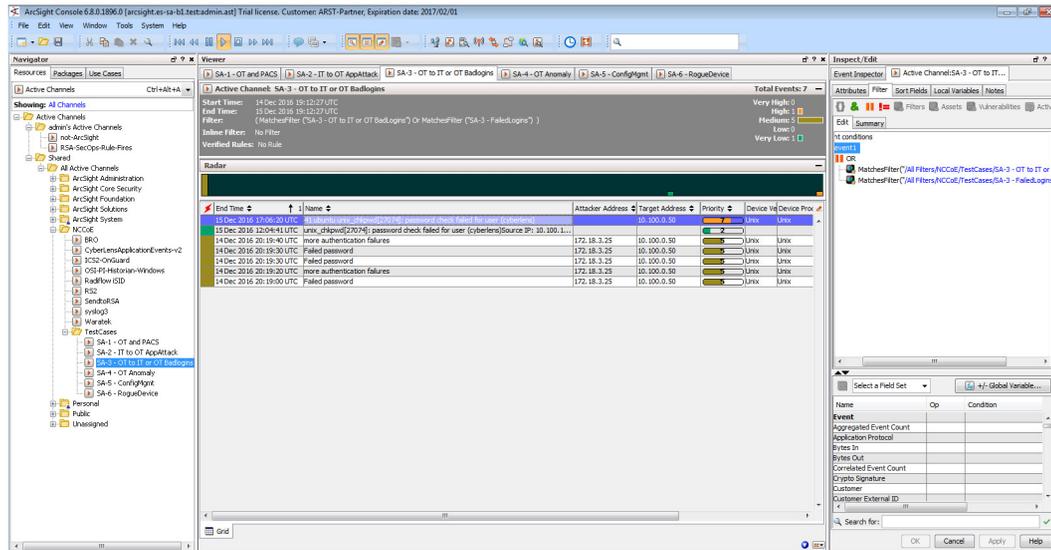


Figure 3.25 SA-4 Anomaly Detection Filter

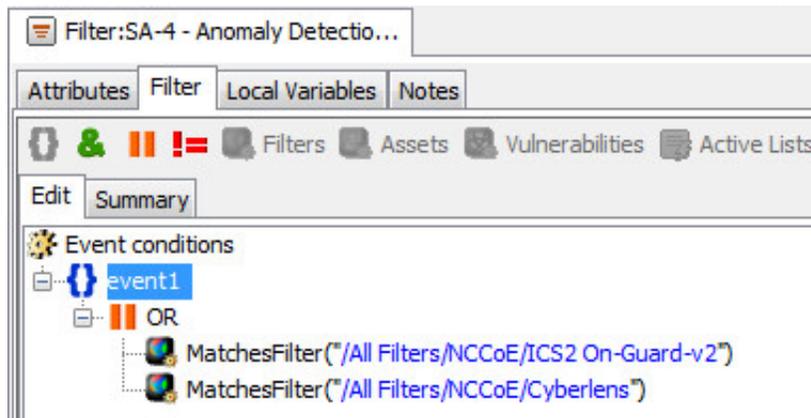


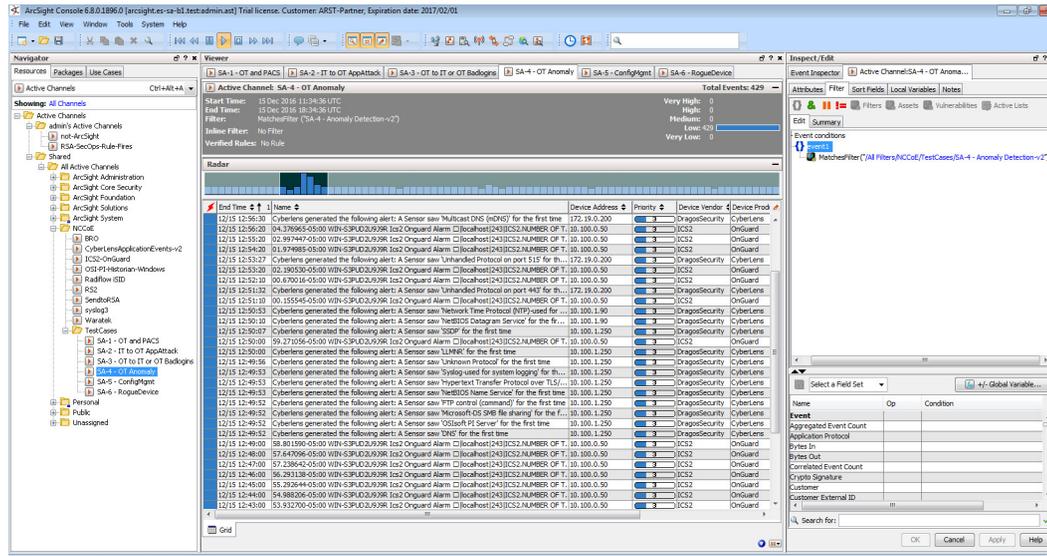
Figure 3.26 SA-4 Anomaly Detection Dashboard

The screenshot shows the SA-4 Anomaly Detection Dashboard. The table below lists the detected anomalies.

End Time	Name	Device Ve...	Device ...	Priority
15 Dec 2016 20:00:40 UTC	32.905463-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:59:40 UTC	30.998907-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:58:40 UTC	30.470453-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:57:50 UTC	30.191992-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:56:50 UTC	29.310588-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:55:40 UTC	28.823047-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:54:30 UTC	27.877579-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:53:30 UTC	27.245086-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:52:30 UTC	26.570606-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:51:30 UTC	25.714121-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:50:30 UTC	25.158658-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:49:30 UTC	23.287124-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:48:30 UTC	23.322682-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:47:30 UTC	22.786209-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:46:30 UTC	22.088800-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:45:30 UTC	20.269199-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:44:30 UTC	20.438768-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:43:30 UTC	19.521282-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:42:30 UTC	18.961810-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:41:20 UTC	17.971327-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:40:20 UTC	17.430855-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:39:20 UTC	16.338352-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:38:20 UTC	15.780880-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3
15 Dec 2016 19:37:20 UTC	15.069412-05:00 WIN-S3PUD2U939R Ics2 Onguard Alarm	localhost 243	ICS2	OnGuard 3

83

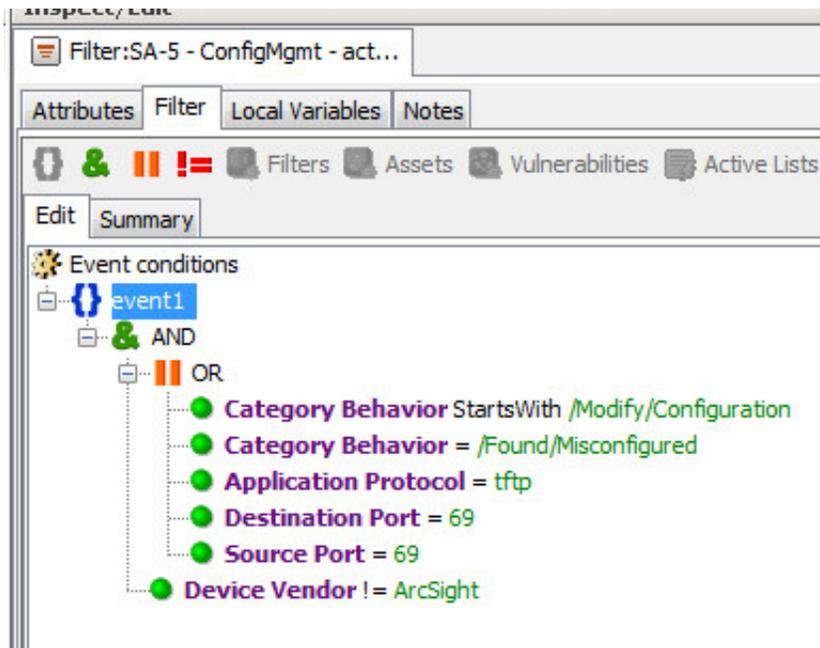
Figure 3.27 Anomaly Detection Active Channel



84

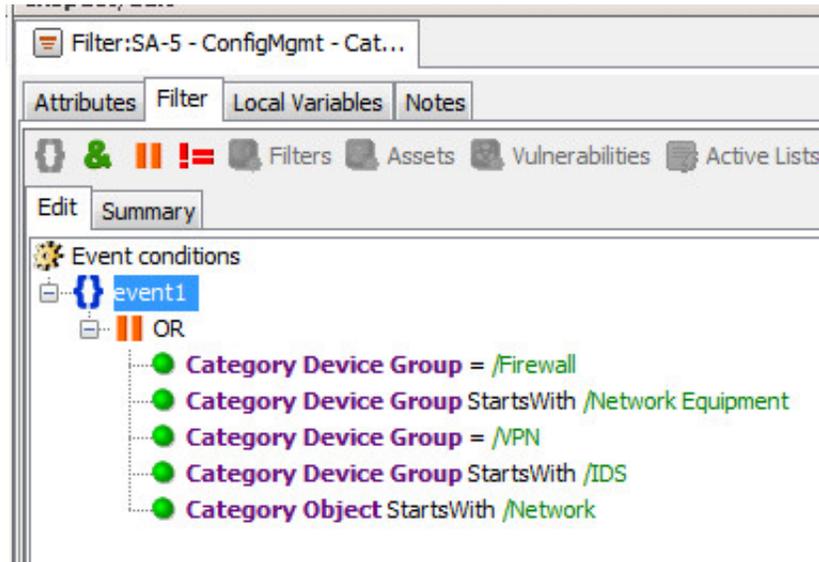
85

Figure 3.28 SA-5 ConfigMgmt Filter



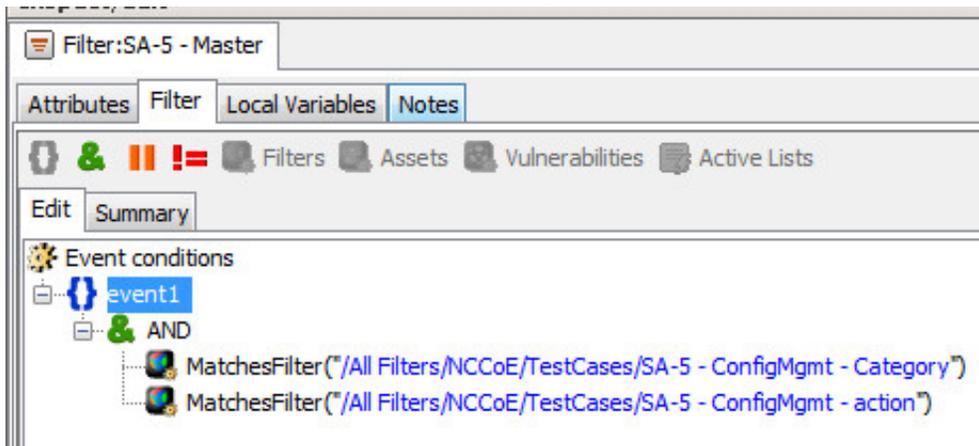
86

87 **Figure 3.29 SA-5 ConfigMgmt Filter**



88

89 **Figure 3.30 SA-5 Master Filter**



90

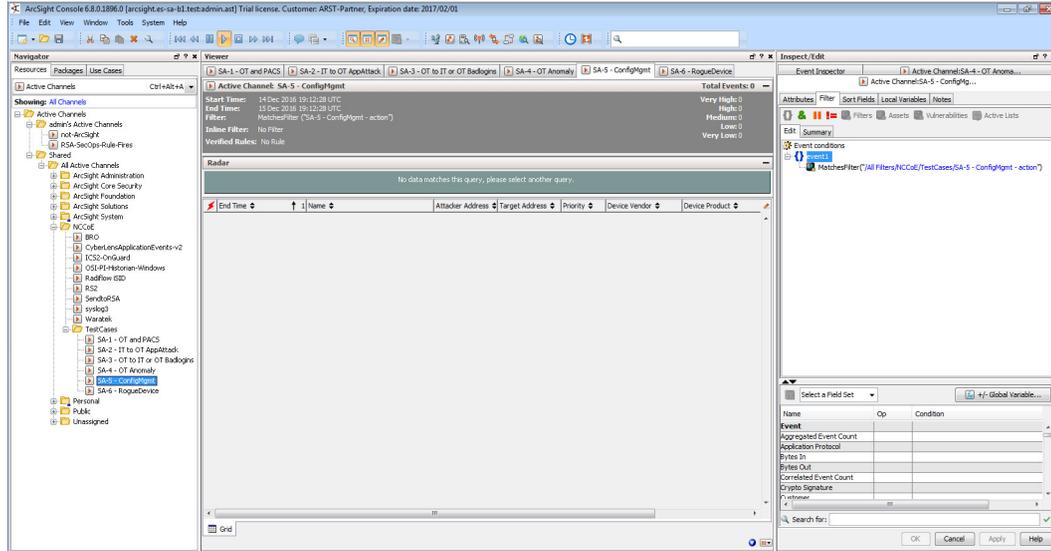
91 **Figure 3.31 SA-5 Configuration Changes Dashboard**

End Time	Name	Category Behavior	Category Device Group	Category Object	Category Outcome
----------	------	-------------------	-----------------------	-----------------	------------------

92

93

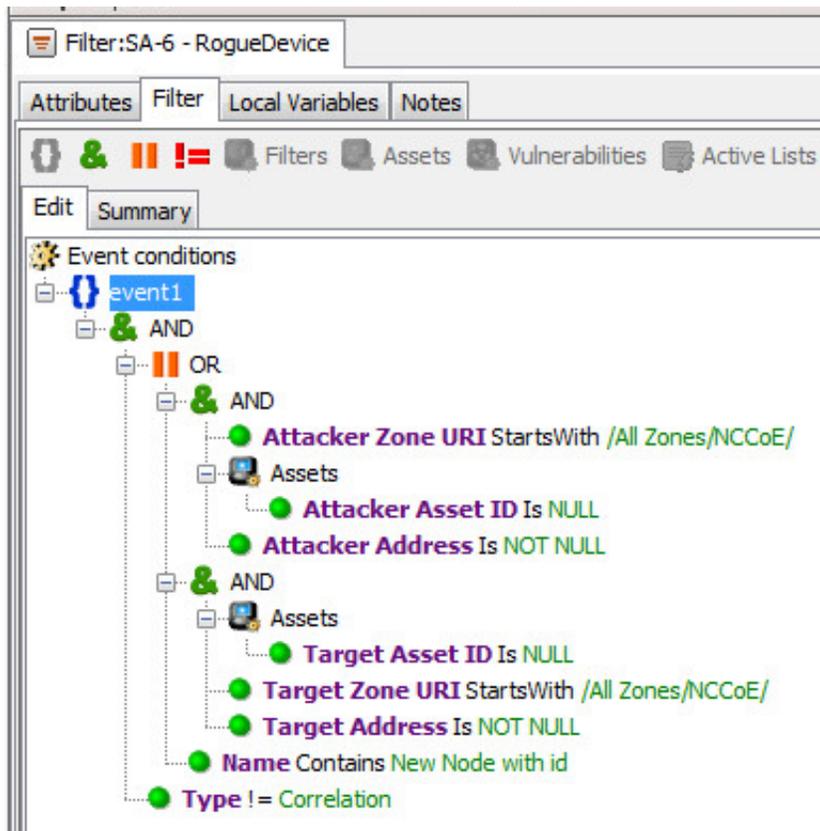
Figure 3.32 SA-5 Configuration Changes Active Channel



94

95

Figure 3.33 SA-6 RogueDevice Filter



96

Figure 3.34 SA-6 - Rogue Device Dashboard

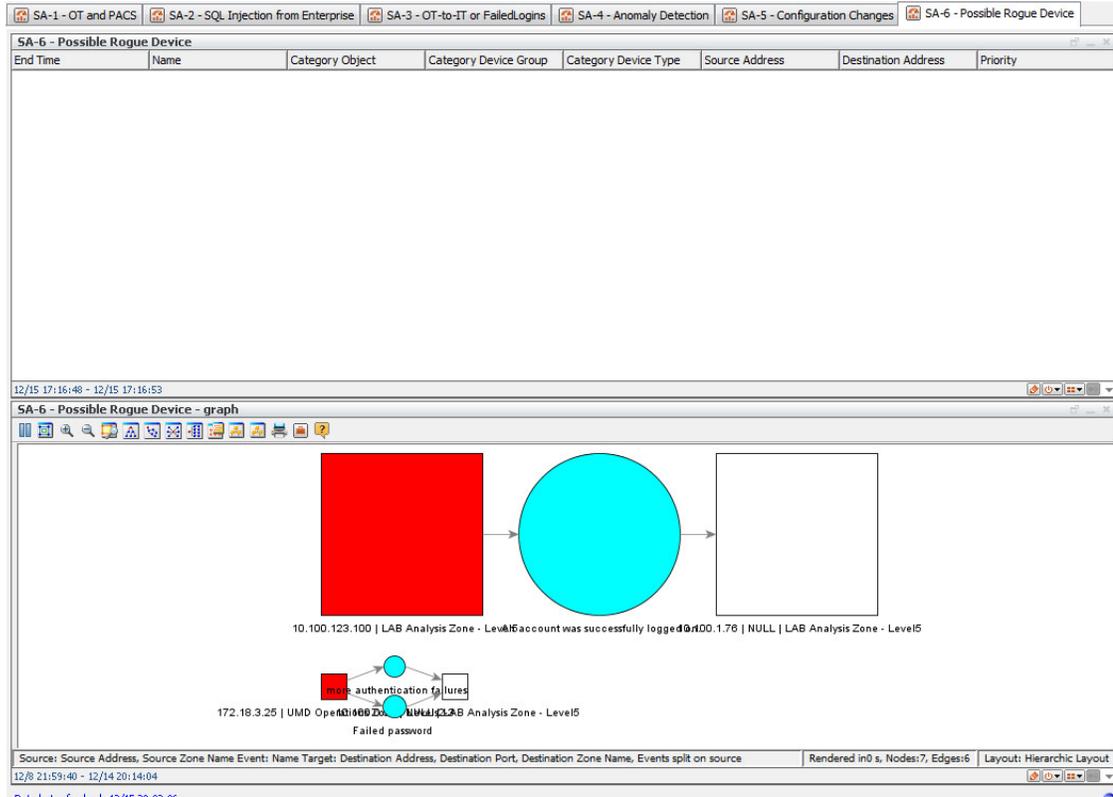
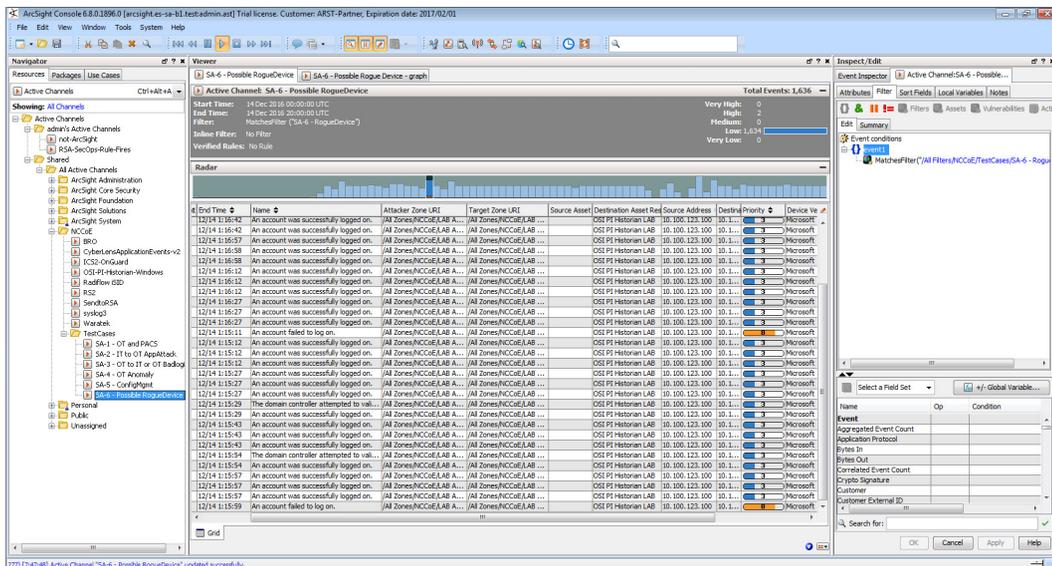


Figure 3.35 SA-6 - Rogue Device Active Channel



### 3.2 Test Cases

Below are descriptions of test cases as matched to Section 3.6 of NIST SP1800-7b

### 103 3.2.1 SA-1 Event Correlation for OT and PACS

104 This test case focuses on the possibility of correlated events occurring that involve OT and PACS  
105 that might indicate compromised access.

#### 106 3.2.1.1 Events

- 107 1. Technician accesses sub-station/control-station
- 108 2. OT device goes down

#### 109 3.2.1.2 Desired Outcome

110 Alert of anomalous condition and subsequent correlation to PACS to see who accessed facility.

#### 111 3.2.1.3 ArcSight Content

- 112 1. OT network Zones
- 113 2. Filter for OT network Zones
- 114 3. Filters for OT/IT inbound, outbound, cross-boundary communications
- 115 4. Filter for RS2 Door Controller events
- 116 5. Filter for Cyberlens or iSID events
- 117 6. Active List for RS2 Door Controller events with time threshold
- 118 7. Rule to add RS2 Door Controller Filter events to Active List
- 119 8. Data Monitor and Dashboard to display results of the above

### 120 3.2.2 SA-2 Event Correlation for OT and IT

121 The Enterprise (IT) java application communication with an OT device (Historian) is used as a  
122 vector for SQL injection (SQLi), which also includes data exfiltration attempts.

#### 123 3.2.2.1 Events

124 Detection of SQL Injection attack on IT device interconnected with OT device.

#### 125 3.2.2.2 Desired Outcome

126 Alert sent to SIEM on multiple SQLi attempts.

#### 127 3.2.2.3 ArcSight Content

- 128 1. Filter for Waratek events (intended to monitor for SQLi against the OSIsoft PI Historian)
- 129 2. Filter to combine Waratek and OT/IT inbound communications Filters

130 3. Data Monitor and Dashboard to display results of the above

### 131 3.2.3 SA-3 Event Correlation for OT and IT / PACS and OT

132 Unauthorized access attempts are detected and alerts are triggered based on connection  
133 requests from a device on the SCADA network destined for an IP that is outside of the SCADA IP  
134 range. This test case focuses on the possibility of a malicious actor attempting to gain access to  
135 an OT device via the Enterprise (IT) network. This test case is also relevant in a PACS-OT  
136 scenario, in which someone has physical access to an OT device but lacks the necessary access  
137 to perform changes to the device, and alerts are sent based on numerous failed login attempts.

#### 138 3.2.3.1 Events

139 Inbound/outbound connection attempts from devices outside of authorized and known  
140 inventory.

#### 141 3.2.3.2 Desired Outcome

142 Alert to SIEM showing IP of unidentified host attempting to connect, or identified host  
143 attempting to connect to unidentified host.

#### 144 3.2.3.3 ArcSight Content

- 145 1. Use OT network Zones (as defined in SA-1 content)
- 146 2. Use Filter for OT network Zones (as defined in SA-1 content)
- 147 3. Filter for events from OT network Zone to/from a different Zone
- 148 4. Filters for authorization, authentication failures
- 149 5. Filter for authorization, authentication failures or outbound events
- 150 6. Data Monitor and Dashboard to display results of the above

### 151 3.2.4 SA-4 Data Infiltration Attempts

152 Examine the behavior of systems, and configure the SIEM to alert on behavior which is outside  
153 the normal baseline. Alerts can be created emanating from OT, IT, and PACS. This test case  
154 seeks alerting based on behavioral anomalies rather than recognition of IP addresses, and  
155 guards against anomalous or malicious inputs.

#### 156 3.2.4.1 Events

157 Anomalous behavior falling outside defined baseline.

### 158 3.2.4.2 Desired Outcome

159 Alert sent to SIEM on any event falling outside of what is considered normal activity based on  
160 historical data.

### 161 3.2.4.3 ArcSight Content

- 162 1. Use OT network Zones
- 163 2. Use Filter for OT network Zones
- 164 3. Filter for ICS<sup>2</sup> OnGuard events or events with a Category of "Traffic Anomaly" (e.g. as  
165 defined in Dragos Security Cyberlens Arcsight FlexConnector/Categorizer files)
- 166 4. Data Monitor and Dashboard to display results of the above

### 167 3.2.5 SA-5 Configuration Management

168 An alert will be created to notify SIEM Unauthorized (inadvertent or malicious) uploading of an  
169 ICS network device configuration. The detection method will be primarily based on inherent  
170 device capability (i.e. log files).

#### 171 3.2.5.1 Events

172 Configuration change on Tofino FW, Cisco 2950.

#### 173 3.2.5.2 Desired Outcome

174 Alert will be created to notify SIEM this has occurred.

#### 175 3.2.5.3 ArcSight Content

- 176 1. Filter for any of the following:
  - 177 a. ArcSight Category events:
    - 178 i. /Modify/Configuration
    - 179 ii. /Found/Misconfigured
    - 180 iii. tftp protocol
    - 181 iv. tftp port
  - 182 2. Filter for following ArcSight Category Device Groups:
    - 183 a. /Firewall
    - 184 b. /Network Equipment
    - 185 c. /VPN
    - 186 d. /IDS
    - 187 e. or Category Object:

- 188                   i. /Network
- 189                   3. Data Monitor and Dashboard to display results of the above

### 190 3.2.6 SA-6 Rogue Device Detection

191 Alerts are triggered by the introduction of any device onto the ICS network that has not been  
192 registered with the asset management capability in the build.

#### 193 3.2.6.1 Events

194 Unidentified device appears on ICS network.

#### 195 3.2.6.2 Desired Outcome

196 Alert will be created to notify the SIEM that this has occurred.

#### 197 3.2.6.3 ArcSight Content

- 198                   1. Specific Asset definitions for all known ICS devices (grouped by OT Zones)
- 199                   2. Filter to detect presence of any "non-ICS" devices (not in Asset lists)
- 200                   3. Filter for CyberLens events alerting on "new" hosts
- 201                   4. Data Monitor and Dashboard to display results of the above

## Appendix A Acronyms

<b>CA</b>	Certificate Authority
<b>CSF</b>	Cybersecurity Framework
<b>DMZ</b>	Demilitarized Zone
<b>EACMS</b>	Electronic Access Control and Monitoring Systems
<b>ICS</b>	Industrial Control Systems
<b>IdAM</b>	Identity and Access Management
<b>IDS</b>	Intrusion Detection System
<b>IT</b>	Information Technology
<b>ITAM</b>	Information Technology and Asset Management
<b>NCCoE</b>	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
<b>OT</b>	Operational Technology
<b>PAC</b>	Physical Access Control
<b>PACS</b>	Physical Access Control Systems
<b>PEP</b>	Policy Enforcement Point
<b>RMF</b>	Risk Management Framework
<b>SA</b>	Situational Awareness
<b>SAC</b>	Station Access Controller
<b>SCADA</b>	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
<b>SIEM</b>	Security Information and Event Management
<b>SQL</b>	Structured Query Language
<b>SQLi</b>	Structured Query Language Injection
<b>UMd</b>	University of Maryland
<b>VPN</b>	Virtual Private Network